



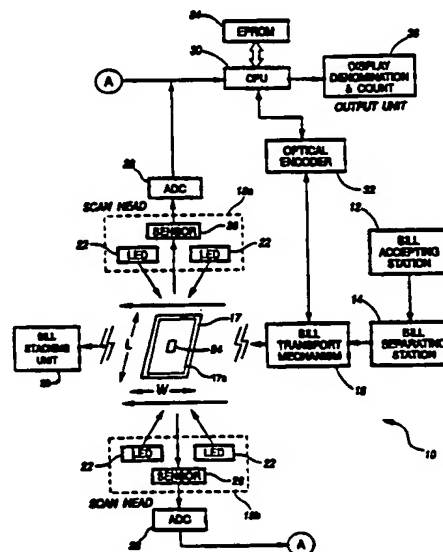
## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> : <b>G06K 9/00, 7/10</b>		A1	(11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 95/24691</b>
			(43) International Publication Date: 14 September 1995 (14.09.95)
(21) International Application Number: <b>PCT/US95/02992</b>		(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): CUMMINS-ALLISON CORP. [US/US]; 891 Feehanville Drive, Mount Prospect, IL 60056 (US).	
(22) International Filing Date: <b>8 March 1995 (08.03.95)</b>		(72) Inventors; and	
(30) Priority Data:		(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): GRAVES, Bradford, T. [US/US]; 3952 Newport Way, Arlington Heights, IL 60004 (US). MAZUR, Richard, A. [US/US]; 1508 Culpepper Drive, Naperville, IL 60540 (US). MENNIE, Douglas, U. [US/US]; 229 Wood Street, Barrington, IL 60010 (US). JONES, William, J. [US/US]; 631 Brier, Kenilworth, IL 60043 (US). RATERMAN, Donald, E. [US/US]; 1345 Carol Lane, Deerfield, IL 60015 (US). STROMME, Lars, R. [NO/US]; 2403 East Olive Street, Arlington Heights, IL 60004 (US). BAUCH, Aron, M. [US/US]; 36 Buckingham Meadow, East Setauket, NY 11733 (US). CSULITS, Frank, M. [US/US]; 18192 Banbury Drive, Gurnee, IL 60031 (US). JONES, John, E. [US/US]; 43 Long Meadow, Winnetka, IL 60043 (US). SCHREITER, Heinz, W. [US/US]; 8049 N. Tripp Avenue, Skokie, IL 60076 (US). MUNRO, Mark, C. [US/US]; 736 Parkwood Avenue, Park Ridge, IL 60068 (US).	
08/207,592 8 March 1994 (08.03.94) US 08/219,093 29 March 1994 (29.03.94) US 08/226,660 12 April 1994 (12.04.94) US 08/243,807 16 May 1994 (16.05.94) US 08/287,882 9 August 1994 (09.08.94) US 08/317,349 4 October 1994 (04.10.94) US 08/340,031 14 November 1994 (14.11.94) US 08/362,848 22 December 1994 (22.12.94) US 08/394,752 27 February 1995 (27.02.95) US 08/399,854 7 March 1995 (07.03.95) US			
(60) Parent Applications or Grants			
(63) Related by Continuation			
US 08/207,592 (CIP) Filed on 8 March 1994 (08.03.94) US 08/219,093 (CIP) Filed on 29 March 1994 (29.03.94) US 08/226,660 (CIP) Filed on 12 April 1994 (12.04.94) US 08/243,807 (CIP) Filed on 16 May 1994 (16.05.94) US 08/287,882 (CIP) Filed on 9 August 1994 (09.08.94) US 08/317,349 (CIP) Filed on 4 October 1994 (04.10.94) US 08/340,031 (CIP) Filed on 14 November 1994 (14.11.94) US 08/362,848 (CIP) Filed on 22 December 1994 (22.12.94) US 08/394,752 (CIP) Filed on 27 February 1995 (27.02.95) US 08/399,854 (CIP) Filed on 7 March 1995 (07.03.95)			
		(74) Agent: RUDISILL, Stephen, G.; Arnold, White & Durkee, P.O. Box 4433, Houston, TX 77210 (US).	
		(81) Designated States: AM, AT, AU, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, GB, GE, HU, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LK, LR, LT, LU, LV, MD, MG, MN, MW, MX, NL, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, TJ, TT, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, ARIPO patent (KE, MW, SD, SZ, UG), European patent (AT, BE, CH, DE, DK, ES, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG)..	
		Published With international search report.	

## (54) Title: METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR DISCRIMINATING AND COUNTING DOCUMENTS

## (57) Abstract

An apparatus (10) for currency discriminating comprising first and second stationary scanheads (18a, 18b), disposed on opposite sides of a bill transport path, for scanning respective first and second opposing surfaces of a bill (17) traveling along the bill transport path and for producing respective output signals. The bill (17) travels along the transport path in the direction of a predetermined dimension of the bill. A memory (34) stores master characteristic patterns corresponding to associated predetermined surfaces of a plurality of denominations of genuine bills. Sampling circuitry (28) samples the output signals associated with the respective first and second opposing surfaces of the scanned bill (17). A signal processor (30) is programmed to determine which one of the first and second opposing surfaces corresponds to the associated predetermined surfaces of the plurality of denominations of genuine bills. The processor (30) then correlates the output signal associated with one of the first and second opposing surfaces corresponding to the associated predetermined surfaces with the master characteristic patterns to identify the denomination of the scanned bill (17).



**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	GB	United Kingdom	MR	Mauritania
AU	Australia	GE	Georgia	MW	Malawi
BB	Barbados	GN	Guinea	NE	Niger
BE	Belgium	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BF	Burkina Faso	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BG	Bulgaria	IE	Ireland	NZ	New Zealand
BJ	Benin	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
BR	Brazil	JP	Japan	PT	Portugal
BY	Belarus	KE	Kenya	RO	Romania
CA	Canada	KG	Kyrgyzstan	RU	Russian Federation
CF	Central African Republic	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	KZ	Kazakhstan	SI	Slovenia
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	LI	Liechtenstein	SK	Slovakia
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	SN	Senegal
CN	China	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
CS	Czechoslovakia	LV	Latvia	TG	Togo
CZ	Czech Republic	MC	Monaco	TJ	Tajikistan
DE	Germany	MD	Republic of Moldova	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
DK	Denmark	MG	Madagascar	UA	Ukraine
ES	Spain	ML	Mali	US	United States of America
FI	Finland	MN	Mongolia	UZ	Uzbekistan
FR	France			VN	Viet Nam
GA	Gabon				

METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR DISCRIMINATING  
AND COUNTING DOCUMENTS

Cross-Reference to Related Applications

This application is a continuation-in-part of the following pending United States patent applications:

Serial No. yy/yyy,yyy filed March 7, 1995 for a "Method and Apparatus For  
5 Discriminating and Counting Documents";

Serial No. xx/xxx,xxx filed February 27, 1995 for a "Method of Generating Modified Patterns and Method and Apparatus for Using the Same in a Currency Identification System";

Serial No. 08/362,848 filed December 22, 1994, for a "Method And  
10 Apparatus For Discriminating and Counting Documents";

Serial No. 08/340,031 filed November 14, 1994, for a "Method And Apparatus For Discriminating and Counting Documents";

Serial No. 08/317,349 filed October 4, 1994, for a "Method And Apparatus For Authenticating Documents Including Currency";

Serial No. 08/287,882 filed August 9, 1994 for a "Method and Apparatus for  
15 Document Identification";

Serial No. 08/243,807 filed May 16, 1994, for "Method And Apparatus For Currency Discrimination";

Serial No. 08/226,660 filed April 12, 1994, for "Method And Apparatus For  
20 Currency Discrimination";

Serial No. 08/219,093 filed on March 29, 1994, for a "Currency Discriminator and Authenticator"; and

Serial No. 08/207,592 filed March 8, 1994 for "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination".

25 United States patent application Serial No. yy/yyy,yyy filed March 7, 1995 for a "Method and Apparatus For Discriminating and Counting Documents" is a continuation-in-part of pending United States patent applications Serial No. xx/xxx,xxx filed February 27, 1995 for a "Method of Generating Modified Patterns

and Method and Apparatus for Using the Same in a Currency Identification System," Serial No. 08/340,031, and Serial No. 08/287,882.

United States patent application Serial No. xx/xxx,xxx filed February 27, 1995 for a "Method of Generating Modified Patterns and Method and Apparatus for  
5 Using the Same in a Currency Identification System" is a continuation-in-part of pending United States patent applications Serial No. 08/340,031 and Serial No. 08/127,334 filed September 27, 1993, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting."

United States patent application Serial No. 08/362,848 filed December 22,  
10 1994, for a "Method And Apparatus For Discriminating and Counting Documents" is a continuation-in-part of pending United States patent application Serial No. 08/340,031.

United States patent application Serial No. 08/340,031 filed November 14, 1994, for a "Method And Apparatus For Discriminating and Counting Documents" is  
15 a continuation-in-part of pending United States patent applications Serial No. 08/243,807 and Serial No. 08/207,592.

United States patent application Serial No. 08/287,882 filed August 9, 1994 for a "Method and Apparatus for Document Identification" is a continuation-in-part of pending United States patent applications Serial No. 08/207,592, Serial No.  
20 08/219,093, and Serial No. 08/127,334 filed September 27, 1993, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting."

United States patent application Serial No. 08/243,807 filed May 16, 1994, for "Method And Apparatus For Currency Discrimination" is a continuation-in-part of pending United States patent applications Serial No. 08/219,093 and Serial No.  
25 08/127,334.

United States patent application Serial No. 08/226,660 filed April 12, 1994, for "Method And Apparatus For Currency Discrimination" is a continuation-in-part of pending United States patent application Serial No. 08/127,334.

United States patent application Serial No. 08/219,093 filed on March 29,  
30 1994, for a "Currency Discriminator and Authenticator" is a continuation-in-part of pending United States patent application Serial No. 08/127,334.



United States patent application Serial No. 08/207,592 filed March 8, 1994 for "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination" is a continuation-in-part of pending United States patent application Serial No. 08/127,334.

United States patent application Serial No. 08/127,334 filed September 27, 1993, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting," is a continuation of United States patent application Serial No. 07/885,648, filed on May 19, 1992, and issued as United States Patent No. 5,295,196, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting," which is a continuation-in-part of abandoned United States patent application Serial No. 07/475,111, filed February 5, 1990, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting."

#### **Field of the Invention**

The present invention relates, in general, to document identification. More specifically, the present invention relates to an apparatus and method for discriminating among a plurality of document types such as currency bills of different denominations and/or from different countries and authenticating the genuineness of the same.

#### **Background of the Invention**

Machines that are currently available for simultaneous scanning and counting of documents such as paper currency are relatively complex and costly, and relatively large in size. The complexity of such machines can also lead to excessive service and maintenance requirements. These drawbacks have inhibited more widespread use of such machines, particularly in banks and other financial institutions where space is limited in areas where the machines are most needed, such as teller areas. The above drawbacks are particularly difficult to overcome in machines which offer much-needed features such as the ability to scan bills regardless of their orientation relative to the machine or to each other, and the ability to authenticate genuineness and/or denomination of the bills.

A variety of techniques and apparatus have been used to satisfy the requirements of automated currency handling systems. At the lower end of

sophistication in this area of technology are systems capable of handling only a specific type of currency, such as a specific dollar denomination, while rejecting all other currency types. At the upper end are complex systems which are capable of identifying and discriminating among and automatically counting multiple currency denominations.

Currency discrimination systems typically employ either magnetic sensing or optical sensing for discriminating among different currency denominations. Magnetic sensing is based on detecting the presence or absence of magnetic ink in portions of the printed indicia on the currency by using magnetic sensors, usually ferrite core-based sensors, and using the detected magnetic signals, after undergoing analog or digital processing, as the basis for currency discrimination. A variety of currency characteristics can be measured using magnetic sensing. These include detection of patterns of changes in magnetic flux, patterns of vertical grid lines in the portrait area of bills, the presence of a security thread, total amount of magnetizable material of a bill, patterns from sensing the strength of magnetic fields along a bill, and other patterns and counts from scanning different portions of the bill such as the area in which the denomination is written out.

The more commonly used optical sensing techniques, on the other hand, are based on detecting and analyzing variations in light reflectance or transmissivity characteristics occurring when a currency bill is illuminated and scanned by a strip of focused light. The subsequent currency discrimination is based on the comparison of sensed optical characteristics with prestored parameters for different currency denominations, while accounting for adequate tolerances reflecting differences among individual bills of a given denomination. A variety of currency characteristics can be measured using optical sensing. These include detection of a bill's density, color, length and thickness, the presence of a security thread and holes, and other patterns of reflectance and transmission. Color detection techniques may employ color filters, colored lamps, and/or dichroic beamsplitters.

In addition to magnetic and optical sensing, other techniques of detecting characteristic information of currency include electrical conductivity sensing, capacitive sensing (such as for watermarks, security threads, thickness, and various

dielectric properties) and mechanical sensing (such as for size, limpness, and thickness).

A major obstacle in implementing automated currency discrimination systems is obtaining an optimum compromise between the criteria used to adequately define the characteristic pattern for a particular currency denomination,<sup>4</sup> the time required to analyze test data and compare it to predefined parameters in order to identify the currency bill under scrutiny, and the rate at which successive currency bills may be mechanically fed through and scanned. Even with the use of microprocessors for processing the test data resulting from the scanning of a bill, a finite amount of time is required for acquiring samples and for the process of comparing the test data to stored parameters to identify the denomination of the bill.

Some of the currency scanning systems today scan for two or more characteristics of bills to discriminate among various denominations or to authenticate their genuineness. However, these systems do not efficiently utilize the information which is obtained. Rather, these systems generally conduct comparison based on the two or more characteristics independently of each other. As a result, the time required to make these comparisons is increased which in turn can reduce the operating speed of the entire scanning system.

Recent currency discriminating systems rely on comparisons between a scanned pattern obtained from a subject bill and sets of stored master patterns for the various denominations among which the system is designed to discriminate. As a result, the master patterns which are stored play an important role in a discrimination system's ability to discriminate among bills of various denominations as well as between genuine bills and counterfeit bills. These master patterns have been generated by scanning bills of various denominations known to be genuine and storing the resulting patterns. However, a pattern generated by scanning a genuine bill of a given denomination can vary depending upon a number of factors such as the condition of the bill, e.g., whether it is a crisp bill in new condition or a worn, flimsy bill, as well as year in which the bill was printed, e.g., before or after security threads were incorporated into bills of some denominations. Likewise, it has been found that bills which have experienced a high degree of usage may shrink, resulting in a reduction of the dimensions of such bills. Such shrinkage may likewise result in

variations in scanning patterns. As a result, if, for example, a \$20 master pattern is generated by scanning a crisp, genuine \$20 bill, the discrimination system may reject an unacceptable number of genuine but worn \$20 bills. Likewise, if a \$20 master pattern is generated using a very worn, genuine \$20 bill, the discrimination system  
5 may reject an unacceptable number of genuine but crisp \$20 bills.

It has been found that scanning U.S. bills of different denominations along a central portion thereof provides scanning patterns sufficiently divergent to enable accurate discrimination between different denominations. Such a discrimination device is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196. However, currencies of other  
10 countries can differ from U.S. currency and from each other in a number of ways. For example, while all denominations of U.S. currencies are the same size, in many other countries currencies vary in size by denomination. Furthermore, there is a wide variety of bill sizes among different countries. In addition to size, the color of currency can vary by country and by denomination. Likewise, many other  
15 characteristics may vary between bills from different countries and of different denominations.

As a result of the wide variety of currencies used throughout the world, a discrimination system designed to handle bills of one country generally can not handle bills from another country. Likewise, the method of discriminating bills of  
20 different denominations of one country may not be appropriate for use in discriminating bills of different denominations of another country. For example, scanning for a given characteristic pattern along a certain portion of bills of one country, such as optical reflectance about the central portion of U.S. bills, may not provide optimal discrimination properties for bills of another country, such as  
25 German marks.

Furthermore, there is a distinct need for an identification system which is capable of accepting bills of a number of currency systems, that is, a system capable of accepting a number of bill-types. For example, a bank in Europe may need to process on a regular basis French, British, German, Dutch, etc. currency, each  
30 having a number of different denomination values.

Some of the optical scanning systems available today employ two optical scanheads disposed on opposite sides of a bill transport path. One of the optical

scanheads scans one surface (e.g., green surface) of a currency bill to obtain a first set of reflectance data samples, while the other optical scanhead scans the opposite surface (e.g., black surface) of the currency bill to obtain a second set of reflectance data samples. These two sets of data samples are then processed and compared to  
5 stored characteristic patterns corresponding to the green surfaces of currency bills of different denominations. If degree of correlation between either set of data samples and any of the stored characteristic patterns is greater than a predetermined threshold, then the denomination of the bill is positively identified.

A drawback of the foregoing technique for scanning both surfaces of a  
10 currency bill is that it is time-consuming to process and compare both sets of data samples for the scanned bill to the stored characteristic patterns. The set of data samples corresponding to the black surface of the scanned bill are processed and compared to the stored characteristic patterns even though no match should be found. As previously stated, the stored characteristic patterns correspond to the green  
15 surfaces of currency bills of different denominations.

Another drawback of the foregoing scanning technique is that the set of data samples corresponding to the black surface of the scanned bill occasionally leads to false positive identification of a scanned bill. The reason for this false positive identification is that if a scanned bill is slightly shifted in the lateral direction relative  
20 to the bill transport path, the set of data samples corresponding to the black surface of the scanned bill may sufficiently correlate with one of the stored characteristic patterns to cause a false positive identification of the bill. The degree of correlation between the set of "black" data samples and the stored "green" characteristic patterns should, of course, not be greater than the predetermined threshold for positively  
25 identifying the denomination of the bill.

Furthermore, in currency discriminating systems that rely on comparisons between a scanned pattern obtained from a subject bill and sets of stored master patterns, the ability of a system to accurately line up the scanned patterns to the master patterns to which they are being compared is important to the ability of a  
30 discrimination system to discriminate among bills of various denominations as well as between genuine bills and counterfeit bills without rejecting an unacceptable number of genuine bills. However, the ability of a system to line up scanned and master

patterns is often hampered by the improper initiation of the scanning process which results in the generation of scanned patterns. If the generation of scanned patterns is initiated too early or too late, the resulting pattern will not correlate well with the master pattern associated with the identity of the currency; and as a result, a genuine bill may be rejected. There are a number of reasons why a discrimination system may initiate the generation of a scanned pattern too early or too late, for example, stray marks on a bill, the bleeding through of printed indicia from one bill in a stack onto an adjacent bill, the misdetection of the beginning of the area of the printed indicia which is desired to be scanned, and the reliance on the detection of the edge of a bill as the trigger for the scanning process coupled with the variance, from bill to bill, of the location of printed indicia relative to the edge of a bill. Therefore, there is a need to overcome the problems associated with correlating scanned and master patterns.

In some currency discriminators bills are transported, one at a time, passed a discriminating unit. As the bills pass the discriminating unit, the denomination of each bill is determined and a running total of each particular currency denomination and/or of the total value of the bills that are processed is maintained. A number of discriminating techniques may be employed by the discriminating unit including optical or magnetic scanning of bills. A plurality of output bins are provided and the discriminator includes means for sorting bills into the plurality of bins. For example, a discriminator may be designed to recognize a number of different denominations of U.S. bills and comprise an equal number of output bins, one associated with each denomination. These discriminators also include a reject bin for receiving all bills which cannot be identified by the discriminating unit. These bills may later be examined by an operator and then either re-fed through the discriminator or set aside as unacceptable.

Depending on the design of a discriminator, bills may be transported and scanned either along their long dimension or their narrow dimension. For a discriminator that transport bills in their narrow dimension, it is possible that a given bill may be oriented either face up or face down and either top edge first ("forward" direction) or top edge last ("reverse" direction). For discriminators that transport bills in their long dimension, it is possible that a given bill may be oriented either

face up or face down and either left edge first ("forward" direction) or left edge last ("reverse" direction). The manner in which a bill must be oriented as it passes a discriminating unit depends on the characteristics of the discriminator. Some discriminators are capable of identifying the denomination of a bill only if it is fed with a precise orientation, e.g., face up and top edge first. Other discriminators are capable of identifying bills provided they are "faced" (i.e., fed with a predetermined face orientation, that is all face up or all face down). For example, such a discriminator may be able to identify a bill fed face up regardless of whether the top edge is fed first or last. Other discriminators are capable of identifying the denomination fed with any orientation. However, whether a given discriminator can discriminate between bills fed with different orientations depends on the discriminating method used. For example, a discriminator that discriminates bills based on patterns of transmitted light may be able to identify the denomination of a forward fed bill regardless of whether the bill is fed face up or face down, but the same discriminator would not be able to discriminate between a bill fed face up and a bill fed face down.

Currently, discriminators are known which discriminate and/or sort by denomination when bills are properly faced. In such systems, all reverse-faced bills are not identified and are routed to a reject receptacle. Also discriminators are known which discriminate and/or sort between all bills facing up and all bills facing down. For example, in a multi-output pocket system, all face up bills, regardless of denomination, may be routed to a first pocket and all face down bills, regardless of denomination, may be routed to a second pocket. Furthermore, there is currently known discriminators designed to accept a stack of faced bills and flag the detection of a reverse-faced bill, thus allowing the reverse-faced bill to be removed from the stack. However, there remains a need for a discriminator that can detect and flag the presence of a bill oriented with an incorrect forward/reverse orientation and a discriminator that can sort between forward-oriented bills and reverse-oriented bills.

Furthermore, for a number of reasons, a discriminating unit may be unable to determine the denomination of a bill. These reasons include a bill being excessively soiled, worn, or faded, a bill being torn or folded, a bill being oriented in a manner that the discriminating unit cannot handle, and the discriminating unit having poor

discriminating performance. Furthermore, the discriminating unit and/or a separate authenticating unit may determine that a bill is not genuine. In current discriminators, such unidentified or non-genuine bills are deposited in a reject receptacle.

5           A characteristic of the above described discriminators is that the value of any rejected unidentified bills is not added to the running total of the aggregate value of the stack of bills nor do the counters keeping track of the number of each currency denomination reflect the rejected unidentified bills. While this is desirable with respect to bills which are positively identified as being fake, it may be undesirable  
10 with respect to bills which were not identified for other reasons even though they are genuine bills. While the bills in a reject receptacle may be re-fed through the discriminator, the operator must then add the totals from the first batch and the second batch together. Such a procedure can be inefficient in some situations. Also, if a bill was rejected the first time because it was, for example, excessively soiled or  
15 too worn, then it is likely that the bill will remain unidentified by the discriminating unit even if re-fed.

          A problem with the above described situations where the totals and/or counts do not reflect all the genuine bills in a stack is that an operator must then count all the unidentified genuine bills by hand and add such bills to separately generated  
20 totals. As a result the chance for human error increases and operating efficiency decreases. Take for example a bank setting where a customer hands a teller a stack of currency to be deposited. The teller places the stack of bills in a discriminator, the display on the discriminator indicates that a total of \$730 has been identified. However, fourteen genuine bills remain unidentified. As a result, the teller must  
25 count these fourteen bills by hand or re-fed through the discriminator and then add their total to the \$730 total. An error could result from the teller miscounting the unidentified bills, the teller forgetting to add the two totals together, or the teller overlooking the unidentified bills entirely and only recording a deposit of \$730. Moreover, even if the teller makes no mistakes, the efficiency of the teller is reduced  
30 by having to manually calculate additional totals. The decrease in efficiency is further aggravated where detailed records must be maintained about the specific number of each denomination processed during each transaction.



Therefore, there is a need for a currency discriminator which is capable of conveniently and efficiently accommodating genuine bills that, for whatever reason, remain unidentified after passing through the discriminating unit of a discriminator.

A number of methods have been developed for authenticating the genuineness of security documents. These methods include sensing magnetic, optical, conductive, and other characteristics of documents under test. In general, it has been found that no single authentication test is capable of detecting all types of counterfeit documents while at the same time not rejecting any genuine documents. Therefore, more than one test may be employed whereby a first test is used to detect certain types of counterfeits and additional tests are used to detect other types of counterfeits.

It has been known that the illumination of certain substances with ultraviolet light causes the substances to fluoresce, that is, to emit visible light. Some documents employ fluorescent materials as a security feature to inhibit counterfeiting. Typically, these fluorescent security features comprise a marking which is visibly revealed when the document is illuminated with ultraviolet light. Previous methods have been developed to authenticate such documents by sensing the fluorescent light emitted by a document illuminated by ultraviolet light and comparing the sensed fluorescent light to the fluorescent light emitted by genuine documents.

Conversely, some documents, such as United States currency, are manufactured from special paper designed not to fluoresce under ultraviolet light. Previously known authenticating methods for such documents have sensed for the emission of fluorescent light under ultraviolet illumination and have rejected as counterfeit those documents emitting fluorescent light.

However, it has been found that the presently known ultraviolet authentication methods do not detect all types of counterfeits. For example, while many counterfeit United States bills do emit fluorescent light under ultraviolet illumination, some counterfeit United States bills do not.

### **Summary Of The Invention**

It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for identifying documents.

It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for identifying, authenticating, and counting currency bills comprising a plurality of currency denominations.

5 It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for discriminating among documents of different types including currency documents of different denominations.

It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for discriminating among currency bills comprising a plurality of currency denominations.

10 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of efficiently discriminating among, authenticating, and counting bills of several currency denominations at a high speed and with a high degree of accuracy.

15 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of efficiently discriminating currencies from a number of different countries.

It is another object of this invention to provide a currency evaluation device able to discriminate among different denominations of bills from two or more currency systems.

20 It is another object of this invention to provide a currency evaluation device able to discriminate among different denominations of both Canadian and German bills.

25 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of scanning a document such as a currency bill along two or more laterally displaced segments to thereby identify the document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of scanning a document along two or more laterally displaced segments by using two or more laterally displaced scanheads.

30 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of scanning a document along two or

more laterally displaced segments by using two or more laterally displaced sensors of a linear array scanhead.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of scanning a document along two or  
5 more laterally displaced segments by using one or more laterally moveable scanheads.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind wherein the above scanheads or sensors retrieve optical reflectance information from a document under test and use such reflectance  
10 information to determine the identity of the document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document by comparing one or more scanned patterns generated by scanning a document under test with one or more scanheads or one or more sensors and comparing the scanned pattern or patterns with  
15 one or more master patterns associated with genuine documents.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document by determining the size of the document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and  
20 apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document by determining the color of the document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document based on a combination of size information and scanned/master pattern comparison.

25 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document based on a combination of color information and scanned/master pattern comparison.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which identifies a document based on a combination of  
30 size information, color information, and scanned/master pattern comparison.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which only selected ones of a number of scanheads or sensors are activated to scan a document.

5 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which scanned patterns are generated only from the output or data derived therefrom of selected ones of a number of scanheads or sensors which are activated to scan a document.

10 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the selection of one or more of a number of scanheads or sensors to scan a document is based on size information.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the selection of one or more of a number of scanheads or sensors to scan a document is based on color information.

15 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the lateral positioning of one or more moveable scanheads is based on size and/or color information detected from the document.

20 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the selection of the output or data derived therefrom of one or more of a number of scanheads or sensors for the generation of scanned patterns is based on size information.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the selection of the output or data derived therefrom of one or more of a number of scanheads or sensors for the generation of scanned patterns is based on color information.

25 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of scanning either side or both sides of a document.

30 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the amount of information that must be processed is reduced by tailoring the areas from which scanned patterns are derived, such reduction being based on pre-scan information detected from a document such as the size and/or color of a document to be scanned.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which the amount of information that must be processed is reduced by tailoring the data which must be assembled into one or more scanned patterns, such reduction being based on information detected from a document during the scanning process itself, the information detected during the scanning process itself including, for example, size and/or color information.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which size and/or color information detected from a document is used to generate a preliminary set of potentially matching documents and in which one or more scanned patterns generated from a document are compared with master patterns chosen from the preliminary set.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which a document to be scanned is transported past one or more scanheads in a centered or justified manner along a transport path.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which a document to be scanned is transported past one or more scanheads along a transport path and in which one or more sensors separate from the one or more scanheads are used to determine the lateral positioning of the document within the transport path.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which a document to be scanned is transported past one or more scanheads along a transport path and in which the lateral positioning of the document within the transport path is determined by analyzing the output of one or more scanheads.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind in which a document to be scanned is transported past one or more scanheads along a transport path and in which the skew of the document is determined by analyzing of output of one or more scanheads or analyzing the output of one or more separate sensors.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of accepting documents fed either face up or face down.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved method and apparatus of the above kind which is capable of accepting documents fed in either the forward or reverse direction, i.e., top edge first or top edge last.

5 A related object of the present invention is to provide such an improved currency discrimination and counting apparatus which is compact, economical, and has uncomplicated construction and operation.

It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved currency scanning and counting machine which is relatively simple and compact, while at the same time providing a variety of advanced features which make the machine  
10 convenient and useful to the operator.

Another object of this invention is to provide such an improved currency scanning and counting machine that is relatively inexpensive to manufacture and maintain, and which also facilitates service and maintenance. In this connection, a related object of the invention is to provide such a machine having a relatively small  
15 number of parts, and in which most of the parts are arranged in a manner to have a long operating life with little or no maintenance.

It is a further object of this invention to provide such a machine that is capable of operating at a faster throughput rate than any previous machine able to determine the denomination of the scanned bills.

20 It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for identifying a currency as belonging to a set of one or more currency bills.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for determining the identity of a currency bill.

25 It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method of generating modified scanned patterns.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method of generating modified master patterns.

30 It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for determining the identity of a currency bill by comparing a modified version of a scanned pattern with one or more master patterns.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for determining the identity of a currency bill by comparing modified versions of one or more master patterns with a scanned pattern.

5 It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus using an improved pattern generation method for improving the ability of a discrimination system to accurately reject improper bills while reducing the likelihood of rejecting genuine bills.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document counting and discriminating apparatus that is capable of flagging unidentified bills.

10 It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document counting and discriminating apparatus that flags unidentified bills by suspending operation of the apparatus.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document counting and discriminating apparatus of the above type that can conveniently be  
15 caused to resume operation after an operator of the apparatus has examined an unidentified bill.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document counting and discriminating apparatus of the above type whereby the denomination or kind of any unidentified bill may be conveniently added to appropriate counters and  
20 the operation of the apparatus conveniently resumed when an operator determines that an unidentified bill is acceptable and whereby the operation of the apparatus may be conveniently resumed without adversely affecting any counter when an operator determines that an unidentified bill is not acceptable.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document  
25 discriminating apparatus that can flag a document based on the forward or reverse orientation of the document.

It is another object of this invention to provide an improved document discriminating apparatus that can sort between documents having a forward orientation and documents having a reverse orientation.

30 It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for authenticating documents including currency documents.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for authenticating United States currency bills.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for authenticating documents which may be employed in a currency  
5 discriminating apparatus.

It is an object of the present invention to provide an improved method and apparatus for authenticating documents including currency documents by illuminating a document with ultraviolet light.

It is another object of the present invention to provide an improved method  
10 and apparatus for authenticating documents which improves the ability of a system to accurately reject improper documents while reducing the likelihood of rejecting genuine documents.

Other objects and advantages of the invention will become apparent upon reading the following detailed description in conjunction with the accompanying  
15 drawings.

In accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the foregoing objectives are realized by providing a currency counting and discrimination device for receiving a stack of currency bills, rapidly counting and discriminating the bills in the stack, and then re-stacking the bills. This device includes an input  
20 receptacle for receiving a stack of currency bills to be discriminated, a discriminating unit for discriminating the currency bills by denomination, an output receptacle for receiving the currency bills after they have been discriminated, and a transport mechanism for transporting the currency bills, one at a time, from the input receptacle past the discriminating unit and to the output receptacle. The transport  
25 mechanism includes stripping wheels for stripping the lowermost bill from a stack of bills in the input receptacle, and a pair of driven transport rolls on opposite sides of the discriminating unit for transporting each bill past the discriminating unit. One of the transport rolls also receives bills directly from the stripping wheels and transports the received bills to the region between the pair of transport rolls.

30 In a preferred embodiment, a pair of photosensors are located at opposite sides of the bill transport path, each photosensor including a light source and a protective lens on one side of the bill, and a photodetector and a protective lens on



the other side of the bill. The lenses for both the light sources and the photodetectors are located sufficiently close to each other that the lenses are wiped by the bills transported therebetween.

In accordance with a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the objectives enumerated above are achieved by scanning a document along one or more segments, generating one or more scanned patterns therefrom, and comparing the one or more scanned patterns to one or more master patterns associated with scans along corresponding segments of genuine documents. According to a preferred embodiment, bills are fed in and scanned across their narrow dimension. According to another preferred embodiment, bills are fed in and scanned across their wide dimension. A preferred embodiment of the present invention involves a technique based on the optical sensing of reflectance characteristics obtained by illuminating and scanning a document such as a currency bill along an appropriately selected segment or segments of a document. Light reflected from the bill as it is optically scanned is detected and used as an analog representation of the variation in the dark and light content of the printed pattern or indicia on the bill surface.

A series of such detected reflectance signals are obtained by sampling and digitally processing, under microprocessor control, the reflected light at a plurality of predefined sample points as the bill is moved across the illuminated strip. Accordingly, a fixed number of reflectance samples is obtained across the note. The data samples obtained for a bill scan are subjected to digital processing, including a normalizing process to deaccentuate variations due to contrast fluctuations in the printed pattern or indicia existing on the surface of the bill being scanned. The normalized reflectance data represent a characteristic pattern that is fairly unique for a given bill identity and incorporates sufficient distinguishing features between characteristic patterns for different bill-types so as to accurately differentiate therebetween.

By using the above approach, a series of master characteristic patterns are generated and stored using standard bills for each denomination of currency that is to be detected. The "standard" bills used to generate the master characteristic patterns are preferably bills that are slightly used bills. According to a preferred embodiment, two or four characteristic patterns are generated and stored within

system memory for each detectable bill-type. The stored patterns correspond, respectively, to optical scans performed on one or both sides of a bill along "forward" and "reverse" directions relative to the pattern printed on the bill. For bills which produce significant pattern changes when shifted slightly to the left or right, such as the \$10 bill in U.S. currency, it is preferred to store two patterns for each of the "forward" and "reverse" directions, each pair of patterns for the same direction represent two scan areas that are slightly displaced from each other along the lateral dimension of the bill. Preferably, the document identification system of this invention is adapted to identify different denominations of a plurality of currency systems. Accordingly, a master set of different characteristic patterns is stored within the system memory for subsequent correlation purposes.

According to a preferred embodiment a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns, typically three, each generated by scanning a genuine bill of the given denomination.

According to one method, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns, wherein the component patterns are generated by scanning one or more genuine bills of "standard" or average quality of the given denomination. A "standard" bill is a slightly used bill, as opposed to a crisp new bill or one which has been subject to a high degree of usage.

According to another method, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns, wherein some of the component patterns are generated by scanning one or more new bills of the given denomination and some of the component patterns are generated by scanning one or more old bills of the given denomination.

According to the correlation technique of this invention, the pattern generated by scanning a bill under test and processing the sampled data is compared with each of the prestored characteristic patterns within a preliminary set (to be described below) to generate, for each comparison, a correlation number representing the extent of similarity between corresponding ones of the plurality of data samples for the compared patterns. Bill identification is based on designating the scanned bill as belonging to the bill-type corresponding to the stored characteristic pattern for which

the correlation number resulting from pattern comparison is determined to be the highest. The possibility of a scanned bill having its identity mischaracterized following the comparison of characteristic patterns is significantly reduced by defining a bi-level threshold of correlation that must be satisfied for a "positive" call  
5 to be made.

In essence, the present invention utilizes an optical sensing and correlation technique for positively identifying any of a plurality of different bill-types regardless of whether the bill is scanned along the "forward" or "reverse" directions. Likewise in a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the system is capable of  
10 identifying any of a plurality of different bill-types regardless of whether the bill is fed into the system with a "face up" or "face down" orientation. Face orientation can be accommodated by storing master patterns scanned from both sides of genuine documents, using a system having one or more scanheads on a single side of a document transport path, and comparing scanned patterns to master patterns retrieved  
15 from both sides of genuine documents. Alternatively, scanheads may be placed on both sides of a document transport path, scanned patterns retrieved from respective sides can be compared to master patterns from both sides or master patterns from corresponding sides where face orientation can be determined. Additionally, a cross check can be performed so that the identity determined by a match of patterns from  
20 one side of a document is consistent with the identity indicated by comparing patterns from the other side of the document. For both one-sided and two-sided scanhead systems, where the face orientation of a document can be determined before patterns are compared, scanned patterns from one side of a document can be compared only to master patterns retrieved from a corresponding side. Similar methods can be  
25 employed for accommodating documents fed in forward and reverse directions.

In a preferred embodiment, the invention is particularly adapted to be implemented with a system programmed to track each identified currency identity so as to conveniently present aggregate totals for bills that have been identified at the end of a scan run. A preferred embodiment incorporates an abbreviated curved  
30 transport path for accepting currency bills that are to be counted and transporting the bills about their narrow dimension across a scanhead located downstream of the curved path and onto a conventional stacking station where sensed and counted bills

are collected. In a preferred embodiment, a scanhead of the present invention operates in conjunction with an optical encoder which is adapted to initiate the capture of a predefined number of reflectance data samples when a bill (and, thus, the indicia or pattern printed thereupon) moves across a coherent strip of light  
5 focused by the scanhead.

In a preferred embodiment, a scanhead of the present invention uses a pair of light-emitting diodes ("LEDs") to focus a coherent light strip of predefined dimensions and having a normalized distribution of light intensity across the illuminated area. The LEDs are angularly disposed and focus the desired strip of  
10 light onto the narrow dimension of a bill positioned flat across the scanning surface of the scanhead. A photodetector detects light reflected from the bill. The sampling of the photodetector output is controlled by the optical encoder to obtain the desired reflectance samples. In a preferred embodiment, initiation of sampling is based upon detection of the edge of a bill. In another preferred embodiment for bills having a  
15 borderline surrounding the remaining printed indicia, initiation of sampling is based upon detection of the borderline of a bill.

Some of the above described techniques and apparatus as tailored to scanning U.S. currency are more fully disclosed in United States Patent No. 5,295,196, for a "Method and Apparatus for Currency Discrimination and Counting" incorporated  
20 herein in its entirety.

In adapting the currency discriminating method and apparatus disclosed in United States Patent No. 5,295,196 to optimize the scanning of currencies from countries other than the United States, it is first noted that while it has been found that scanning along the central portion of the green side of U.S. bills provides good  
25 patterns to discriminate between the different U.S. denominations, foreign bills may require scanning along segments located in locations other than the center and the desirable areas to scan bills can vary from bill-type to bill-type. For example, it may be determined that it is desirable to scan German marks in the forward direction along a segment 1 inch (2.54 cm) to the left of center along the top face of a bill  
30 while it may be desirable to scan British pounds along a segment 1.5 inches (3.81 cm) to the right of center. To provide a system capable of scanning along a plurality of laterally displaced segments, the present invention utilizes either a plurality of

laterally displaced stationary scanheads, one or more laterally moveable scanheads, or a linear array scanhead having a plurality of laterally displaced sensors. In a preferred embodiment, the scanheads or sensors are arranged in a symmetrical manner about the center of document to be scanned. Such a symmetrical arrangement aids in providing a system which is capable of accepting bills fed in both the forward and reverse directions.

Additionally, while all denominations of U.S. currency have the same size, currencies from other countries may vary in size from country to country as well as from denomination to denomination for currency from the same country. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, variance in size is accommodated by incorporating means for determining the size of a document. These size determining means may include sensors separate from the scanheads or scanning sensors discussed above or alternatively, in some preferred embodiments of the present invention, may include the scanheads or scanning sensors discussed above which are used for the retrieval of scanned characteristic patterns. Based on the size information retrieved from a bill, selected scanheads may be activated, laterally moveable scanheads may be appropriately positioned and activated, and/or selected sensors in a linear array scanhead may be activated to permit scanning along appropriate segments of a bill based on its size. Alternatively, all scanheads or scanning sensors may be activated and the output of appropriately positioned scanheads or scanning sensors may be processed to generate scanned patterns based on the size of a bill. Furthermore, based on the size of a bill, a preliminary determination can be made as to which of a plurality of genuine bill-types a bill under test may potentially match. Based on such a preliminary determination, the comparison of generated scanned patterns can be limited to only master patterns associated with bill-types chosen from the preliminary set of potentially matching bills.

Likewise, the transport mechanism which transports documents to be scanned past the above described scanheads may be designed to transport documents in a centered manner, left or right justified manner, in a non-controlled lateral positioned manner, in a non-skewed manner, or in a skewed manner. Sensors separate and distinct from the above described scanheads or the above described scanheads themselves may be used to determine the lateral positioning of transported bills

and/or their degree of skew. Based on a determination of the laterally positioning of a bill and/or its skew, appropriately positioned scanheads or scanning sensors may be activated or laterally moveable scanheads may be appropriately positioned and activated or the output from appropriately positioned scanheads or scanning sensors may be processed to generate scanned patterns based on the lateral positioning and/or skew of the bill.

Additionally, while all denominations of U.S. currency have the same colors (a "green" side and a "black" side), currencies from other countries may vary in color from country to country as well as from denomination to denomination for currency from the same country. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, variance in color is accommodated by incorporating means for determining the color of a document. These color determining means may include sensors separate from the scanheads or sensors discussed above or alternatively, in some preferred embodiments of the present invention, may include the appropriately modified scanheads or sensors discussed above which are used for the retrieval of scanned characteristic patterns. For example, colored filters may be placed in front of the above described scanheads or sensors. Based on the color information retrieved from a bill, selected scanheads may be activated, laterally moveable scanheads may be appropriately positioned and activated, and/or selected sensors in a linear array scanhead may be activated to permit scanning along appropriate segments of a bill based on its color. Alternatively, all scanheads or scanning sensors may be activated and the output of appropriately positioned scanheads or scanning sensors may be processed to generate scanned patterns based on the color of a bill. Furthermore, based on the color of a bill, a preliminary determination can be made as to which of a plurality of genuine bill-types a bill under test may potentially match. Based on such a preliminary determination, the comparison of generated scanned patterns can be limited to only master patterns associated with bill-types chosen from the preliminary set of potentially matching bills.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, both color and size information may be utilized as described above.

In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, scanheads are positioned on both sides of a document transport path so as to permit scanning of either or both sides of a document.

According to a preferred embodiment, an apparatus for currency  
5 discrimination comprises first and second stationary scanheads, disposed on opposite sides of a bill transport path, for scanning respective first and second opposing surfaces of a bill traveling along the bill transport path and for producing respective output signals. The bill travels along the transport path in the direction of a predetermined dimension of the bill. A memory stores master characteristic patterns  
10 corresponding to associated predetermined surfaces (e.g., green surfaces) of a plurality of denominations of genuine bills. Sampling circuitry samples the output signals associated with the respective first and second opposing surfaces of the scanned bill. A signal processor is programmed to determine which one of the first and second opposing surfaces corresponds to the associated predetermined surfaces of  
15 the plurality of denominations of genuine bills. According to a preferred embodiment adapted for discriminating, for example, U.S. bills, the determination as to which surface of a bill corresponds to a predetermined surface is made by detecting the borderlines on each side of a bill and determining the relative times of detection of each borderline. The processor then correlates the output signal associated with the  
20 one of the first and second opposing surfaces corresponding to the associated predetermined surfaces with the master characteristic patterns. If the degree of correlation between the selected output signal and any of the stored characteristic patterns is greater than a predetermined threshold, then the denomination of the bill is positively identified.

25 For each scanhead, initiation of sampling is based upon detection of the change in reflectance value that occurs when the outer border of the printed pattern on a bill is encountered relative to the reflectance value obtained at the edge of the bill where no printed pattern exists. According to a preferred embodiment of this invention, illuminated strips of at least two different dimensions are used for the  
30 scanning process. A narrow strip is used initially to detect the starting point of the printed pattern on a bill and is adapted to distinguish the thin borderline that typically marks the starting point of and encloses the printed pattern on a bill. For the rest of

the preselected dimension scanning following detection of the borderline of the printed pattern, a substantially wider strip of light is used to collect the predefined number of samples for a bill scan. The generation and storage of characteristic patterns using standard notes and the subsequent comparison and correlation  
5 procedure for classifying the scanned bill as belonging to one of several predefined currency denominations is based on the above-described sensing and correlation technique.

Furthermore, in accordance with another feature of the present invention, the objectives enumerated above in connection with correlating patterns are achieved by  
10 repetitively comparing a scanned pattern with multiple sets of master patterns until a sufficient match is found, or alternatively, by repetitively comparing a set of original master patterns with multiple scanned patterns until a sufficient match is found. The multiple sets of master patterns comprise an original set of master patterns plus one or more sets of modified versions of the original master patterns. The multiple  
15 scanned patterns comprise an original scanned pattern plus one or more modified versions of the original scanned patterns. Each modified pattern comprises one or more replicated data values from a corresponding original pattern to which each modified pattern is to be compared. Alternatively, each modified master pattern comprises one or more data values which are set equal to zero.

20 Briefly, in accordance with a preferred embodiment, an improved method of generating modified scanned or master patterns for use in a discrimination system capable of identifying one or more currency bills is provided. Each of the scanned and master patterns comprises a sequence of data values representing analog variations of characteristic information along a segment of a bill and each pattern has  
25 a leading end and a trailing end. Each of the data values has an associated sequence position. The modified scanned or master patterns are generated by designating either the scanned pattern or the master pattern for modification and inserting a predetermined number, R, of data values at either the trailing end of the sequence of data values of the designated pattern when the modification is performed in the  
30 forward direction or the leading end of the sequence of data values of the designated pattern when the modification is performed in the backward direction. This modification effectively removes R data values from the leading or trailing end of the



designated pattern. Either the last R data values of the designated pattern are set equal to the last R data values of the non-designated pattern when the modification is performed in the forward direction or the first R data values of the designated pattern are set equal to the first R data values of the non-designated pattern when the  
5 modification is performed in the backward direction. Alternatively, the modified master patterns are generated by inserting R data samples at the leading or trailing ends of the master patterns and by setting the first R or last R data samples of the modified master pattern equal to zero.

According to a preferred method, a modified scanned pattern is generated by  
10 removing a predetermined number of leading or trailing data values of an original scanned pattern. Trailing or leading data values, respectively, are added to the modified scanned pattern with the added data values being copied from corresponding sequence positions of a corresponding master pattern. Alternatively, instead of explicitly removing leading or trailing data values, the leading or trailing data values  
15 may be effectively removed by adding data values to the opposite end of the scanned pattern and treating the modified scanned pattern as not including the "removed" leading or trailing data values.

According to another preferred method, a modified master pattern is generated in a similar manner except that added trailing or leading data values of the modified  
20 master pattern are set equal to data values copied from corresponding sequence positions of a scanned pattern.

According to another preferred method, a modified master pattern is generated in a similar manner except that added trailing or leading data values of the modified master pattern are set equal to zero.

25 The above described modified patterns or pattern generation methods may be employed in currency identification systems to compensate for misalignment between scanned and master patterns.

According to another preferred method, a scanned pattern comprising a number of data values is compared with one or more master patterns also comprising  
30 a number of data values. The scanned and master patterns represent analog variations in characteristic information retrieved from bills along corresponding segments. For example, the patterns may comprise 64 data values generated by

sampling the output of a photodetector as a bill is moved relative to a scanhead, the output of the photodetector representing analog variation in the reflectance of light along a given segment of the bill. If none of the master patterns sufficiently match the scanned pattern, the scanned pattern may be modified and the modified scanned pattern compared to the master patterns. For example, data values #1 and #2 may be removed from the scanned pattern sequence, scanned patterns #3 and #4 may be made the first and second values in the modified sequence with subsequent data values modified accordingly. As a result of such a process, the original data values #63 and #64 now become modified data values #61 and #62. As a result of the above steps an incomplete modified pattern of data values #1 - #62 is generated. According to a preferred embodiment, modified data values #63 and #64 are generated by replicating data values #63 and #64 of the master patterns to which the modified scanned pattern is to be compared. If the modified patterns do not sufficiently match any of the master patterns, the modification process may be reiterated except that new scanned modified values #61 - #64 are generated by replicating master pattern values #61 - #64. This process is repeated until a sufficient match is found or until a predetermined number of modification iterations have occurred.

According to another preferred embodiment, scanned patterns may be modified backwards instead of the forward modification described above.

According to another preferred embodiment, master patterns may be modified instead of scanned patterns. According to this method, data values from scanned patterns are replicated into appropriate locations in modified master pattern sequences.

According to another preferred embodiment, trailing or leading sequence positions of modified master patterns may be filled with zeros instead of replicated data values from a scanned pattern to which modified master patterns are to be compared.

According to another preferred embodiment, modified master patterns with trailing or leading data values equal to zero are stored in a memory of an identification system along with corresponding unmodified master patterns, the master patterns and modified master patterns being stored before a bill under test is scanned

by the identification system. When a bill under test is scanned by the identification system it is compared to one or more of the master patterns. If the identity of the bill can not be determined based on this comparison, the scanned pattern is compared with one or more of the modified master patterns. This process can be repeated,  
5 with the scanned pattern being compared to multiply modified master patterns if necessary.

According to another preferred embodiment, a currency evaluation device is provided that is able to discriminate among bills of different denominations from two or more currency systems. In a preferred embodiment, such a device is provided that  
10 is able to discriminate among both Canadian and German bills of different denominations. In a preferred embodiment, such a device utilizes three scanheads when scanning Canadian bills and a single scanhead when scanning German bills. The device is able to accept faced Canadian and German bills fed in either the forward or reverse directions. According to a preferred embodiment, the operator of  
15 the device pre-declares whether Canadian or German bills are to be discriminated. According to a preferred embodiment the measured length of the narrow dimension of German bills is utilized in discriminating German bills. To accommodate for possible lateral shifting of bills relative to the scanhead, multiple German master patterns associated with laterally displaced scans are stored for some denominations.  
20 To accommodate for possible lateral shifting of bills relative to the scanheads, multiple Canadian patterns associated with laterally displaced scans are generated and averaged in generated stored Canadian master patterns. To compensate for problems associated with triggering scanning relative to the edge of a bill, multiple patterns are stored for both Canadian and German bills associated with both leading and lagging  
25 printed indicia.

In accordance with another preferred embodiment of the present invention, a correlation technique is utilized whereby a scanned pattern generated from the green side of a test bill is correlated against stored green-side master patterns. If as a result of the green-side correlation, the denomination of the test bill can not be called, a  
30 scanned pattern generated from the black side of the test bill is correlated against stored black-side master patterns. More particularly, if the green-side correlation results in an indication that the test bill is a \$20, \$50, or \$100 bill but not with

sufficiently high certainty so as to permit calling the denomination of the test bill, then the black-side scanned pattern is correlated against one or more black-side master patterns, provided the best call green-side correlation number is greater than a predetermined threshold.

5           According to a preferred embodiment, documents, including currency bills, are discriminated by comparing a scanned pattern retrieved from a first side of a test document with one or more stored master patterns retrieved from a first side of one or more genuine documents and comparing a scanned pattern retrieved from a second side of a test document with one or more stored master patterns retrieved from a  
10           second side of one or more genuine documents.

          According to one embodiment a currency discriminator is provided that counts and discriminates bills as they pass a discriminating unit and that flags an unidentified bill or one having a predetermined characteristic, for example a bill having a specified orientation, by transferring the flagged bill to a location where it can be  
15           conveniently examined by an operator and then suspending the operation of the discriminator. The operator may then examine the bill and determine whether the bill is acceptable or not. Denomination selection elements such as keys are provided to enable the operator with the depression of a single button to indicate the denomination of an unidentified but acceptable bill, to cause the value of the bill to  
20           be reflected in any appropriate counters, and to cause the discriminator to resume operation. A continuation selection element is also provided to enable the operator to cause the discriminator to resume operation without adversely affecting any counters when an unidentified bill is determined to be unacceptable.

          According to one embodiment of the present invention, a discriminator is  
25           provided with a single output receptacle in which all bills are stacked after they pass by the discriminating unit. When an unidentified bill is detected, the discriminator halts operation with the unidentified bill positioned at a predetermined location within the stack such as at the top or back of the stack of bills in the output receptacle or at a predetermined position just prior to the stack. The bill may then be conveniently  
30           examined by the operator.

          According to another embodiment of the present invention, a discriminator is provided with an examining station where unidentified bills are transferred before the

discriminator halts operation. Upon determination that a bill is acceptable, the bill may then be transferred to the output receptacle in a single output receptacle discriminator or to an output receptacle associated with the denomination or other characteristic of the bill in a multi-output receptacle discriminator. Additionally, a  
5 reject receptacle may be provided for receiving bills which are determined to be unacceptable.

According to another embodiment of the present invention, a discriminator discriminates a stack of bills and flags bills having a given forward/reverse orientation. Accordingly, when a stack of bills predominately oriented in the forward  
10 or reverse direction is discriminated by the discriminator, any bills oriented in the opposite forward/reverse direction may be flagged. Any flagged bills may either be removed without replacement or re-oriented in the appropriate forward or reverse direction. As a result, a stack of bills may be generated in which all bills have the same forward/reverse orientation. Alternatively, in a multi-output receptacle  
15 discriminator, instead of flagging bills based on their forward/reverse orientation, bills having a forward orientation may be routed to one output receptacle and those having a reverse orientation may be routed to another output receptacle.

Likewise a discriminator may flag or sort bills based on their face orientation, that is face up or face down, or bills not belonging to a given denomination.  
20 Furthermore, the above criteria may be combined in various operating modes of the discriminator.

In a preferred embodiment, the discriminator optically scans an area of a bill and generates a scanned pattern from optical reflectance samples. A scanned pattern is compared with a plurality of master patterns associated with genuine bills of  
25 different denominations. Furthermore, the discriminator may store master patterns associated with both forward and reverse scans and/or both top surface and bottom surface scans of genuine bills.

In a preferred embodiment, a bill is scanned for first and second characteristic information, utilizing the first characteristic information to determine the  
30 denomination of a scanned bill, and using the second characteristic information to verify the genuineness of the bill. More particularly, a currency evaluation device, according to the present invention, comprises detection circuitry for detecting first

and second characteristic information from a scanned bill, a memory for storing sets of genuine first and second characteristic information for a plurality of denominations of genuine bills, and signal processing means for comparing the detected first and second characteristic information with the stored genuine first and second characteristic information. The signal processing means performs a first comparison whereby the detected first characteristic information is compared with the stored sets of genuine first characteristic information. This first comparison results in either an indication of the denomination of the scanned bill or an error. The results of the first comparison are used to streamline a second comparison between detected and stored second characteristic information. The second comparison compares the detected second characteristic information with stored genuine second characteristic information corresponding to the denomination indicated by the first comparison. The second comparison results in either an indication of the genuineness of the scanned bill or an error.

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, a document to be authenticated is illuminated with ultraviolet light and the amount of ultraviolet light which is reflected off the document is measured. Based on the amount of ultraviolet light which is detected, the document is either authenticated or rejected. In the case of documents being authenticated relative to United States currency, a bill is rejected if a high level of reflected ultraviolet light is not detected.

In another preferred embodiment, the above objectives are achieved by illuminating a document with ultraviolet light and measuring both the amount of reflected ultraviolet light and the amount of emitted visible light. Based on the amount of ultraviolet light detected and the amount of visible light detected, a document is either authenticated or rejected. In the case of documents being authenticated relative to United States currency, a bill is rejected if either a high level of reflected ultraviolet light is not detected or even a low level of visible light is detected.

As explained above, it is known that some counterfeit United States bills fluoresce, or emit visible light, when illuminated by ultraviolet light. As genuine United States currency does not fluoresce, the emission of visible light has been employed as a means of detecting counterfeit United States currency. However, it

has been found that not all counterfeit United States bills fluoresce; and hence, such counterfeits will not be detected by the above described fluorescence test.

It has been found that genuine United States currency reflects a high level of ultraviolet light when illuminated by an ultraviolet light source. It has also been  
5 found that some counterfeit United States bills do not reflect a high level of ultraviolet light. Such counterfeit bills may or may not also fluoresce under ultraviolet light. The present invention employs an authentication test wherein the amount of reflected ultraviolet light is measured and a bill is rejected if it does not reflect a high amount of ultraviolet light. By employing such a test, counterfeit  
10 United States bills which do not reflect a high level of ultraviolet light may be properly rejected.

While not all counterfeit United States bills fail to reflect a high level of ultraviolet light and hence not all counterfeit United States bills will be detected using this test, the present invention provides an additional means for detecting counterfeit  
15 bills which might otherwise go undetected. Furthermore, the likelihood of a counterfeit United States bill going undetected may be further reduced by employing an alternative embodiment of the present invention wherein both the amount of reflected ultraviolet light and the amount of emitted visible light are measured. In such a system, a bill is rejected as counterfeit if either it fails to reflect a high level  
20 of ultraviolet light or it fluoresces.

The above described embodiments may be adapted to authenticate currencies from other countries and other types of documents such as food stamps and checks. For instance some genuine documents may be designed to reflect ultraviolet light only in certain locations and/or in a predetermined pattern. An alternative embodiment of  
25 the present invention may be designed to accept documents which exhibit similar characteristics while rejecting those which do not. Likewise, an alternative embodiment of the present invention may be employed to authenticate documents based on both their characteristics with respect to reflected ultraviolet light and their characteristics with respect to fluorescent emissions, e.g., detecting the amount,  
30 location, and/or pattern of fluorescent emissions.

**Brief Description Of The Drawings**

FIG. 1 is a perspective view of a currency scanning and counting machine embodying the present invention;

FIG. 2a is a functional block diagram of the currency scanning and counting machine of FIG. 1 illustrating a scanhead arranged on each side of a transport path;

FIG. 2b is a functional block diagram of the currency scanning and counting machine illustrating a scanhead arranged on a single side of a transport path;

FIG. 2c is a functional block diagram of the currency scanning and counting machine similar to that of FIG. 2b but illustrating the feeding and scanning of bills along their wide direction;

FIG. 2d is a functional block diagram of the currency scanning and counting machine similar to that of FIGs. 2a-2d illustrating the employment of a second characteristic detector;

FIG. 3 is a diagrammatic perspective illustration of the successive areas scanned during the traversing movement of a single bill across an optical sensor according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIGs. 4a and 4b are perspective views of a bill and a preferred area to be optically scanned on the bill;

FIGs. 5a and 5b are diagrammatic side elevation views of the scan area to be optically scanned on a bill according to preferred embodiments of the present invention;

FIG. 6a is a perspective view of a bill showing the preferred area of a first surface to be scanned by one of the two scanheads employed in the preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 6b is another perspective view of the bill in FIG. 6a showing the preferred area of a second surface to be scanned by the other of the scanheads employed in the preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 6c is a side elevation showing the first surface of a bill scanned by an upper scanhead and the second surface of the bill scanned by a lower scanhead;

FIG. 6d is a side elevation showing the first surface of a bill scanned by a lower scanhead and the second surface of the bill scanned by an upper scanhead;



FIGs. 7a and 7b form a block diagram illustrating a preferred circuit arrangement for processing and correlating reflectance data according to the optical sensing and counting technique of this invention;

FIGs. 8a and 8b comprise a flowchart illustrating the sequence of operations involved in implementing a discrimination and authentication system according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 9 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in detecting the presence of a bill adjacent the lower scanhead and the borderline on the side of the bill adjacent to the lower scanhead;

FIG. 10 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in detecting the presence of a bill adjacent the upper scanhead and the borderline on the side of the bill adjacent to the upper scanhead;

FIG. 11a is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in the analog-to-digital conversion routine associated with the lower scanhead;

FIG. 11b is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in the analog-to-digital conversion routine associated with the upper scanhead;

FIG. 12 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in determining which scanhead is scanning the green side of a U.S. currency bill;

FIG. 13 is a flow chart illustrating the sequence of operations involved in determining the bill denomination from the correlation results;

FIG. 14 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in decelerating and stopping the bill transport system in the event of an error;

FIG. 15a is a graphical illustration of representative characteristic patterns generated by narrow dimension optical scanning of a \$1 currency bill in the forward direction;

FIG. 15b is a graphical illustration of representative characteristic patterns generated by narrow dimension optical scanning of a \$2 currency bill in the reverse direction;

FIG. 15c is a graphical illustration of representative characteristic patterns generated by narrow dimension optical scanning of a \$100 currency bill in the forward direction;

FIG. 15d is a graph illustrating component patterns generated by scanning old and new \$20 bills according a second method according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 15e is a graph illustrating an pattern for a \$20 bill scanned in the  
5 forward direction derived by averaging the patterns of FIG. 15d according a second method according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIGs. 16a-e are graphical illustrations of the effect produced on correlation pattern by using the progressive shifting technique, according to an embodiment of this invention;

10 FIGs. 17a-17c are a flowchart illustrating a preferred embodiment of a modified pattern generation method according to the present invention;

FIG. 18a is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in the execution of multiple correlations of the scan data from a single bill;

FIG. 18b is a flow chart illustrating a modified sequential procedure of that of  
15 FIG. 18a;

FIG. 19a is a flow chart illustrating the sequence of operations involved in determining the bill denomination from the correlation results using data retrieved from the green side of U.S. bills according to one preferred embodiment of the present invention;

20 FIGs. 19b and 19c are a flow chart illustrating the sequence of operations involved in determining the bill denomination from the correlation results using data retrieved from the black side of U.S. bills;

FIG. 20a is an enlarged vertical section taken approximately through the center of the machine, but showing the various transport rolls in side elevation;

25 FIG. 20b is a top plan view of the interior mechanism of the machine of FIG. 1 for transporting bills across the optical scanheads, and also showing the stacking wheels at the front of the machine;

FIG. 21a is an enlarged perspective view of the bill transport mechanism which receives bills from the stripping wheels in the machine of FIG. 1;

30 FIG. 21b is a cross-sectional view of the bill transport mechanism depicted in FIG. 21 along line 21b;

FIG. 22 is a side elevation of the machine of FIG. 1, with the side panel of the housing removed;

FIG. 23 is an enlarged bottom plan view of the lower support member in the machine of FIG. 1 and the passive transport rolls mounted on that member;

5        FIG. 24 is a sectional view taken across the center of the bottom support member of FIG. 23 across the narrow dimension thereof;

FIG. 25 is an end elevation of the upper support member which includes the upper scanhead in the machine of FIG. 1, and the sectional view of the lower support member mounted beneath the upper support member;

10        FIG. 26 is a section taken through the centers of both the upper and lower support members, along the long dimension of the lower support member shown in FIG. 23;

FIG. 27 is a top plan view of the upper support member which includes the upper scanhead;

15        FIG. 28 is a bottom plan view of the upper support member which includes the upper scanhead;

FIG. 29 is an illustration of the light distribution produced about one of the optical scanheads;

20        FIGs. 30a and 30b are diagrammatic illustrations of the location of two auxiliary photo sensors relative to a bill passed thereover by the transport and scanning mechanism shown in FIGs. 20a-28;

FIG. 31 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a ramp-up routine for increasing the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism from zero to top speed;

25        FIG. 32 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a ramp-to-slow-speed routine for decreasing the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism from top speed to slow speed;

30        FIG. 33 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a ramp-to-zero-speed routine for decreasing the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism to zero;

FIG. 34 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a pause-after-ramp routine for delaying the feedback loop while the bill transport mechanism changes speeds;

FIG. 35 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a  
5 feedback loop routine for monitoring and stabilizing the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism;

FIG. 36 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a doubles detection routine for detecting overlapped bills;

FIG. 37 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a  
10 routine for detecting sample data representing dark blemishes on a bill;

FIG. 38 is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in a routine for maintaining a desired readhead voltage level;

FIG. 39 is a top view of a bill and size determining sensors according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 40 is a top view of a bill illustrating multiple areas to be optically  
15 scanned on a bill according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 41a is a graph illustrating a scanned pattern which is offset from a corresponding master pattern;

FIG. 41b is a graph illustrating the same patterns of FIG. 41a after the  
20 scanned pattern is shifted relative to the master pattern;

FIG. 42 is a side elevation of a multiple scanhead arrangement according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 43 is a side elevation of a multiple scanhead arrangement according to another preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 44 is a side elevation of a multiple scanhead arrangement according to  
25 another preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 45 is a side elevation of a multiple scanhead arrangement according to another preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 46 is a top view of a staggered scanhead arrangement according to a  
30 preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 47a is a top view of a linear array scanhead according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention illustrating a bill being fed in a centered fashion;

FIG. 47b is a side view of a linear array scanhead according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention illustrating a bill being fed in a centered fashion;

FIG. 48 is a top view of a linear array scanhead according to another preferred embodiment of the present invention illustrating a bill being fed in a non-centered fashion;

FIG. 49 is a top view of a linear array scanhead according to another preferred embodiment of the present invention illustrating a bill being fed in a skewed fashion;

FIGs. 50a and 50b are a flowchart of the operation of a currency discrimination system according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 51 is a top view of a triple scanhead arrangement utilized in a discriminating device able to discriminate both Canadian and German bills according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 52 is a top view of Canadian bill illustrating the areas scanned by the triple scanhead arrangement of FIG. 51 according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 53 is a flowchart of the threshold tests utilized in calling the denomination of a Canadian bill according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 54a illustrates the general areas scanned in generating master 10 DM German patterns according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 54b illustrates the general areas scanned in generating master 20 DM, 50 DM, and 100 DM German patterns according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 55 is a flowchart of the threshold tests utilized in calling the denomination of a German bill according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention;

FIG. 56 is a functional block diagram illustrating a preferred embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention;

FIG. 57 is a functional block diagram illustrating another preferred embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention;

FIG. 58 is a functional block diagram illustrating another preferred embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention;

5        FIG. 59 is an enlarged plan view of the control and display panel in the machine of FIG. 1;

FIG. 60a is a side view of a preferred embodiment of a document authenticating system according to the present invention;

FIG. 60b is a top view of the preferred embodiment of FIG. 60a along the direction 60b;

10        FIG. 60c is a top view of the preferred embodiment of FIG. 60a along the direction 60c; and

FIG. 61 is a functional block diagram illustrating a preferred embodiment of a document authenticating system according to the present invention.

15        **Detailed Description Of The Preferred Embodiments**

While the invention is susceptible to various modifications and alternative forms, specific embodiments thereof have been shown by way of example in the drawings and will herein be described in detail. It should be understood, however, that it is not intended to limit the invention to the particular forms disclosed, but on  
20        the contrary, the intention is to cover all modifications, equivalents, and alternatives falling within the spirit and scope of the invention as defined by the appended claims.

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, a currency discrimination system adapted to U.S. currency is described in connection with, for example, FIGs. 1-38. Subsequently, modifications to such a discrimination system  
25        will be described in obtaining a currency discrimination system in accordance with other preferred embodiments of the present invention, such a currency discriminator systems having multiple scanheads per side. Furthermore, while the preferred embodiments below entail the scanning of currency bills, the system of the present invention is applicable to other documents as well. For example, the system of the  
30        present invention may be employed in conjunction with stock certificates, bonds, and postage and food stamps.

Referring now to FIGs. 1 and 2a, there is shown a preferred embodiment of a currency scanning and counting machine 10 according to the present invention. The machine 10 includes an input receptacle or bill accepting station 12 where stacks of currency bills that need to be identified and counted are positioned. Bills in the input  
5 receptacle are acted upon by a bill separating station 14 which functions to pick out or separate one bill at a time for being sequentially relayed by a bill transport mechanism 16 (FIG. 2a), according to a precisely predetermined transport path, between a pair of scanheads 18a, 18b where the currency denomination of the bill is scanned and identified. In the preferred embodiment, bills are scanned and identified  
10 at a rate in excess of 800 bills per minute. In the preferred embodiment depicted, each scanhead 18a, 18b is an optical scanhead that scans for characteristic information from a scanned bill 17 which is used to identify the denomination of the bill. The scanned bill 17 is then transported to an output receptacle or bill stacking station 20 where bills so processed are stacked for subsequent removal.

Each optical scanhead 18a, 18b preferably comprises a pair of light sources 22  
15 directing light onto the bill transport path so as to illuminate a substantially rectangular light strip 24 upon a currency bill 17 positioned on the transport path adjacent the scanhead 18. Light reflected off the illuminated strip 24 is sensed by a photodetector 26 positioned between the two light sources. The analog output of the  
20 photodetector 26 is converted into a digital signal by means of an analog-to-digital (ADC) convertor unit 28 whose output is fed as a digital input to a central processing unit (CPU) 30.

While scanheads 18a, 18b of FIG. 2a are optical scanheads, it should be understood that it may be designed to detect a variety of characteristic information  
25 from currency bills. Additionally, the scanhead may employ a variety of detection means such as magnetic, optical, electrical conductivity, and capacitive sensors. Use of such sensors is discussed in more detail below (see e.g., FIG. 2d).

Referring again to FIG. 2a, the bill transport path is defined in such a way that the transport mechanism 16 moves currency bills with the narrow dimension of  
30 the bills being parallel to the transport path and the scan direction. Alternatively, the system 10 may be designed to scan bills along their long dimension or along a skewed dimension. As a bill 17 traverses the scanheads 18a, 18b, the coherent light

strip 24 effectively scans the bill across the narrow dimension of the bill. In the preferred embodiment depicted, the transport path is so arranged that a currency bill 17 is scanned across a central section of the bill along its narrow dimension, as shown in FIG. 2a. Each scanhead functions to detect light reflected from the bill as it moves across the illuminated light strip 24 and to provide an analog representation of the variation in reflected light, which, in turn, represents the variation in the dark and light content of the printed pattern or indicia on the surface of the bill. This variation in light reflected from the narrow dimension scanning of the bills serves as a measure for distinguishing, with a high degree of confidence, among a plurality of currency denominations which the system is programmed to handle.

A series of such detected reflectance signals are obtained across the narrow dimension of the bill, or across a selected segment thereof, and the resulting analog signals are digitized under control of the CPU 30 to yield a fixed number of digital reflectance data samples. The data samples are then subjected to a normalizing routine for processing the sampled data for improved correlation and for smoothing out variations due to "contrast" fluctuations in the printed pattern existing on the bill surface. The normalized reflectance data represents a characteristic pattern that is unique for a given bill denomination and provides sufficient distinguishing features among characteristic patterns for different currency denominations.

In order to ensure strict correspondence between reflectance samples obtained by narrow dimension scanning of successive bills, the reflectance sampling process is preferably controlled through the CPU 30 by means of an optical encoder 32 which is linked to the bill transport mechanism 16 and precisely tracks the physical movement of the bill 17 between the scanheads 18a, 18b. More specifically, the optical encoder 32 is linked to the rotary motion of the drive motor which generates the movement imparted to the bill along the transport path. In addition, the mechanics of the feed mechanism ensure that positive contact is maintained between the bill and the transport path, particularly when the bill is being scanned by the scanheads. Under these conditions, the optical encoder 32 is capable of precisely tracking the movement of the bill 17 relative to the light strips 24 generated by the scanheads 18a, 18b by monitoring the rotary motion of the drive motor.



The outputs of the photodetectors 26 are monitored by the CPU 30 to initially detect the presence of the bill adjacent the scanheads and, subsequently, to detect the starting point of the printed pattern on the bill, as represented by the thin borderline 17a which typically encloses the printed indicia on currency bills. Once the  
5 borderline 17a has been detected, the optical encoder 32 is used to control the timing and number of reflectance samples that are obtained from the outputs of the photodetectors 26 as the bill 17 moves across the scanheads.

FIG. 2b illustrates a preferred embodiment of a currency scanning and counting machine 10 similar to that of FIG. 2a but having a scanhead on only a  
10 single side of the transport path.

FIG. 2c illustrates a preferred embodiment of a currency scanning and counting machine 10 similar to that of FIG. 2b but illustrating feeding and scanning of bills along their wide direction.

As illustrated in FIGs. 2b-2c, the transport mechanism 16 moves currency  
15 bills with a preselected one of their two dimensions (narrow or wide) being parallel to the transport path and the scan direction. FIGs. 2b and 4a illustrate bills oriented with their narrow dimension "W" parallel to the direction of movement and scanning while FIGs. 2c and 4b illustrate bills oriented with their wide dimension "L" parallel to the direction of movement and scanning.

Referring now to FIG. 2d, there is shown a functional block diagram  
20 illustrating a preferred embodiment of a currency discriminating and authenticating system according to the present invention. The operation of the system of FIG. 2d is the same as that of FIG. 2a except as modified below. The system 10 includes a bill accepting station 12 where stacks of currency bills that need to be identified,  
25 authenticated, and counted are positioned. Accepted bills are acted upon by a bill separating station 14 which functions to pick out or separate one bill at a time for being sequentially relayed by a bill transport mechanism 16, according to a precisely predetermined transport path, across two scanheads 18 and 39 where the currency denomination of the bill is identified and the genuineness of the bill is authenticated.  
30 In the preferred embodiment depicted, scanhead 18 is an optical scanhead that scans for a first type of characteristic information from a scanned bill 17 which is used to identify the bill's denomination. A second scanhead 39 scans for a second type of

characteristic information from the scanned bill 17. While in the illustrated preferred embodiment scanheads 18 and 39 are separate and distinct, it is understood that these may be incorporated into a single scanhead. For example, where the first characteristic sensed is intensity of reflected light and the second characteristic sensed is color, a single optical scanhead having a plurality of detectors, one or more without filters and one or more with colored filters, may be employed (U.S. Pat. No. 4,992, 860 incorporated herein by reference). The scanned bill is then transported to a bill stacking station 20 where bills so processed are stacked for subsequent removal.

10 The optical scanhead 18 of the preferred embodiment depicted in FIG. 2d comprises at least one light source 22 directing a beam of coherent light downwardly onto the bill transport path so as to illuminate a substantially rectangular light strip 24 upon a currency bill 17 positioned on the transport path below the scanhead 18. Light reflected off the illuminated strip 24 is sensed by a photodetector 26 positioned  
15 directly above the strip. The analog output of photodetector 26 is converted into a digital signal by means of an analog-to-digital (ADC) convertor unit 28 whose output is fed as a digital input to a central processing unit (CPU) 30.

The second scanhead 39 comprises at least one detector 41 for sensing a second type of characteristic information from a bill. The analog output of the  
20 detector 41 is converted into a digital signal by means of a second analog to digital converter 43 whose output is also fed as a digital input to the central processing unit (CPU) 30.

While scanhead 18 in the preferred embodiment of FIG. 2d is an optical scanhead, it should be understood that the first and second scanheads 18 and 39 may  
25 be designed to detect a variety of characteristic information from currency bills. Additionally these scanheads may employ a variety of detection means such as magnetic or optical sensors. For example, a variety of currency characteristics can be measured using magnetic sensing. These include detection of patterns of changes in magnetic flux (U.S. Pat. No. 3,280,974), patterns of vertical grid lines in the  
30 portrait area of bills (U.S. Pat. No. 3,870,629), the presence of a security thread (U.S. Pat. No. 5,151,607), total amount of magnetizable material of a bill (U.S. Pat. No. 4,617,458), patterns from sensing the strength of magnetic fields along a bill

(U.S. Pat. No. 4,593,184), and other patterns and counts from scanning different portions of the bill such as the area in which the denomination is written out (U.S. Pat. No. 4,356,473).

5 With regards to optical sensing, a variety of currency characteristics can be measured such as detection of density (U.S. Pat. No. 4,381,447), color (U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,490,846; 3,496,370; 3,480,785), length and thickness (U.S. Pat. No. 4,255,651), the presence of a security thread (U.S. Pat. No. 5,151,607) and holes (U.S. Pat. No. 4,381,447), and other patterns of reflectance and transmission (U.S. Pat. No. 3,496,370; 3,679,314; 3,870,629; 4,179,685). Color detection techniques  
10 may employ color filters, colored lamps, and/or dichroic beamsplitters (U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,841,358; 4,658,289; 4,716,456; 4,825,246, 4,992,860 and EP 325,364).

In addition to magnetic and optical sensing, other techniques of detecting characteristic information of currency include electrical conductivity sensing, capacitive sensing (U.S. Pat. No. 5,122,754 [watermark, security thread]; 3,764,899  
15 [thickness]; 3,815,021 [dielectric properties]; 5,151,607 [security thread]), and mechanical sensing (U.S. Pat. No. 4,381,447 [limpness]; 4,255,651 [thickness]).

According to one preferred embodiment, the detection of the borderline 17a constitutes an important step and realizes improved discrimination efficiency in systems designed to accommodate U.S. currency since the borderline 17a serves as  
20 an absolute reference point for initiation of sampling. If the edge of a bill were to be used as a reference point, relative displacement of sampling points can occur because of the random manner in which the distance from the edge to the borderline 17a varies from bill to bill due to the relatively large range of tolerances permitted during printing and cutting of currency bills. As a result, it becomes difficult to establish  
25 direct correspondence between sample points in successive bill scans and the discrimination efficiency is adversely affected. Accordingly, the modified pattern generation method of the present invention (to be discussed below) is especially important in discrimination systems designed to accommodate bills other than U.S. currency because many non-U.S. bills lack a borderline around the printed indicia on  
30 their bills. Likewise, the modified pattern generation method of the present invention is especially important in discrimination systems designed to accommodate bills other than U.S. currency because the printed indicia of many non-U.S. bills lack sharply

defined edges which in turns inhibits using the edge of the printed indicia of a bill as a trigger for the initiation of the scanning process and instead promotes reliance on using the edge of the bill itself as the trigger for the initiation of the scanning process.

5           The use of the optical encoder 32 for controlling the sampling process relative to the physical movement of a bill 17 across the scanheads 18a, 18b is also advantageous in that the encoder 32 can be used to provide a predetermined delay following detection of the borderline 17a prior to initiation of samples. The encoder delay can be adjusted in such a way that the bill 17 is scanned only across those  
10           segments which contain the most distinguishable printed indicia relative to the different currency denominations.

          In the case of U.S. currency, for instance, it has been determined that the central, approximately two-inch (approximately 5 cm) portion of currency bills, as scanned across the central section of the narrow dimension of the bill, provides  
15           sufficient data for distinguishing among the various U.S. currency denominations. Accordingly, the optical encoder can be used to control the scanning process so that reflectance samples are taken for a set period of time and only after a certain period of time has elapsed after the borderline 17a is detected, thereby restricting the scanning to the desired central portion of the narrow dimension of the bill.

20           FIGs. 3-5b illustrate the scanning process in more detail. Referring to FIG. 4a, as a bill 17 is advanced in a direction parallel to the narrow edges of the bill, scanning via a slit in the scanhead 18a or 18b is effected along a segment S of the central portion of the bill 17. This segment S begins a fixed distance  $D$  inboard of the borderline 17a. As the bill 17 traverses the scanhead, a strip  $s$  of the segment S  
25           is always illuminated, and the photodetector 26 produces a continuous output signal which is proportional to the intensity of the light reflected from the illuminated strip  $s$  at any given instant. This output is sampled at intervals controlled by the encoder, so that the sampling intervals are precisely synchronized with the movement of the bill across the scanhead. FIG. 4b is similar to FIG. 4a but illustrating scanning along the  
30           wide dimension of the bill 17.

          As illustrated in FIGs. 3, 5a, and 5b, it is preferred that the sampling intervals be selected so that the strips  $s$  that are illuminated for successive samples overlap one

another. The odd-numbered and even-numbered sample strips have been separated in FIGs. 3, 5a, and 5b to more clearly illustrate this overlap. For example, the first and second strips  $s_1$  and  $s_2$  overlap each other, the second and third strips  $s_2$  and  $s_3$  overlap each other, and so on. Each adjacent pair of strips overlap each other. In the illustrative example, this is accomplished by sampling strips that are 0.050 inch (0.127 cm) wide at 0.029 inch (0.074 cm) intervals, along a segment S that is 1.83 inch (4.65 cm) long (64 samples).

FIGs. 6a and 6b illustrate two opposing surfaces of U.S. bills. The printed pattern on the black and green surfaces of the bill are each enclosed by respective thin borderlines  $B_1$  and  $B_2$ . As a bill is advanced in a direction parallel to the narrow edges of the bill, scanning via the wide slit of one of the scanheads is effected along a segment  $S_A$  of the central portion of the black surface of the bill (FIG. 6a). As previously stated, the orientation of the bill along the transport path determines whether the upper or lower scanhead scans the black surface of the bill. This segment  $S_A$  begins a fixed distance  $D_1$  inboard of the borderline  $B_1$ , which is located a distance  $W_1$  from the edge of the bill. The scanning along segment  $S_A$  is as describe in connection with FIGs. 3, 4a, and 5a.

Similarly, the other of the two scanheads scans a segment  $S_B$  of the central portion of the green surface of the bill (FIG. 6b). The orientation of the bill along the transport path determines whether the upper or lower scanhead scans the green surface of the bill. This segment  $S_B$  begins a fixed distance  $D_2$  inboard of the border line  $B_2$ , which is located a distance  $W_2$  from the edge of the bill. For U.S. currency, the distance  $W_2$  on the green surface is greater than the distance  $W_1$  on the black surface. It is this feature of U.S. currency which permits one to determine the orientation of the bill relative to the upper and lower scanheads 18, thereby permitting one to select only the data samples corresponding to the green surface for correlation to the master characteristic patterns in the EPROM 34. The scanning along segment  $S_B$  is as describe in connection with FIGs. 3, 4a, and 5a.

FIGs. 6c and 6d are side elevations of FIG. 2a according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention. FIG. 6c shows the first surface of a bill scanned by an upper scanhead and the second surface of the bill scanned by a lower scanhead while FIG. 6d shows the first surface of a bill scanned by a lower scanhead

and the second surface of the bill scanned by an upper scanhead. FIGs. 6c and 6d illustrate the pair of optical scanheads 18a, 18b are disposed on opposite sides of the transport path to permit optical scanning of both opposing surfaces of a bill. With respect to United States currency, these opposing surfaces correspond to the black and green surfaces of a bill. One of the optical scanheads 18 (the "upper" scanhead 18a in FIGs. 6c-6d) is positioned above the transport path and illuminates a light strip upon a first surface of the bill, while the other of the optical scanheads 18 (the "lower" scanhead 18b in FIGs. 6c-6d) is positioned below the transport path and illuminates a light strip upon the second surface of the bill. The surface of the bill scanned by each scanhead 18 is determined by the orientation of the bill relative to the scanheads 18. The upper scanhead 18a is located slightly upstream relative to the lower scanhead 18b.

The photodetector of the upper scanhead 18a produces a first analog output corresponding to the first surface of the bill, while the photodetector of the lower scanhead 18b produces a second analog output corresponding to the second surface of the bill. The first and second analog outputs are converted into respective first and second digital outputs by means of respective analog-to-digital (ADC) convertor units 28 whose outputs are fed as digital inputs to a central processing unit (CPU) 30. As described in detail below, the CPU 30 uses the sequence of operations illustrated in FIG. 12 to determine which of the first and second digital outputs corresponds to the green surface of the bill, and then selects the "green" digital output for subsequent correlation to a series of master characteristic patterns stored in EPROM 34. As explained below, the master characteristic patterns are preferably generated by performing scans on the green surfaces, not black surfaces, of bills of different denominations. According to a preferred embodiment, the analog output corresponding to the black surface of the bill is not used for subsequent correlation.

The optical sensing and correlation technique is based upon using the above process to generate a series of stored intensity signal patterns using genuine bills for each denomination of currency that is to be detected. According to a preferred embodiment, two or four sets of master intensity signal samples are generated and stored within the system memory, preferably in the form of an EPROM 34 (see FIG. 2a), for each detectable currency denomination. According to one preferred

embodiment these are sets of master green-surface intensity signal samples. In the case of U.S. currency, the sets of master intensity signal samples for each bill are generated from optical scans, performed on the green surface of the bill and taken along both the "forward" and "reverse" directions relative to the pattern printed on the bill. Alternatively, the optical scanning may be performed on the black side of U.S. currency bills or on either surface of foreign bills. Additionally, the optical scanning may be performed on both sides of a bill.

In adapting this technique to U.S. currency, for example, sets of stored intensity signal samples are generated and stored for seven different denominations of U.S. currency, i.e., \$1, \$2, \$5, \$10, \$20, \$50 and \$100. For bills which produce significant pattern changes when shifted slightly to the left or right, such as the \$2, the \$10 and/or the \$100 bills in U.S. currency, it is preferred to store two green-side patterns for each of the "forward" and "reverse" directions, each pair of patterns for the same direction represent two scan areas that are slightly displaced from each other along the long dimension of the bill. Accordingly, a set of 16 [or 18] different green-side master characteristic patterns are stored within the EPROM for subsequent correlation purposes (four master patterns for the \$10 bill [or four master patterns for the \$10 bill and the \$2 bill and/or the \$100 bill] and two master patterns for each of the other denominations). The generation of the master patterns is discussed in more detail below. Once the master patterns have been stored, the pattern generated by scanning a bill under test is compared by the CPU 30 with each of the 16 [or 18] master patterns of stored intensity signal samples to generate, for each comparison, a correlation number representing the extent of correlation, i.e., similarity between corresponding ones of the plurality of data samples, for the sets of data being compared.

According to a preferred embodiment, in addition to the above set of 18 original green-side master patterns, five more sets of green-side master patterns are stored in memory. These sets are explained more fully in conjunction with FIGs. 18a and 18b below.

The CPU 30 is programmed to identify the denomination of the scanned bill as corresponding to the set of stored intensity signal samples for which the correlation number resulting from pattern comparison is found to be the highest. In order to

preclude the possibility of mischaracterizing the denomination of a scanned bill, as well as to reduce the possibility of spurious notes being identified as belonging to a valid denomination, a bi-level threshold of correlation is used as the basis for making a "positive" call. If a "positive" call can not be made for a scanned bill, an error  
5 signal is generated.

According to a preferred embodiment, master patterns are also stored for selected denominations corresponding to scans along the black side of U.S. bills. More particularly, according to a preferred embodiment, multiple black-side master patterns are stored for \$20, \$50 and \$100 bills. For each of these denominations,  
10 three master patterns are stored for scans in the forward and reverse directions for a total of six patterns for each denomination. For a given scan direction, black-side master patterns are generated by scanning a corresponding denominated bill along a segment located about the center of the narrow dimension of the bill, a segment slightly displaced (0.2 inches) to the left of center, and a segment slightly displaced  
15 (0.2 inches) to the right of center. When the scanned pattern generated from the green side of a test bill fails to sufficiently correlate with one of the green-side master patterns, the scanned pattern generated from the black side of a test bill is then compared to black-side master patterns in some situations as described in more detail below in conjunction with FIGs. 19a-19c.

20 Using the above sensing and correlation approach, the CPU 30 is programmed to count the number of bills belonging to a particular currency denomination as part of a given set of bills that have been scanned for a given scan batch, and to determine the aggregate total of the currency amount represented by the bills scanned during a scan batch. The CPU 30 is also linked to an output unit 36 (FIGs. 2a and  
25 FIG. 2b) which is adapted to provide a display of the number of bills counted, the breakdown of the bills in terms of currency denomination, and the aggregate total of the currency value represented by counted bills. The output unit 36 can also be adapted to provide a print-out of the displayed information in a desired format.

Referring again to the preferred embodiment depicted in FIG. 2d, as a result  
30 of the first comparison described above based on the reflected light intensity information retrieved by scanhead 18, the CPU 30 will have either determined the denomination of the scanned bill 17 or determined that the first scanned signal



samples fail to sufficiently correlate with any of the sets of stored intensity signal samples in which case an error is generated. Provided that an error has not been generated as a result of this first comparison based on reflected light intensity characteristics, a second comparison is performed. This second comparison is performed based on a second type of characteristic information, such as alternate reflected light properties, similar reflected light properties at alternate locations of a bill, light transmissivity properties, various magnetic properties of a bill, the presence of a security thread embedded within a bill, the color of a bill, the thickness or other dimension of a bill, etc. The second type of characteristic information is retrieved from a scanned bill by the second scanhead 39. The scanning and processing by scanhead 39 may be controlled in a manner similar to that described above with regard to scanhead 18.

In addition to the sets of stored first characteristic information, in this example stored intensity signal samples, the EPROM 34 stores sets of stored second characteristic information for genuine bills of the different denominations which the system 10 is capable of handling. Based on the denomination indicated by the first comparison, the CPU 30 retrieves the set or sets of stored second characteristic data for a genuine bill of the denomination so indicated and compares the retrieved information with the scanned second characteristic information. If sufficient correlation exists between the retrieved information and the scanned information, the CPU 30 verifies the genuineness of the scanned bill 17. Otherwise, the CPU generates an error. While the preferred embodiment illustrated in FIG. 2d depicts a single CPU 30 for making comparisons of first and second characteristic information and a single EPROM 34 for storing first and second characteristic information, it is understood that two or more CPUs and/or EPROMs could be used, including one CPU for making first characteristic information comparisons and a second CPU for making second characteristic information comparisons. Using the above sensing and correlation approach, the CPU 30 is programmed to count the number of bills belonging to a particular currency denomination whose genuineness has been verified as part of a given set of bills that have been scanned for a given scan batch, and to determine the aggregate total of the currency amount represented by the bills scanned during a scan batch.

Referring now to FIGs. 7a and 7b, there is shown a representation, in block diagram form, of a preferred circuit arrangement for processing and correlating reflectance data according to the system of this invention. The CPU 30 accepts and processes a variety of input signals including those from the optical encoder 32, the sensor 26 and the erasable programmable read only memory (EPROM) 60. The EPROM 60 has stored within it the correlation program on the basis of which patterns are generated and test patterns compared with stored master programs in order to identify the denomination of test currency. A crystal 40 serves as the time base for the CPU 30, which is also provided with an external reference voltage  $V_{REF}$  42 on the basis of which peak detection of sensed reflectance data is performed.

According to one embodiment, the CPU 30 also accepts a timer reset signal from a reset unit 44 which, as shown in FIG. 7b, accepts the output voltage from the photodetector 26 and compares it, by means of a threshold detector 44a, relative to a pre-set voltage threshold, typically 5.0 volts, to provide a reset signal which goes "high" when a reflectance value corresponding to the presence of paper is sensed. More specifically, reflectance sampling is based on the premise that no portion of the illuminated light strip (24 in FIG. 2a) is reflected to the photodetector in the absence of a bill positioned below the scanhead. Under these conditions, the output of the photodetector represents a "dark" or "zero" level reading. The photodetector output changes to a "white" reading, typically set to have a value of about 5.0 volts, when the edge of a bill first becomes positioned below the scanhead and falls under the light strip 24. When this occurs, the reset unit 44 provides a "high" signal to the CPU 30 and marks the initiation of the scanning procedure.

The machine-direction dimension, that is, the dimension parallel to the direction of bill movement, of the illuminated strip of light produced by the light sources within the scanhead is set to be relatively small for the initial stage of the scan when the thin borderline is being detected, according to a preferred embodiment. The use of the narrow slit increases the sensitivity with which the reflected light is detected and allows minute variations in the "gray" level reflected off the bill surface to be sensed. This is important in ensuring that the thin borderline of the pattern, i.e., the starting point of the printed pattern on the bill, is accurately detected. Once the borderline has been detected, subsequent reflectance

sampling is performed on the basis of a relatively wider light strip in order to completely scan across the narrow dimension of the bill and obtain the desired number of samples, at a rapid rate. The use of a wider slit for the actual sampling also smooths out the output characteristics of the photodetector and realizes the  
5 relatively large magnitude of analog voltage which is essential for accurate representation and processing of the detected reflectance values.

The CPU 30 processes the output of the sensor 26 through a peak detector 50 which essentially functions to sample the sensor output voltage and hold the highest, i.e., peak, voltage value encountered after the detector has been enabled. For U.S.  
10 currency, the peak detector is also adapted to define a scaled voltage on the basis of which the printed borderline on the currency bills is detected. The output of the peak detector 50 is fed to a voltage divider 54 which lowers the peak voltage down to a scaled voltage  $V_s$  representing a predefined percentage of this peak value. The voltage  $V_s$  is based upon the percentage drop in output voltage of the peak detector as  
15 it reflects the transition from the "high" reflectance value resulting from the scanning of the unprinted edge portions of a currency bill to the relatively lower "gray" reflectance value resulting when the thin borderline is encountered. Preferably, the scaled voltage  $V_s$  is set to be about 70 - 80 percent of the peak voltage.

The scaled voltage  $V_s$  is supplied to a line detector 56 which is also provided  
20 with the incoming instantaneous output of the sensor 26. The line detector 56 compares the two voltages at its input side and generates a signal  $L_{DET}$  which normally stays "low" and goes "high" when the edge of the bill is scanned. The signal  $L_{DET}$  goes "low" when the incoming sensor output reaches the pre-defined percentage of the peak output up to that point, as represented by the voltage  $V_s$ .  
25 Thus, when the signal  $L_{DET}$  goes "low", it is an indication that the borderline of the bill pattern has been detected. At this point, the CPU 30 initiates the actual reflectance sampling under control of the encoder 32 and the desired fixed number of reflectance samples are obtained as the currency bill moves across the illuminated light strip and is scanned along the central section of its narrow dimension.

30 When master characteristic patterns are being generated, the reflectance samples resulting from the scanning of one or more genuine bills for each denomination are loaded into corresponding designated sections within a system

memory 60, which is preferably an EPROM. During currency discrimination, the reflectance values resulting from the scanning of a test bill are sequentially compared, under control of the correlation program stored within the EPROM 60, with the corresponding master characteristic patterns stored within the EPROM 60. A pattern averaging procedure for scanning bills and generating characteristic patterns is  
5 described below in connection with FIGs. 15a-15e.

In addition to the optical scanheads, the bill-scanning system (e.g., FIGs. 2a-2d) preferably includes a magnetic scanhead. A variety of currency characteristics can be measured using magnetic scanning. These include detection of patterns of  
10 changes in magnetic flux (U.S. Pat. No. 3,280,974), patterns of vertical grid lines in the portrait area of bills (U.S. Pat. No. 3,870,629), the presence of a security thread (U.S. Pat. No. 5,151,607), total amount of magnetizable material of a bill (U.S. Pat. No. 4,617,458), patterns from sensing the strength of magnetic fields along a bill (U.S. Pat. No. 4,593,184), and other patterns and counts from scanning different  
15 portions of the bill such as the area in which the denomination is written out (U.S. Pat. No. 4,356,473).

The interrelation between the use of the first and second type of characteristic information can be seen by considering FIGs. 8a and 8b which comprise a flowchart illustrating the sequence of operations involved in implementing a discrimination and  
20 authentication system according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention. Upon the initiation of the sequence of operations (step 1748), reflected light intensity information is retrieved from a bill being scanned (step 1750). Similarly, second characteristic information is also retrieved from the bill being scanned (step 1752). Denomination error and second characteristic error flags are cleared (steps 1753 and  
25 1754).

Next the scanned intensity information is compared to each set of stored intensity information corresponding to genuine bills of all denominations the system is programmed to accommodate (step 1758). For each denomination, a correlation number is calculated. The system then, based on the correlation numbers calculated,  
30 determines either the denomination of the scanned bill or generates a denomination error by setting the denomination error flag steps 1760 and 1762). In the case where the denomination error flag is set (step 1762), the process is ended (step 1772).

Alternatively, if based on this first comparison, the system is able to determine the denomination of the scanned bill, the system proceeds to compare the scanned second characteristic information with the stored second characteristic information corresponding to the denomination determined by the first comparison (step 1764).

- 5 For example, if as a result of the first comparison the scanned bill is determined to be a \$20 bill, the scanned second characteristic information is compared to the stored second characteristic information corresponding to a genuine \$20 bill. In this manner, the system need not make comparisons with stored second characteristic information for the other denominations the system is programmed to accommodate. If based on this second comparison (step 1764) it is determined that the scanned second characteristic information does not sufficiently match that of the stored second characteristic information (step 1766), then a second characteristic error is generated by setting the second characteristic error flag (step 1768) and the process is ended (step 1772). If the second comparison results in a sufficient match
- 10
- 15 between the scanned and stored second characteristic information (step 1766), then the denomination of the scanned bill is indicated (step 1770) and the process is ended (step 1772).

- An example of an interrelationship between authentication based on a first and second characteristic can be seen by considering Table 1. The denomination
- 20 determined by optical scanning of a bill is preferably used to facilitate authentication of the bill by magnetic scanning, using the relationship set forth in Table 1.

Table 1

<u>Sensitivity</u> Denomination	1	2	3	4	5
\$1	200	250	300	375	450
\$2	100	125	150	225	300
\$5	200	250	300	350	400
\$10	100	125	150	200	250
\$20	120	150	180	270	360

\$50	200	250	300	375	450
\$100	100	125	150	250	350

Table 1 depicts relative total magnetic content thresholds for various denominations of genuine bills. Columns 1-5 represent varying degrees of sensitivity selectable by a user of a device employing the present invention. The values in Table 1 are set based on the scanning of genuine bills of varying denominations for total magnetic content and setting required thresholds based on the degree of sensitivity selected. The information in Table 1 is based on the total magnetic content of a genuine \$1 being 1000. The following discussion is based on a sensitivity setting of 4. In this example it is assumed that magnetic content represents the second characteristic tested. If the comparison of first characteristic information, such as reflected light intensity, from a scanned billed and stored information corresponding to genuine bills results in an indication that the scanned bill is a \$10 denomination, then the total magnetic content of the scanned bill is compared to the total magnetic content threshold of a genuine \$10 bill, i.e., 200. If the magnetic content of the scanned bill is less than 200, the bill is rejected. Otherwise it is accepted as a \$10 bill.

In order to avoid problems associated with re-feeding bills, counting bills by hand, and adding together separate totals, according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention a number of selection elements associated with individual denominations are provided. In FIG. 1, these selection elements are in the form of keys or buttons of a keypad. Other types of selection elements such as switches or displayed keys in a touch-screen environment may be employed. The operation of the selection elements and several of the operating modes of the discriminator 10 are described below in conjunction with FIGs. 56 and 59.

Referring now to FIGs. 9-11b, there are shown flow charts illustrating the sequence of operations involved in implementing the above-described optical sensing and correlation technique. FIGs. 9 and 10, in particular, illustrate the sequences involved in detecting the presence of a bill adjacent the scanheads and the borderlines on each side of the bill. Turning to FIG. 9, at step 70, the lower scanhead fine line

interrupt is initiated upon the detection of the fine line by the lower scanhead. An encoder counter is maintained that is incremented for each encoder pulse. The encoder counter scrolls from 0 - 65,535 and then starts at 0 again. At step 71 the value of the encoder counter is stored in memory upon the detection of the fine line  
5 by the lower scanhead. At step 72 the lower scanhead fine line interrupt is disabled so that it will not be triggered again during the interrupt period. At step 73, it is determined whether the magnetic sampling has been completed for the previous bill. If it has not, the magnetic total for the previous bill is stored in memory at step 74 and the magnetic sampling done flag is set at step 75 so that magnetic sampling of  
10 the present bill may thereafter be performed. Steps 74 and 75 are skipped if it is determined at step 73 that the magnetic sampling has been completed for the previous bill. At step 76, a lower scanhead bit in the trigger flag is set. This bit is used to indicate that the lower scanhead has detected the fine line. The magnetic sampler is initialized at step 77 and the magnetic sampling interrupt is enabled at step 78. A  
15 density sampler is initialized at step 79 and a density sampling interrupt is enabled at step 80. The lower read data sampler is initialized at step 81 and a lower scanhead data sampling interrupt is enabled at step 82. At step 83, the lower scanhead fine line interrupt flag is reset and at step 84 the program returns from the interrupt.

Turning to FIG. 10, at step 85, the upper scanhead fine line interrupt is  
20 initiated upon the detection of the fine line by the upper scanhead. At step 86 the value of the encoder counter is stored in memory upon the detection of the fine line by the upper scanhead. This information in connection with the encoder counter value associated with the detection of the fine line by the lower scanhead may then be used to determine the face orientation of a bill, that is whether a bill is fed green side  
25 up or green side down in the case of U.S. bills as is described in more detail below in connection with FIG. 12. At step 87 the upper scanhead fine line interrupt is disabled so that it will not be triggered again during the interrupt period. At step 88, the upper scanhead bit in the trigger flag is set. This bit is used to indicate that the upper scanhead has detected the fine line. By checking the lower and upper scanhead  
30 bits in the trigger flag it can be determined whether each side has detected a respective fine line. Next, the upper scanhead data sampler is initialized at step 89 and the upper scanhead data sampling interrupt is enabled at step 90. At step 91, the

upper scanhead fine line interrupt flag is reset and at step 92 the program returns from the interrupt.

Referring now to FIGs. 11a and 11b there are shown, respectively, the digitizing routines associated with the lower and upper scanheads. FIG. 11a is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in the analog-to-digital conversion routine associated with the lower scanhead. The routine is started at step 93a. Next, the sample pointer is decremented at step 94a so as to maintain an indication of the number of samples remaining to be obtained. The sample pointer provides an indication of the sample being obtained and digitized at a given time. At step 95a, the digital data corresponding to the output of the photodetector associated with the lower scanhead for the current sample is read. The data is converted to its final form at step 96a and stored within a pre-defined memory segment as  $X_{IN-L}$  at step 97a.

Next, at step 98a, a check is made to see if the desired fixed number of samples "N" has been taken. If the answer is found to be negative, step 99a is accessed where the interrupt authorizing the digitization of the succeeding sample is enabled and the program returns from interrupt at step 100a for completing the rest of the digitizing process. However, if the answer at step 98a is found to be positive, i.e., the desired number of samples have already been obtained, a flag, namely the lower scanhead done flag bit, indicating the same is set at step 101a and the program returns from interrupt at step 102a.

FIG. 11b is a flow chart illustrating the sequential procedure involved in the analog-to-digital conversion routine associated with the upper scanhead. The routine is started at step 93b. Next, the sample pointer is decremented at step 94b so as to maintain an indication of the number of samples remaining to be obtained. The sample pointer provides an indication of the sample being obtained and digitized at a given time. At step 95b, the digital data corresponding to the output of the photodetector associated with the upper scanhead for the current sample is read. The data is converted to its final form at step 96b and stored within a pre-defined memory segment as  $X_{IN-U}$  at step 97b.

Next, at step 98b, a check is made to see if the desired fixed number of samples "N" has been taken. If the answer is found to be negative, step 99b is accessed where the interrupt authorizing the digitization of the succeeding sample is



enabled and the program returns from interrupt at step 100b for completing the rest of the digitizing process. However, if the answer at step 98b is found to be positive, i.e., the desired number of samples have already been obtained, a flag, namely the upper scanhead done flag bit, indicating the same is set at step 101b and the program  
5 returns from interrupt at step 102b.

The CPU 30 is programmed with the sequence of operations in FIG. 12 to correlate at least initially only the test pattern corresponding to the green surface of a scanned bill. As shown in FIGs. 6c-6d, the upper scanhead 18a is located slightly upstream adjacent the bill transport path relative to the lower scanhead 18b. The  
10 distance between the scanheads 18a, 18b in a direction parallel to the transport path corresponds to a predetermined number of encoder counts. It should be understood that the encoder 32 produces a repetitive tracking signal synchronized with incremental movements of the bill transport mechanism, and this repetitive tracking signal has a repetitive sequence of counts (e.g., 65,535 counts) associated therewith.  
15 As a bill is scanned by the upper and lower scanheads 18a, 18b, the CPU 30 monitors the output of the upper scanhead 18a to detect the borderline of a first bill surface facing the upper scanhead 18a. Once this borderline of the first surface is detected, the CPU 30 retrieves and stores a first encoder count in memory. Similarly, the CPU 30 monitors the output of the lower scanhead 18b to detect the  
20 borderline of a second bill surface facing the lower scanhead 18b. Once the borderline of the second surface is detected, the CPU 30 retrieves and stores a second encoder count in memory.

Referring to FIG. 12, the CPU 30 is programmed to calculate the difference between the first and second encoder counts (step 105a). If this difference is greater  
25 than the predetermined number of encoder counts corresponding to the distance between the scanheads 18a, 18b plus some safety factor number "X", e.g., 20 (step 106), the bill is oriented with its black surface facing the upper scanhead 18a and its green surface facing the lower scanhead 18b. This can best be understood by reference to FIG. 6c which shows a bill with the foregoing orientation. In this  
30 situation, once the borderline  $B_1$  of the black surface passes beneath the upper scanhead 18a and the first encoder count is stored, the borderline  $B_2$  still must travel for a distance greater than the distance between the upper and lower scanheads 18a,

18b in order to pass over the lower scanhead 18b. As a result, the difference between the second encoder count associated with the borderline  $B_2$  and the first encoder count associated with the borderline  $B_1$  will be greater than the predetermined number of encoder counts corresponding to the distance between the scanheads 18a, 18b. With the bill oriented with its green surface facing the lower scanhead, the CPU 30 sets a flag to indicate that the test pattern produced by the lower scanhead 18b should be correlated (step 107). Next, this test pattern is correlated with the green-side master characteristic patterns stored in memory (step 109).

10        If at step 106 the difference between the first and second encoder counts is less than the predetermined number of encoder counts corresponding to the distance between the scanheads 18a, 18b, the CPU 30 is programmed to determine whether the difference between the first and second encoder counts is less than the predetermined number minus some safety number "X", e.g., 20 (step 108). If the answer is negative, the orientation of the bill relative to the scanheads 18a, 18b is uncertain so the CPU 30 is programmed to correlate the test patterns produced by both the upper and lower scanheads 18a, 18b with the green-side master characteristic patterns stored in memory (steps 109, 110, and 111).

20        If the answer is affirmative, the bill is oriented with its green surface facing the upper scanhead 18a and its black surface facing the lower scanhead 18b. This can best be understood by reference to FIG. 6d, which shows a bill with the foregoing orientation. In this situation, once the borderline  $B_2$  of the green surface passes beneath the upper scanhead 18a and the first encoder count is stored, the borderline  $B_1$  must travel for a distance less than the distance between the upper and lower scanheads 18a, 18b in order to pass over the lower scanhead 18b. As a result, the difference between the second encoder count associated with the borderline  $B_1$  and the first encoder count associated with the borderline  $B_2$  should be less than the predetermined number of encoder counts corresponding to the distance between the scanheads 18a, 18b. To be on the safe side, it is required that the difference between first and second encoder counts be less than the predetermined number minus the safety number "X". Therefore, the CPU 30 is programmed to correlate the test

pattern produced by the upper scanhead 18a with the green-side master characteristic patterns stored in memory (step 111).

After correlating the test pattern associated with either the upper scanhead 18a, the lower scanhead 18b, or both scanheads 18a, 18b, the CPU 30 is  
 5 programmed to perform the bi-level threshold check (step 112).

A simple correlation procedure is utilized for processing digitized reflectance values into a form which is conveniently and accurately compared to corresponding values pre-stored in an identical format. More specifically, as a first step, the mean value  $\bar{X}$  for the set of digitized reflectance samples (comparing "n" samples) obtained  
 10 for a bill scan run is first obtained as below:

$$\bar{X} = \sum_{i=0}^n \frac{X_i}{n} \quad (1)$$

Subsequently, a normalizing factor Sigma ("σ") is determined as being equivalent to the sum of the square of the difference between each sample and the mean, as normalized by the total number *n* of samples. More specifically, the normalizing factor is calculated as below:

$$\sigma = \sum_{i=0}^n \frac{|X_i - \bar{X}|^2}{n} \quad (2)$$

15 In the final step, each reflectance sample is normalized by obtaining the difference between the sample and the above-calculated mean value and dividing it by the square root of the normalizing factor σ as defined by the following equation:

$$X_n = \frac{X_i - \bar{X}}{(\sigma)^{1/2}} \quad (3)$$

The result of using the above correlation equations is that, subsequent to the normalizing process, a relationship of correlation exists between a test pattern and a master pattern such that the aggregate sum of the products of corresponding samples in a test pattern and any master pattern, when divided by the total number of samples, equals unity if the patterns are identical. Otherwise, a value less than unity is obtained. Accordingly, the correlation number or factor resulting from the comparison of normalized samples within a test pattern to those of a stored master pattern provides a clear indication of the degree of similarity or correlation between the two patterns.

According to a preferred embodiment of this invention, the fixed number of reflectance samples which are digitized and normalized for a bill scan is selected to be 64. It has experimentally been found that the use of higher binary orders of samples (such as 128, 256, etc.) does not provide a correspondingly increased discrimination efficiency relative to the increased processing time involved in implementing the above-described correlation procedure. It has also been found that the use of a binary order of samples lower than 64, such as 32, produces a substantial drop in discrimination efficiency.

The correlation factor can be represented conveniently in binary terms for ease of correlation. In a preferred embodiment, for instance, the factor of unity which results when a hundred percent correlation exists is represented in terms of the binary number  $2^{10}$ , which is equal to a decimal value of 1024. Using the above procedure, the normalized samples within a test pattern are compared to the master characteristic patterns stored within the system memory in order to determine the particular stored pattern to which the test pattern corresponds most closely by identifying the comparison which yields a correlation number closest to 1024.

A bi-level threshold of correlation is required to be satisfied before a particular call is made, for at least certain denominations of bills. More specifically, the correlation procedure is adapted to identify the two highest correlation numbers resulting from the comparison of the test pattern to one of the stored patterns. At that point, a minimum threshold of correlation is required to be satisfied by these two correlation numbers. It has experimentally been found that a correlation number of about 850 serves as a good cut-off threshold above which positive calls may be made

with a high degree of confidence and below which the designation of a test pattern as corresponding to any of the stored patterns is uncertain. As a second threshold level, a minimum separation is prescribed between the two highest correlation numbers before making a call. This ensures that a positive call is made only when a test  
5 pattern does not correspond, within a given range of correlation, to more than one stored master pattern. Preferably, the minimum separation between correlation numbers is set to be 150 when the highest correlation number is between 800 and 850. When the highest correlation number is below 800, no call is made.

The procedure involved in comparing test patterns to master patterns is  
10 discussed below in connection with FIG. 18a.

Next a routine designated as "CORRES" is initiated. The procedure involved in executing the routine CORRES is illustrated at FIG. 13 which shows the routine as starting at step 114. Step 115 determines whether the bill has been identified as a \$2 bill, and, if the answer is negative, step 116 determines whether the best correlation  
15 number ("call #1") is greater than 799. If the answer is negative, the correlation number is too low to identify the denomination of the bill with certainty, and thus step 117 generates a "no call" code. A "no call previous bill" flag is then set at step 118, and the routine returns to the main program at step 119.

An affirmative answer at step 116 advances the system to step 120, which  
20 determines whether the sample data passes an ink stain test (described below). If the answer is negative, a "no call" code is generated at step 117. If the answer is affirmative, the system advances to step 121 which determines whether the best correlation number is greater than 849. An affirmative answer at step 121 indicates that the correlation number is sufficiently high that the denomination of the scanned  
25 bill can be identified with certainty without any further checking. Consequently, a "denomination" code identifying the denomination represented by the stored pattern resulting in the highest correlation number is generated at step 122, and the system returns to the main program at step 119.

A negative answer at step 121 indicates that the correlation number is between  
30 800 and 850. It has been found that correlation numbers within this range are sufficient to identify all bills except the \$2 bill. Accordingly, a negative response at step 121 advances the system to step 123 which determines whether the difference

between the two highest correlation numbers ("call #1" and "call #2") is greater than 149. If the answer is affirmative, the denomination identified by the highest correlation number is acceptable, and thus the "denomination" code is generated at step 122. If the difference between the two highest correlation numbers is less than 150, step 123 produces a negative response which advances the system to step 117 to generate a "no call" code.

Returning to step 115, an affirmative response at this step indicates that the initial call is a \$2 bill. This affirmative response initiates a series of steps 124-127 which are identical to steps 116, 120, 121 and 123 described above, except that the numbers 799 and 849 used in steps 116 and 121 are changed to 849 and 899, respectively, in steps 124 and 126. The result is either the generation of a "no call" code at step 117 or the generation of a \$2 "denomination" code at step 122.

One problem encountered in currency recognition and counting systems is the difficulty involved in interrupting (for a variety of reasons) and resuming the scanning and counting procedure as a stack of bills is being scanned. If a particular currency recognition unit (CRU) has to be halted in operation due to a "major" system error, such as a bill being jammed along the transport path, there is generally no concern about the outstanding transitional status of the overall recognition and counting process. However, where the CRU has to be halted due to a "minor" error, such as the identification of a scanned bill as being a counterfeit (based on a variety of monitored parameters) or a "no call" (a bill which is not identifiable as belonging to a specific currency denomination based on the plurality of stored master patterns and/or other criteria), it is desirable that the transitional status of the overall recognition and counting process be retained so that the CRU may be restarted without any effective disruptions of the recognition/counting process.

More specifically, once a scanned bill has been identified as a "no call" bill ( $B_1$ ) based on some set of predefined criteria, it is desirable that this bill  $B_1$  be transported directly to the system stacker and the CRU brought to a halt with bill  $B_1$  being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle, while at the same time ensuring that the following bills are maintained in positions along the bill transport path whereby CRU operation can be conveniently resumed without any disruption of the recognition/counting process.

Since the bill processing speeds at which currency recognition systems must operate are substantially high (speeds of the order of 800 to 1500 bills per minute), it is practically impossible to totally halt the system following a "no call" without the following bill  $B_2$  already overlapping the optical scanhead and being partially scanned. As a result, it is virtually impossible for the CRU system to retain the transitional status of the recognition/counting process (particularly with respect to bill  $B_2$ ) in order that the process may be resumed once the bad bill  $B_1$  has been transported to the stacker, conveniently removed therefrom, and the system restarted. The basic problem is that if the CRU is halted with bill  $B_2$  only partially scanned, it is difficult to reference the data reflectance samples extracted therefrom in such a way that the scanning may be later continued (when the CRU is restarted) from exactly the same point where the sample extraction process was interrupted when the CRU was stopped.

Even if an attempt were made at immediately halting the CRU system following a "no call," any subsequent scanning of bills would be totally unreliable because of mechanical backlash effects and the resultant disruption of the optical encoder routine used for bill scanning. Consequently, when the CRU is restarted, the call for the following bill is also likely to be bad and the overall recognition/counting process is totally disrupted as a result of an endless loop of "no calls."

The above problems are solved by the use of a currency detecting and counting technique whereby a scanned bill identified as a "no call" is transported directly to the top of the system stacker and the CRU is halted without adversely affecting the data collection and processing steps for a succeeding bill. Accordingly, when the CRU is restarted, the overall bill recognition and counting procedure can be resumed without any disruption as if the CRU had never been halted at all.

According to a preferred technique, if the bill is identified as a "no call" based on any of a variety of conventionally defined bill criteria, the CRU is subjected to a controlled deceleration process whereby the speed at which bills are moved across the scanhead is reduced from the normal operating speed. During this deceleration process the "no call" bill ( $B_1$ ) is transported to the top of the stacker and, at the same time, the following bill  $B_2$  is subjected to the standard scanning procedure in order to identify the denomination.

The rate of deceleration is such that optical scanning of bill  $B_2$  is completed by the time the CRU operating speed is reduced to a predefined operating speed. While the exact operating speed at the end of the scanning of bill  $B_2$  is not critical, the objective is to permit complete scanning of bill  $B_2$  without subjecting it to backlash effects that would result if the ramping were too fast, while at the same time ensuring that bill  $B_1$  has in fact been transported to the stacker.

It has been experimentally determined that at nominal operating speeds of the order of 1000 bills per minute, the deceleration is preferably such that the CRU operating speed is reduced to about one-fifth of its normal operating speed at the end of the deceleration phase, i.e., by the time optical scanning of bill  $B_2$  has been completed. It has been determined that at these speed levels, positive calls can be made as to the denomination of bill  $B_2$  based on reflectance samples gathered during the deceleration phase with a relatively high degree of certainty (i.e., with a correlation number exceeding about 850).

Once the optical scanning of bill  $B_2$  has been completed, the speed is reduced to an even slower speed until the bill  $B_2$  has passed bill-edge sensors  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  described below, and the bill  $B_2$  is then brought to a complete stop. At the same time, the results of the processing of scanned data corresponding to bill  $B_2$  are stored in system memory. The ultimate result of this stopping procedure is that the CRU is brought to a complete halt following the point where the scanning of bill  $B_2$  has been reliably completed, and the scan procedure is not subjected to the disruptive effects (backlash, etc.) which would result if a complete halt were attempted immediately after bill  $B_1$  is identified as a "no call."

The reduced operating speed of the machine at the end of the deceleration phase is such that the CRU can be brought to a total halt before the next following bill  $B_3$  has been transported over the optical scanhead. Thus, when the CRU is in fact halted, bill  $B_1$  is positioned at the top of the system stacker, bill  $B_2$  is maintained in transit between the optical scanhead and the stacker after it has been subjected to scanning, and the following bill  $B_3$  is stopped short of the optical scanhead.

When the CRU is restarted, presumably after corrective action has been taken in response to the "minor" error which led to the CRU being stopped (such as the removal of the "no call" bill from the output receptacle), the overall scanning



operation can be resumed in an uninterrupted fashion by using the stored call results for bill  $B_2$  as the basis for updating the system count appropriately, moving bill  $B_2$  from its earlier transitional position along the transport path into the stacker, and moving bill  $B_3$  along the transport path into the optical scanhead area where it can be subjected to normal scanning and processing. A routine for executing the deceleration/stopping procedure described above is illustrated by the flow chart in FIG. 14. This routine is initiated at step 170 with the CRU in its normal operating mode. At step 171, a test bill  $B_1$  is scanned and the data reflectance samples resulting therefrom are processed. Next, at step 172, a determination is made as to whether or not test bill  $B_1$  is a "no call" using predefined criteria in combination with the overall bill recognition procedure, such as the routine of FIG. 13. If the answer at step 172 is negative, i.e., the test bill  $B_1$  can be identified, step 173 is accessed where normal bill processing is continued in accordance with the procedures described above. If, however, the test bill  $B_1$  is found to be a "no call" at step 172, step 174 is accessed where CRU deceleration is initiated, e.g., the transport drive motor speed is reduced to about one-fifth its normal speed.

Subsequently, the "no call" bill  $B_1$  is guided to the stacker while, at the same time, the following test bill  $B_2$  is brought under the optical scanhead and subjected to the scanning and processing steps. The call resulting from the scanning and processing of bill  $B_2$  is stored in system memory at this point. Step 175 determines whether the scanning of bill  $B_2$  is complete. When the answer is negative, step 176 determines whether a preselected "bill timeout" period has expired so that the system does not wait for the scanning of a bill that is not present. An affirmative answer at step 176 results in the transport drive motor being stopped at step 179 while a negative answer at step 176 causes steps 175 and 176 to be reiterated until one of them produces an affirmative response.

After the scanning of bill  $B_2$  is complete and before stopping the transport drive motor, step 178 determines whether either of the sensors  $S1$  or  $S2$  (described below) is covered by a bill. A negative answer at step 178 indicates that the bill has cleared both sensors  $S1$  and  $S2$ , and thus the transport drive motor is stopped at step 179. This signifies the end of the deceleration/stopping process. At this point in

time, bill  $B_2$  remains in transit while the following bill  $B_3$  is stopped on the transport path just short of the optical scanhead.

Following step 179, corrective action responsive to the identification of a "no call" bill is conveniently undertaken; the top-most bill in the stacker is easily removed therefrom and the CRU is then in condition for resuming the scanning process. Accordingly, the CRU can be restarted and the stored results corresponding to bill  $B_2$ , are used to appropriately update the system count. Next, the identified bill  $B_2$  is guided along the transport path to the stacker, and the CRU continues with its normal processing routine. While the above deceleration process has been described in a context of a "no call" error, other minor errors (e.g., suspect bills, stranger bills in stranger mode, etc.) are handled in the same manner.

In currency discrimination systems in which discrimination is based on the comparison of a pattern obtained from scanning a subject bill to stored master patterns corresponding to various denominations, the patterns which are designated as master patterns significantly influence the performance characteristics of a discrimination system. For example, in the system described in United States Patent No. 5,295,196, the correlation procedure and the accuracy with which a denomination is identified directly relates to the degree of correspondence between reflectance samples on the test pattern and corresponding samples on the stored master patterns. In other systems, master patterns have been produced by scanning a genuine bill for a given denomination and storing the resulting pattern as the master pattern for that denomination. However, due to variations among genuine bills, this method is likely to result in poor performance of the discrimination system by rejecting an unacceptable number of genuine bills. It has been found that the relative crispness, age, shrinkage, usage, and other characteristics of a genuine bill can effect the resulting pattern generated by scanning. These factors are often interrelated. For example, it has been found that currency bills which have experienced a high degree of usage exhibit a reduction in both the narrow and wide dimensions of the bills. This shrinkage of "used" bills which, in turn, causes corresponding reductions in their narrow dimensions, can possibly produce a drop in the degree of correlation between such used bills of a given denomination and the corresponding master patterns.

As a result, a discrimination system which generates a master pattern based on a single scan of a genuine bill is not likely to perform satisfactorily. For example, if the \$20 master pattern is generated by scanning a crisp, genuine \$20 bill, the discrimination system may reject an unacceptable number of genuine but worn \$20 bills. Likewise, if the \$20 master pattern is generated using a very worn, genuine \$20 bill, the discrimination system may reject an unacceptable number of genuine but crisp \$20 bills.

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns. Each component pattern is generated by scanning a genuine bill of the given denomination.

According to a first method, master patterns are generated by scanning a standard bill a plurality of times, typically three (3) times, and obtaining the average of corresponding data samples before storing the average as representing a master pattern. In other words, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns, wherein all of the component patterns are generated by scanning a single genuine bill of "standard" quality of the given denomination. The "standard" bill is a slightly used bill, as opposed to a crisp new bill or one which has been subject to a high degree of usage. Rather, the standard bill is a bill of good to average quality. Component patterns generated according to this first methods are illustrated in FIGs. 15a-15c. More specifically, FIGs. 15a-15c show three test patterns generated, respectively, for the forward scanning of a \$1 bill along its green side, the reverse scanning of a \$2 bill on its green side, and the forward scanning of a \$100 bill on its green side. It should be noted that, for purposes of clarity the test patterns in FIGs. 15a-15c were generated by using 128 reflectance samples per bill scan, as opposed to the preferred use of only 64 samples. The marked difference existing among corresponding samples for these three test patterns is indicative of the high degree of confidence with which currency denominations may be called using the foregoing optical sensing and correlation procedure.

According to a second method, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by scanning two or more standard bills of standard quality and obtaining a

plurality of component patterns. These component patterns are then averaged in deriving a master pattern. For example, it has been found that some genuine \$5 bills have dark stairs on the Lincoln Memorial while other genuine \$5 bills have light stairs. To compensate for this variation, standard bills for which component patterns  
5 are derived may be chosen with at least one standard bill scanned having dark stairs and with at least one standard bill having light stairs.

It has been found that an alternate method can lead to improved performance in a discrimination systems, especially with regards to certain denominations. For example, it has been found that the printed indicia on a \$10 bill has changed slightly  
10 with 1990 series bills incorporating security threads. More specifically, 1990 series \$10 bills have a borderline-to-borderline dimension which is slightly greater than previous series \$10 bills. Likewise it has been found that the scanned pattern of an old, semi-shrunken \$5 bill can differ significantly from the scanned pattern of a new \$5 bill.

15 According to a third method, a master pattern for a given denomination is generated by averaging a plurality of component patterns, wherein some of the component patterns are generated by scanning one or more new bills of the given denomination and some of the component patterns are generated by scanning one or more old bills of the given denomination. New bills are bills of good quality which  
20 have been printed in recent years and have a security thread incorporated therein (for those denominations in which security threads are placed). New bills are preferably relatively crisp. A new \$10 bill is preferably a 1990 series or later bill of very high quality, meaning that the bill is in near mint condition. Old bills are bills exhibiting some shrinkage and often some discoloration. Shrinkage may result from a bill  
25 having been subjected to a relatively high degree of use. A new bill utilized in this third method is of higher quality than a standard bill of the previous methods, while an old bill in this third method is of lower quality than a standard bill.

The third method can be understood by considering Table 2 which summarizes the manner in which component patterns are generated for a variety of  
30 denominations.

**Table 2. Component Scans by Denomination**

<u>Denomination</u>	<u>Scan Direction</u>	<u>CP1</u>	<u>CP2</u>	<u>CP3</u>
\$1	Forward	-0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std
\$1	Reverse	-0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std
\$2, left	Forward	-0.2 std	-0.15 std	-0.1 std
\$2, left	Reverse	-0.2 std	-0.15 std	-0.1 std
\$2, right	Forward	0.0 std	+0.1 std	+0.2 std
\$2, right	Reverse	0.0 std	+0.1 std	+0.2 std
\$5	Forward	-0.2 old (lt str)	0.0 new (dk str)	+0.2 old (lt str)
\$5	Reverse	-0.2 old (lt str)	0.0 new (dk str)	+0.2 old (lt str)
\$10, left	Forward	-0.2 old	-0.1 new	0.0 old
\$10, left	Reverse	0.0 old	+0.1 new	+0.2 old
\$10, right	Forward	+0.1 old	+0.2 new	+0.3 old
\$10, right	Reverse	-0.2 old	-0.15 new	-0.1 old
\$20	Forward	-0.2 old	0.0 new	+0.2 old
\$20	Reverse	-0.2 old	0.0 new	+0.2 old
\$50	Forward	-0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std
\$50	Reverse	-0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std
\$100	Forward	-0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std
\$100	Reverse	-0.2 std	0.0 std	+0.2 std

Table 2 summarizes the position of the scanhead relative to the center of the green surface of United States currency as well as the type of bill to be scanned for generating component patterns for various denominations. The three component patterns ("CP") for a given denomination and for a given scan direction are averaged to yield a corresponding master pattern. The eighteen (18) rows correspond to the preferred method of storing eighteen (18) master patterns. The scanhead position is

indicated relative to the center of the bordered area of the bill. Thus a position of "0.0" indicates that the scanhead is centered over the center of the bordered area of the bill. Displacements to the left of center are indicated by negative numbers, while displacements to the right are indicated by positive numbers. Thus a position of "-0.2" indicates a displacement of 2/10ths of an inch to the left of the center of a bill, while a position of "+0.1" indicates a displacement of 1/10ths of an inch to the right of the center of a bill.

Accordingly, Table 2 indicates that component patterns for a \$20 bill scanned in the forward direction are obtained by scanning an old \$20 bill 2/10ths of an inch to the right and to the left of the center of the bill and by scanning a new \$20 bill directly down the center of the bill. FIG. 15d is a graph illustrating these three patterns. These three patterns are then averaged to obtain the master pattern for a \$20 bill scanned in the forward direction. FIG. 15e is a graph illustrating an pattern for a \$20 bill scanned in the forward direction derived by averaging the patterns of FIG. 15d. This pattern becomes the corresponding \$20 master pattern after undergoing normalization. In generating the master patterns, one may use a scanning device in which a bill to be scanned is held stationary and a scanhead is moved over the bill. Such a device permits the scanhead to be moved laterally, left and right, over a bill to be scanned and thus permits the scanhead to be positioned over the area of the bill which one wishes to scan, for example, 2/10ths of an inch to the left of the center of the bordered area.

As discussed above, for \$10 bills two patterns are obtained in each scan direction with one pattern being scanned slightly to the left of the center and one pattern being scanned slightly to the right of the center. For \$5 bills, it has been found that some \$5 bills are printed with darker stairs ("dk str") on the picture of the Lincoln Memorial while others are printed with lighter stairs ("lt str"). The effect of this variance is averaged out by using an old bill having light stairs and a new bill having dark stairs.

As can be seen from Table 2, for some bills, the third method of using old and new bills is not used; rather, a standard ("std") bill is used for generating all three component patterns as with the first method. Thus, the master pattern for a \$1 bill scanned in the forward direction is obtained by averaging three component

patterns generated by scanning a standard bill three times, once 2/10ths of an inch to the left, once down the center, and once 2/10ths of an inch to the right.

As illustrated by Table 2, a discrimination system may employ a combination of the developed methods of this invention wherein, for example, some master  
5 patterns are generated according the first method and some master patterns are generated according to the third method. Likewise, a discrimination system may combine the scanning of new, standard, and old bills to generate component patterns to be averaged in obtaining a master pattern. Additionally, a discrimination system may generate master patterns by scanning bills of various qualities and/or having  
10 various characteristics and then averaging the resultant patterns. Alternatively, a discrimination system may scan multiple bills of a given quality for a given denomination, e.g., three new \$50 bills, while scanning one or more bills of a different quality for a different denomination, e.g., three old and worn \$1 bills, to generate component patterns to be averaged in obtaining master patterns.

15 The optical sensing and correlation technique described above permits identification of pre-programmed currency denominations with a high degree of accuracy and is based upon a relatively low processing time for digitizing sampled reflectance values and comparing them to the master characteristic patterns. The approach is used to scan currency bills, normalize the scanned data and generate  
20 master patterns in such a way that bill scans during operation have a direct correspondence between compared sample points in portions of the bills which possess the most distinguishable printed indicia. A relatively low number of reflectance samples is required in order to be able to adequately distinguish among several currency denominations.

25 An advantage with this approach is that it is not required that currency bills be scanned along their wide dimensions. Further, the reduction in the number of samples reduces the processing time to such an extent that additional comparisons can be made during the time available between the scanning of successive bills. More specifically, as described above, it becomes possible to compare a test pattern with  
30 multiple stored master characteristic patterns so that the system is made capable of identifying currency which is scanned in the "forward" or "reverse" directions along the green surface of the bill.

Another advantage accruing from the reduction in processing time realized by the preferred sensing and correlation scheme is that the response time involved in either stopping the transport of a bill that has been identified as "spurious", i.e., not corresponding to any of the stored master characteristic patterns, or diverting such a bill to a separate stacker bin, is correspondingly shortened. Accordingly, the system can conveniently be programmed to set a flag when a scanned pattern does not correspond to any of the master patterns. The identification of such a condition can be used to stop the bill transport drive motor for the mechanism. Since the optical encoder is tied to the rotational movement of the drive motor, synchronism can be maintained between pre- and post-stop conditions.

The correlation procedure and the accuracy with which a denomination is identified directly relates to the degree of correspondence between reflectance samples on the test pattern and corresponding samples on the stored master patterns. Thus, shrinkage of "used" bills which, in turn, causes corresponding reductions in both their narrow and wide dimensions, can possibly produce a drop in the degree of correlation between such used bills of a given denomination and the corresponding master patterns. Currency bills which have experienced a high degree of usage exhibit such a reduction in both the narrow and wide dimensions of the bills. While the illustrated sensing and correlation technique remains relatively independent of any changes in the non-preselected dimension of bills, reduction along the preselected dimension can affect correlation factors by realizing a relative displacement of reflectance samples obtained as the "shrunk" bills are transported across the scanhead. Thus, if the bills are transported and scanned along their wide dimension, the sensing and correlation technique will remain relatively independent of any changes in the narrow dimension of bills and reduction along the wide dimension can affect correlation factors. Similarly, if the bills are transported and scanned along their narrow dimension, the sensing and correlation technique will remain relatively independent of any changes in the wide dimension of bills and reduction along the narrow dimension can affect correlation factors.

In order to accommodate or nullify the effect of such bill shrinking, the above-described correlation technique can be modified by use of a progressive shifting approach whereby a test pattern which does not correspond to any of the



master patterns is partitioned into predefined sections, and samples in successive sections are progressively shifted and compared again to the stored patterns in order to identify the denomination. It has experimentally been determined that such progressive shifting effectively counteracts any sample displacement resulting from shrinkage of a bill along the preselected dimension.

The progressive shifting effect is best illustrated by the correlation patterns shown in FIGs. 16a-e. For purposes of clarity, the illustrated patterns were generated using 128 samples for each bill scan as compared to the preferred use of 64 samples. FIG. 16a shows the correlation between a test pattern (represented by a heavy line) and a corresponding master pattern (represented by a thin line). It is clear from FIG. 16a that the degree of correlation between the two patterns is relatively low and exhibits a correlation factor of 606.

The manner in which the correlation between these patterns is increased by employing progressive shifting is best illustrated by considering the correlation at the reference points designated as A-E along the axis defining the number of samples. The effect on correlation produced by "single" progressive shifting is shown in FIG. 16b which shows "single" shifting of the test pattern of FIG. 16a. This is effected by dividing the test pattern into two equal segments each comprising 64 samples. The first segment is retained without any shift, whereas the second segment is shifted by a factor of one data sample. Under these conditions, it is found that the correlation factor at the reference points located in the shifted section, particularly at point E, is improved.

FIG. 16c shows the effect produced by "double" progressive shifting whereby sections of the test pattern are shifted in three stages. This is accomplished by dividing the overall pattern into three approximately equal sized sections. Section one is not shifted, section two is shifted by one data sample (as in FIG. 16b), and section three is shifted by a factor of two data samples. With "double" shifting, it can be seen that the correlation factor at point E is further increased.

On a similar basis, FIG. 16d shows the effect on correlation produced by "triple" progressive shifting where the overall pattern is first divided into four (4) approximately equal sized sections. Subsequently, section one is retained without any shift, section two is shifted by one data sample, section three is shifted by two data

samples, and section four is shifted by three data samples. Under these conditions, the correlation factor at point E is seen to have increased again.

FIG. 16e shows the effect on correlation produced by "quadruple" shifting, where the pattern is first divided into five (5) approximately equal sized sections.

- 5 The first four (4) sections are shifted in accordance with the "triple" shifting approach of FIG. 16d, whereas the fifth section is shifted by a factor of four (4) data samples. From FIG. 16e it is clear that the correlation at point E is increased almost to the point of superimposition of the compared data samples.

- 10 In an alternative progressive shifting approach, the degree of shrinkage of a scanned bill is determined by comparing the length of the scanned bill, as measured by the scanhead, with the length of an "unshrunk" bill. This "unshrunk" length is pre-stored in the system memory. The type of progressive shifting, e.g., "single", "double", "triple", etc., applied to the test pattern is then directly based upon the measured degree of shrinkage. The greater the degree of shrinkage, the greater the
- 15 number of sections into which the test pattern is divided. An advantage of this approach is that only one correlation factor is calculated, as opposed to potentially calculating several correlation factors for different types of progressive shifting:

- In yet another progressive shifting approach, instead of applying progressive shifting to the test pattern, progressive shifting is applied to each of the master
- 20 patterns. The master patterns in the system memory are partitioned into predefined sections, and samples in successive sections are progressively shifted and compared again to the scanned test pattern in order to identify the denomination. To reduce the amount of processing time, the degree of progressive shifting which should be applied to the master patterns may be determined by first measuring the degree of
- 25 shrinkage of the scanned bill. By first measuring the degree of shrinkage, only one type of progressive shifting is applied to the stored master patterns.

- Instead of rearranging the scanned test pattern or the stored master patterns, the system memory may contain pre-stored patterns corresponding to various types of progressive shifting. The scanned test pattern is then compared to all of these stored
- 30 patterns in the system memory. However, to reduce the time required for processing the data, this approach may be modified to first measure the degree of shrinkage and

to then select only those stored patterns from the system memory which correspond to the measure degree of shrinkage for comparison with the scanned test pattern.

The advantage of using the progressive shifting approach, as opposed to merely shifting by a set amount of data samples across the overall test pattern, is that the improvement in correlation achieved in the initial sections of the pattern as a result of shifting is not neutralized or offset by any subsequent shifts in the test pattern. It is apparent from the above figures that the degree of correlation for sample points falling within the progressively shifted sections increases correspondingly.

More importantly, the progressive shifting realizes substantial increases in the overall correlation factor resulting from pattern comparison. For instance, the original correlation factor of 606 (FIG. 16a) is increased to 681 by the "single" shifting shown in FIG. 16b. The "double" shifting shown in FIG. 16c increases the correlation number to 793, the "triple" shifting of FIG. 16d increases the correlation number to 906, and, finally, the "quadruple" shifting shown in FIG. 16e increases the overall correlation number to 960. Using the above approach, it has been determined that used currency bills which exhibit a high degree of shrinkage and which cannot be accurately identified as belonging to the correct currency denomination when the correlation is performed without any shifting, can be identified with a high degree of certainty by using progressive shifting approach, preferably by adopting "triple" or "quadruple" shifting.

In currency discrimination systems in which discrimination is based on the comparison of a pattern obtained from scanning a subject bill to stored master patterns corresponding to various denominations, the patterns which are compared to each other significantly influence the performance characteristics of a discrimination system. For example, in the system described in United States Patent No. 5,295,196, the correlation procedure and the accuracy with which a denomination is identified directly relates to the degree of correspondence between reflectance samples on the test pattern and corresponding samples on the stored master patterns. In accordance with method described above, the identity of a bill under test is determined by comparing a scanned pattern generated by scanning the bill under test with one or more master patterns associated with genuine bills. If the scanned

pattern sufficiently correlates to one of the master pattern, the identity of the bill may be called. The process of identifying a bill under test may be subjected to a bi-level threshold test as described above.

However, the degree of correlation between a scanned and a master pattern  
5 may be negatively impacted if the two patterns are not properly aligned with each other. Such misalignment between patterns may in turn negatively impact upon the performance of a currency identification system. Misalignment between patterns may result from a number of factors. For example, if a system is designed so that the scanning process is initiated in response to the detection of the thin borderline  
10 surrounding U.S. currency or the detection of some other printed indicia such as the edge of printed indicia on a bill, stray marks may cause initiation of the scanning process at an improper time. This is especially true for stray marks in the area between the edge of a bill and the edge of the printed indicia on the bill. Such stray marks may cause the scanning process to be initiated too soon, resulting in a scanned  
15 pattern which leads a corresponding master pattern. Alternatively, where the detection of the edge of a bill is used to trigger the scanning process, misalignment between patterns may result from variances between the location of printed indicia on a bill relative to the edges of a bill. Such variances may result from tolerances permitted during the printing and/or cutting processes in the manufacture of currency.  
20 For example, it has been found that location of the leading edge of printed indicia on Canadian currency relative to the edge of Canadian currency may vary up to approximately 0.2 inches (approximately 0.5 cm).

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the problems associated with misaligned patterns are overcome by employing an improved method  
25 of generating multiple scanned and/or master patterns and comparing the multiple scanned and master patterns with each other. Briefly, a preferred embodiment of the improved pattern generation method involves removing data samples from one end of a pattern to be modified and adding data values on the opposite end equal to the data values contained in the corresponding sequence positions of the pattern to which the  
30 modified pattern is to be compared. This process may be repeated, up to a predetermined number of times, until a sufficiently high correlation is obtained between the two patterns so as to permit the identity of a bill under test to be called.

A preferred embodiment of the present invention can be further understood by considering Table 3. Table 3 contains data samples generated by scanning the narrow dimension of Canadian \$2 bills along a segment positioned about the center of the bill on the side opposite the portrait side. More specifically, the second column of Table 3 represents a scanned pattern generated by scanning a test Canadian \$2 bill. The scanned pattern comprises 64 data samples arranged in a sequence. Each data sample has a sequence position, 1-64, associated therewith. The fifth column represents a master pattern associated with a Canadian \$2 bill. The master pattern likewise comprises a sequence of 64 data samples. The third and fourth columns represent the scanned pattern after it has been modified in the forward direction one and two times, respectively. In the embodiment depicted in Table 3, one data sample is removed from the beginning of the preceding pattern during each modification.

Table 3

<u>Sequence Position</u>	<u>Scanned Pattern</u>	<u>Scanned Pattern Modified Once</u>	<u>Scanned Pattern Modified Twice</u>	<u>Master Pattern</u>
1	93	50	-21	161
2	50	-21	50	100
3	-21	50	93	171
4	50	93	65	191
5	93	65	22	252
6	65	22	79	403
7	22	79	136	312
8	79	136	193	434
9	136	193	278	90
10	193	278	164	0
11	278	164	136	20
12	164	136	278	444
.	.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.	.

<b>Sequence Position</b>	<b>Scanned Pattern</b>	<b>Scanned Pattern Modified Once</b>	<b>Scanned Pattern Modified Twice</b>	<b>Master Pattern</b>
52	-490	-518	-447	-1090
53	-518	-447	-646	-767
54	-447	-646	-348	-575
55	-646	-348	-92	-514
56	-348	-92	-63	-545
57	-92	-63	-205	-40
58	-63	-205	605	1665
59	-205	605	1756	1705
60	605	1756	1401	1685
61	1756	1401	1671	2160
62	1401	1671	2154	2271
63	1671	2154	*2240	2240
64	2154	*2210	*2210	2210

The modified pattern represented in the third column is generated by adding an additional data value to the end of the original scanned pattern sequence which effectively removes the first data sample of the original pattern, e.g., 93, from the modified pattern. The added data value in the last sequence position, 64, is set equal to the data value contained in the 64th sequence position of the master pattern, e.g., 2210. This copying of the 64th data sample is indicated by an asterisk in the third column. The second modified pattern represented in the fourth column is generated by adding two additional data values to the end of the original scanned pattern which effectively removes the first two data samples of the original scanned, e.g., 93 and 50, from the second modified pattern. The last two sequence positions, 63 and 64, are filled with the data value contained in the 63rd and 64th sequence positions of the master pattern, e.g., 2240 and 2210, respectively. The copying of the 63rd and 64th data samples is indicated by asterisks in the fourth column.

In the example of Table 3, the printed area of the bill under test from which the scanned pattern was generated was farther away from the leading edge of the bill

than was the printed area of the bill from which the master pattern was generated. As a result, the scanned pattern trailed the master pattern. The preferred embodiment of the pattern generation method described in conjunction with Table 3 compensates for the variance of the distance between the edge of the bill and the edge of the printed indicia by modifying the scanned pattern in the forward direction. As a result of the modification method employed, the correlation between the original and modified versions of the scanned pattern and the master pattern increased from 705 for the original, unmodified scanned pattern to 855 for the first modified pattern and to 988 for the second modified pattern. Accordingly, the bill under test which would otherwise have been rejected may now be properly called as a genuine \$2 Canadian bill through the employment of the pattern generation method discussed above.

Another preferred embodiment of the present invention can be understood with reference to the flowchart of FIGs. 17a-17c. The process of FIGs. 17a-17c involves a method of identifying a bill under test by comparing a scanned pattern retrieved from a bill under test with one or more master patterns associated with one or more genuine bills. After the process begins at step 128a, the scanned pattern is compared with one or more master patterns associated with genuine bills (step 128b). At step 129 it is determined whether the bill under test can be identified based on the comparison at step 128b. This may be accomplished by evaluating the correlation between the scanned pattern and each of the master patterns. If the bill can be identified, the process is ended at step 130. Otherwise, one or more of the master patterns are designated for further processing at step 131. For example, all of the master patterns may be designated for further processing. Alternatively, less than all of the master patterns may be designated based on a preliminary assessment about the identity of the bill under test. For example, only the master patterns which had the four highest correlation values with respect to the scanned pattern at step 128b might be chosen for further processing. In any case, the number of master patterns designated for further processing is M1.

At step 132, either the scanned pattern is designated for modification or the M1 master patterns designated at step 131 are designated for modification. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the scanned pattern is designated for

modification and the master patterns remain unmodified. At step 133, it is designated whether forward modification or reverse modification is to be performed. This determination may be made, for example, by analyzing the beginning or ending data samples of the scanned pattern to determine whether the scanned pattern trails or  
5 leads the master patterns.

At step 134, the iteration counter, I, is set equal to one. The iteration counter is used to keep track of how many times the working patterns have been modified. Then at step 135, the number of incremental data samples, R, to be removed during each iteration is set. For example, in a preferred embodiment of the present  
10 invention, only one additional data sample is removed from each working pattern during each iteration in which case R is set equal to one.

At step 136, it is determined whether the scanned pattern has been designated for modification. If it has, then the scanned pattern is replicated M1 times and the M1 replicated patterns, one for each of the M1 master patterns, are designated as  
15 working patterns at step 137. If the scanned pattern has not been designated for modification, then the M1 master patterns have been so designated, and the M1 master patterns are replicated and designated as working patterns at step 138. Regardless of which pattern or patterns were designated for modification, at step 139, it is determined whether forward or reverse modification is to be performed on the  
20 working patterns.

If forward modification is to be performed, the first  $R \times I$  data samples from each working pattern are removed at step 140. The first  $R \times I$  data samples may either be explicitly removed from the working patterns or be removed as a result of adding additional data samples (step 141) to the end of the pattern and designating the  
25 beginning of the modified pattern to be the  $R \times I + 1$  sequence position of the original pattern. As a result of the modification, the data sample which was in the 64th sequence position in the original working pattern will be in the  $64 - (R \times I)$  sequence position. The added data values in the last  $R \times I$  sequence positions of a working pattern are copied from the data samples in the last  $R \times I$  sequence positions  
30 of a corresponding non-designated pattern at step 141. After the above described modification, the working patterns are compared with either respective ones of the non-designated patterns (scanned pattern modified/M1 master patterns not designated



for modification) or the non-designated pattern (M1 master patterns designated for modification/scanned pattern not designated for modification) at step 142.

Alternatively, if reverse modification is to be performed, the last  $R \times I$  data samples from each working pattern are removed at step 143. The last  $R \times I$  data samples may either be explicitly removed from the working patterns or be removed as a result of adding additional data samples (step 144) to the beginning of the pattern and designating the beginning of the modified pattern to start with the added data samples. As a result of the modification, the data sample which was in the 1st sequence position in the original working pattern will be in the  $(R \times I) + 1$  sequence position. The added data samples in first  $R \times I$  sequence positions of a working pattern are copied from the data samples in the first  $R \times I$  sequence positions of a corresponding non-designated pattern at step 144. After the above described modification, the working patterns are compared with either respective ones of the non-designated patterns (scanned pattern modified/M1 master patterns not designated for modification) or the non-designated pattern (M1 master patterns designated for modification/scanned pattern not designated for modification) at step 142.

For example, if the scanned pattern is designated for forward modification and four master patterns are designated for further processing, four working patterns are generated from the scanned pattern at step 137, one for each of the four master patterns. If  $R$  is set to two at step 135, during the first iteration the last two data samples from each of the M1 master patterns are copied and added to the end of the M1 working patterns so as to become the last two sequence positions of the M1 working patterns, one working pattern being associated with each of the M1 master patterns. As a result, after the first iteration, four different working patterns are generated with each working pattern corresponding to a modified version of the scanned pattern but with each having data values in its last two sequence positions copied from the last two sequence positions of a respective one of the M1 master patterns. After a second iteration, the last four sequence positions of each of the M1 master patterns are copied and added to the end of the M1 working patterns so as to become the last four sequence positions of a respective one of the M1 working patterns.

As another example, if four master patterns are designated for further processing and the four designated master patterns are designated for forward modification, four working patterns are generated at step 138, one from each of the four designated master patterns. If R is set to two at step 135, during the first iteration the last two data samples of the scanned pattern are copied and added to the end of the M1 working patterns so as to become the last two sequence positions of the M1 working patterns, one working pattern being associated with each of the M1 master patterns. As a result, after the first iteration, four different working patterns are generated with each working pattern corresponding to a modified version of a corresponding master pattern but with each having data values in its last two sequence position copied from the last two sequence positions of the scanned pattern. After a second iteration, the last four sequence positions of the scanned pattern are copied and added to the end of the M1 working patterns so as to become the last four sequence positions of the M1 working patterns.

After the comparison at step 142, it is determined whether the bill under test can be identified at step 145. If the bill can be identified the process is ended at step 146. Otherwise, the iteration counter, I, is incremented by one (step 147) and the incremented iteration counter is compared to a maximum iteration number, T (step 148). If the iteration counter, I, is greater than the maximum iteration number, T, then a no call is issued (step 149a), meaning that a match sufficient to identify the bill under test was not obtained, and the process is ended (step 149b). Otherwise, if the iteration is not greater than the maximum iteration number, the modification process is repeated beginning with step 136.

The flowchart of FIGs. 17a-17c is intended to illustrate one preferred embodiment of the present invention. However, it is recognized that there are numerous ways in which the steps of the flowchart of FIGs. 17a-17c may be rearranged or altered and yet still result in the comparison of the same patterns as would be compared if the steps of FIGs. 17a-17c were followed exactly. For example, instead of generating multiple working patterns, a single working pattern may be generated and the leading or trailing sequence positions successively altered before comparisons to corresponding non-designated patterns. Likewise, instead of generating multiple modified patterns directly from unmodified patterns, multiple

modified patterns may be generated from the preceding modified patterns. For example, instead of generating a twice forward modified scanned pattern by removing the first two data samples from the original scanned pattern and copying the last 2R sequence positions of a corresponding master pattern and adding these data values to the end of the original scanned pattern, the first data sample of the single forward modified scanned pattern may be removed and one data sample added to the end of the single modified scanned pattern and then the data samples in the last two sequence positions may be set equal to the data samples in the last 2R sequence positions of a corresponding master pattern.

10 In an alternate preferred embodiment of the present invention, instead of copying data values from a scanned pattern into corresponding sequence positions of modified master patterns, leading or trailing sequence positions of modified master patterns are filled with zeros.

In an alternate preferred embodiment of the present invention, modified master patterns are stored, for example in EPROM 60 of FIG. 7a, before a bill under test is scanned. In such an embodiment, a scanned pattern retrieved from a bill under test is compared to the modified master patterns stored in memory. Modified master patterns are generated by modifying a corresponding master pattern in either the forward or backward direction, or both, and filling in any trailing or leading sequence positions with zeros. An advantage of such a preferred embodiment is that no modification needs to be performed during the normal operation of an identification device incorporating such an embodiment.

An example of a procedure involved in comparing test patterns to master patterns is illustrated at FIG. 18a which shows the routine as starting at step 150a. At step 151a, the best and second best correlation results (referred to in FIG. 18a as the "#1 and #2 answers") are initialized to zero and, at step 152a, the test pattern is compared with each of the sixteen or eighteen original master patterns stored in the memory. At step 153a, the calls corresponding to the two highest correlation numbers obtained up to that point are determined and saved. At step 154a, a post-processing flag is set. At step 155a the test pattern is compared with each of a second set of 16 or 18 master patterns stored in the memory. This second set of master patterns is the same as the 16 or 18 original master patterns except that the

last sample is dropped and a zero is inserted in front of the first sample. If any of the resulting correlation numbers is higher than the two highest numbers previously saved, the #1 and #2 answers are updated at step 156.

Steps 155a and 156a are repeated at steps 157a and 158a, using a third set of master patterns formed by dropping the last two samples from each of the 16 original master patterns and inserting two zeros in front of the first sample. At steps 159a and 160a the same steps are repeated again, but using only \$50 and \$100 master patterns formed by dropping the last three samples from the original master patterns and adding three zeros in front of the first sample. Steps 161a and 162a repeat the procedure once again, using only \$1, \$5, \$10 and \$20 master patterns formed by dropping the 33rd sample whereby original samples 34-64 become samples 33-63 and inserting a 0 as the new last sample. Finally, steps 163a and 164a repeat the same procedure, using master patterns for \$10 and \$50 bills printed in 1950, which differ significantly from bills of the same denominations printed in later years. This routine then returns to the main program at step 165a. The above multiple sets of master patterns may be pre-stored in EPROM 60.

A modified procedure involved in comparing test patterns to green-side master patterns is illustrated at FIG. 18b which shows the routine as starting at step 150b. At step 151b, the best and second best correlation results (referred to in FIG. 18b as the "#1 and #2 answers") are initialized to zero and, at step 152b, the test pattern is compared with each of the eighteen original green-side master patterns stored in the memory. At step 153b, the calls corresponding to the two highest correlation numbers obtained up to that point are determined and saved. At step 154b, a post-processing flag is set. At step 155b the test pattern is compared with each of a second set of 18 green-side master patterns stored in the memory. This second set of master patterns is the same as the 18 original green-side master patterns except that the last sample is dropped and a zero is inserted in front of the first sample. If any of the resulting correlation numbers is higher than the two highest numbers previously saved, the #1 and #2 answers are updated at step 156b.

Steps 155b and 156b are repeated at steps 157b and 158b, using a third set of green-side master patterns formed by dropping the last two samples from each of the 18 original master patterns and inserting two zeros in front of the first sample. At

steps 159b and 160b the same steps are repeated again, but using only \$50 and \$100 master patterns (two patterns for the \$50 and four patterns for the \$100) formed by dropping the last three samples from the original master patterns and adding three zeros in front of the first sample. Steps 161b and 162b repeat the procedure once  
5 again, using only \$1, \$5, \$10, \$20 and \$50 master patterns (four patterns for the \$10 and two patterns for the other denominations) formed by dropping the 33rd sample whereby original samples 34-64 become samples 33-63 and inserting a 0 as the new last sample. Finally, steps 163b and 164b repeat the same procedure, using master  
10 patterns for \$10 and \$50 bills printed in 1950 (two patterns scanned along a center segment for each denomination), which differ significantly from bills of the same denominations printed in later years. This routine then returns to the main program at step 165b. The above multiple sets of master patterns may be pre-stored in EPROM 60.

In a preferred embodiment where conditional black-side correlation is to be  
15 performed a modified version of the routine designated as "CORRES" is initiated. The procedure involved in executing the modified version of CORRES is illustrated at FIG. 19a which shows the routine as starting at step 180. Step 181 determines whether the bill has been identified as a \$2 bill, and, if the answer is negative, step 182 determines whether the best correlation number ("call #1") is greater than 799.  
20 If the answer is negative, the correlation number is too low to identify the denomination of the bill with certainty, and at step 183b a black side correlation routine is called (described in more detail below in conjunction with FIGs. 19b-19c).

An affirmative answer at step 182 advances the system to step 186, which determines whether the sample data passes an ink stain test (described below). If the  
25 answer is negative, a "no call" bit is set in a correlation result flag at step 183a. A "no call previous bill" flag is then set at step 184, and the routine returns to the main program at step 185. If the answer at step 186 is affirmative, the system advances to step 187 which determines whether the best correlation number is greater than 849. An affirmative answer at step 187 indicates that the correlation number is sufficiently  
30 high that the denomination of the scanned bill can be identified with certainty without any further checking. Consequently, a "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 188. A separate register associated with the best correlation number (#1)

may then be used to identify the denomination represented by the stored pattern resulting in the highest correlation number. The system returns to the main program at step 185.

5 A negative answer at step 187 indicates that the correlation number is between 800 and 850. It has been found that correlation numbers within this range are sufficient to identify all bills except the \$2 bill. Accordingly, a negative response at step 187 advances the system to step 189 which determines whether the difference between the two highest correlation numbers ("call #1" and "call #2") is greater than 149. If the answer is affirmative, the denomination identified by the highest  
10 correlation number is acceptable, and thus the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 188. If the difference between the two highest correlation numbers is less than 150, step 189 produces a negative response which advances the system to step 183b where the black side correlation routine is called.

Returning to step 181, an affirmative response at this step indicates that the  
15 initial call is a \$2 bill. This affirmative response initiates a series of steps 190-193 which are similar to steps 182, 186, 187 and 189 described above, except that the numbers 799 and 849 used in steps 182 and 187 are changed to 849 and 899, respectively, in steps 190 and 192. The result is either the setting of a "no call" bit in a correlation result flag at step 183a, the setting of the "good call" bit in the  
20 correlation result flag at step 188, or the calling of the black side correlation routine at step 183b.

Turning now to FIGs. 19b and 19c there is shown a flowchart illustrating the steps of the black side correlation routine called at step 183b of FIG. 19a. After the black side correlation routine is initiated at step 600, it is determined at step 602  
25 whether the lower read head was the read head that scanned the black side of the test bill. If it was, the lower read head data is normalized at step 604. Otherwise, it is determined at step 606 whether the upper read head was the read head that scanned the black side of the test bill. If it was, the upper read head data is normalized at step 608. If it cannot be determined which read head scanned the black side of the  
30 bill, then the patterns generated from both sides of the test bill were correlated against the green-side master patterns (see e.g., step 110 of FIG. 12). Under such a circumstance, the no call bit in the correlation result flag is set at step 610, the no

call previous bill flag is set at step 611, and the program returns to the calling point at step 612.

After the lower read head data is normalized at step 604, or the upper read head data is normalized at step 608, it is determined whether the best green-side correlation number is greater than 700 at step 614. A negative response at step 614 results in the no call bit in the correlation result flag being set at step 610, the no call previous bill flag being set at step 611, and the program returning to the calling point at step 612. An affirmative response at step 614 results in a determination being made as to whether the best call from the green side correlation corresponds to a \$20, \$50, or \$100 bill at step 616. A negative response at step 616 results in the no call bit in the correlation result flag being set at step 610, the no call previous bill flag being set at step 611, and the program returning to the calling point at step 612.

If it is determined at step 616 that the best call from the green side correlation corresponds to a \$20, \$50, or \$100 bill, the scanned pattern from the black side is correlated against the black-side master patterns associated with the specific denomination and scan direction associated with the best call from the green side. According to a preferred embodiment, multiple black-side master patterns are stored for \$20, \$50 and \$100 bills. For each of these denominations, three master patterns are stored for scans in the forward and three master patterns are stored for scans in the reverse direction for a total of six patterns for each denomination. For a given scan direction, black-side master patterns are generated by scanning a corresponding denominated bill along a segment located about the center of the narrow dimension of the bill, a segment slightly displaced (0.2 inches) to the left of center, and a segment slightly displaced (0.2 inches) to the right of center.

For example, at step 618, it is determined whether the best call from the green side is associated with a forward scan of a \$20 bill and, if it is, the normalized data from the black side of the test bill is correlated against the black-side master patterns associated with a forward scan of a \$20 bill at step 620. Next it is determined whether the black-side correlation number is greater than 900 at step 622. If it is, the good call bit in the correlation result flag is set at step 648 and the program returns to the calling point at step 646. If the black-side correlation number is not greater than 900, then the no call bit in the correlation result flag is set at step

642, the no call previous bill flag is set at step 644, and the program returns to the calling point at step 646. If it is determined that the best call from the green side is not associated with a forward scan of \$20 bill at step 618, the program branches accordingly at steps 624 - 640 so that the normalized data from the black side of the test bill is correlated against the appropriate black-side master patterns.

Referring now to FIGs. 20a-22, the mechanical portions of the preferred currency discrimination and counting machine include a rigid frame formed by a pair of side plates 201 and 202, a pair of top plates 203a and 203b, and a lower front plate 204. The input receptacle for receiving a stack of bills to be processed is formed by downwardly sloping and converging walls 205 and 206 formed by a pair of removable covers 207 and 208 which snap onto the frame. The rear wall 206 supports a removable hopper 209 which includes a pair of vertically disposed side walls 210a and 210b which complete the receptacle for the stack of currency bills to be processed.

From the input receptacle, the currency bills are moved in seriatim from the bottom of the stack along a curved guideway 211 which receives bills moving downwardly and rearwardly and changes the direction of travel to a forward direction. The curvature of the guideway 211 corresponds substantially to the curved periphery of the drive roll 223 so as to form a narrow passageway for the bills along the rear side of the drive roll. The exit end of the guideway 211 directs the bills onto a linear path where the bills are scanned and stacked. The bills are transported and stacked with the narrow dimension of the bills maintained parallel to the transport path and the direction of movement at all times.

Stacking of the bills is effected at the forward end of the linear path, where the bills are fed into a pair of driven stacking wheels 212 and 213. These wheels project upwardly through a pair of openings in a stacker plate 214 to receive the bills as they are advanced across the downwardly sloping upper surface of the plate. The stacker wheels 212 and 213 are supported for rotational movement about a shaft 215 journaled on the rigid frame and driven by a motor 216. The flexible blades of the stacker wheels deliver the bills into an output receptacle 217 at the forward end of the stacker plate 214. During operation, a currency bill which is delivered to the stacker plate 214 is picked up by the flexible blades and becomes lodged between a



pair of adjacent blades which, in combination, define a curved enclosure which decelerates a bill entering therein and serves as a means for supporting and transferring the bill into the output receptacle 217 as the stacker wheels 212, 213 rotate. The mechanical configuration of the stacker wheels, as well as the manner in which they cooperate with the stacker plate, is conventional and, accordingly, is not described in detail herein.

Returning now to the input region of the machine as shown in FIGs. 20a-22, bills that are stacked on the bottom wall 205 of the input receptacle are stripped, one at a time, from the bottom of the stack. The bills are stripped by a pair of stripping wheels 220 mounted on a drive shaft 221 which, in turn, is supported across the side walls 201, 202. The stripping wheels 220 project through a pair of slots formed in the cover 207. Part of the periphery of each wheel 220 is provided with a raised high-friction, serrated surface 222 which engages the bottom bill of the input stack as the wheels 220 rotate, to initiate feeding movement of the bottom bill from the stack. The serrated surfaces 222 project radially beyond the rest of the wheel peripheries so that the wheels "jog" the bill stack during each revolution so as to agitate and loosen the bottom currency bill within the stack, thereby facilitating the stripping of the bottom bill from the stack.

The stripping wheels 220 feed each stripped bill B (FIG. 21a) onto a drive roll 223 mounted on a driven shaft 224 supported across the side walls 201 and 202. As can be seen most clearly in FIGs. 21a and 21b, the drive roll 223 includes a central smooth friction surface 225 formed of a material such as rubber or hard plastic. This smooth friction surface 225 is sandwiched between a pair of grooved surfaces 226 and 227 having serrated portions 228 and 229 formed from a high-friction material.

The serrated surfaces 228, 229 engage each bill after it is fed onto the drive roll 223 by the stripping wheels 220, to frictionally advance the bill into the narrow arcuate passageway formed by the curved guideway 211 adjacent the rear side of the drive roll 223. The rotational movement of the drive roll 223 and the stripping wheels 220 is synchronized so that the serrated surfaces on the drive roll and the stripping wheels maintain a constant relationship to each other. Moreover, the drive roll 223 is dimensioned so that the circumference of the outermost portions of the grooved surfaces is greater than the width  $W$  of a bill, so that the bills advanced by

the drive roll 223 are spaced apart from each other, for the reasons discussed above. That is, each bill fed to the drive roll 223 is advanced by that roll only when the serrated surfaces 228, 229 come into engagement with the bill, so that the circumference of the drive roll 223 determines the spacing between the leading edges of successive bills.

To avoid the simultaneous removal of multiple bills from the stack in the input receptacle, particularly when small stacks of bills are loaded into the machine, the stripping wheels 220 are always stopped with the raised, serrated portions 222 positioned below the bottom wall 205 of the input receptacle. This is accomplished by continuously monitoring the angular position of the serrated portions of the stripping wheels 220 via the encoder 32, and then controlling the stopping time of the drive motor so that the motor always stops the stripping wheels in a position where the serrated portions 222 are located beneath the bottom wall 205 of the input receptacle. Thus, each time a new stack of bills is loaded into the machine, those bills will rest on the smooth portions of the stripping wheels. This has been found to significantly reduce the simultaneous feeding of double or triple bills, particularly when small stacks of bills are involved.

In order to ensure firm engagement between the drive roll 223 and the currency bill being fed, an idler roll 230 urges each incoming bill against the smooth central surface 225 of the drive roll 223. The idler roll 230 is journaled on a pair of arms 231 which are pivotally mounted on a support shaft 232. Also mounted on the shaft 232, on opposite sides of the idler roll 230, are a pair of grooved guide wheels 233 and 234. The grooves in these two wheels 233, 234 are registered with the central ribs in the two grooved surfaces 226, 227 of the drive roll 223. The wheels 233, 234 are locked to the shaft 232, which in turn is locked against movement in the direction of the bill movement (clockwise as view in FIG. 20a) by a one-way spring clutch 235. Each time a bill is fed into the nip between the guide wheels 233, 234 and the drive roll 223, the clutch 235 is energized to turn the shaft 232 just a few degrees in a direction opposite the direction of bill movement. These repeated incremental movements distribute the wear uniformly around the circumferences of the guide wheels 233, 234. Although the idler roll 230 and the guide wheels 233, 234 are mounted behind the guideway 211, the guideway is apertured to allow the

roll 230 and the wheels 233, 234 to engage the bills on the front side of the guideway.

5       Beneath the idler roll 230, a spring-loaded pressure roll 236 (FIGs. 20a and 21b) presses the bills into firm engagement with the smooth friction surface 225 of the drive roll as the bills curve downwardly along the guideway 211. This pressure roll 236 is journaled on a pair of arms 237 pivoted on a stationary shaft 238. A spring 239 attached to the lower ends of the arms 237 urges the roll 236 against the drive roll 233, through an aperture in the curved guideway 211.

10       At the lower end of the curved guideway 211, the bill being transported by the drive roll 223 engages a flat guide plate 240 which carries a lower scan head 18. Currency bills are positively driven along the flat plate 240 by means of a transport roll arrangement which includes the drive roll 223 at one end of the plate and a smaller driven roll 241 at the other end of the plate. Both the driver roll 223 and the smaller roll 241 include pairs of smooth raised cylindrical surfaces 242 and 243  
15       which hold the bill flat against the plate 240. A pair of O rings 244 and 245 fit into grooves formed in both the roll 241 and the roll 223 to engage the bill continuously between the two rolls 223 and 241 to transport the bill while helping to hold the bill flat against the guide plate 240.

20       The flat guide plate 240 is provided with openings through which the raised surfaces 242 and 243 of both the drive roll 223 and the smaller driven roll 241 are subjected to counter-rotating contact with corresponding pairs of passive transport rolls 250 and 251 having high-friction rubber surfaces. The passive rolls 250, 251 are mounted on the underside of the flat plate 240 in such a manner as to be freewheeling about their axes 254 and 255 and biased into counter-rotating contact  
25       with the corresponding upper rolls 223 and 241. The passive rolls 250 and 251 are biased into contact with the driven rolls 223 and 241 by means of a pair of H-shaped leaf springs 252 and 253 (see FIGs. 23 and 24). Each of the four rolls 250, 251 is cradled between a pair of parallel arms of one of the H-shaped leaf springs 252 and 253. The central portion of each leaf spring is fastened to the plate 240, which is  
30       fastened rigidly to the machine frame, so that the relatively stiff arms of the H-shaped springs exert a constant biasing pressure against the rolls and push them against the upper rolls 223 and 241.

The points of contact between the driven and passive transport rolls are preferably coplanar with the flat upper surface of the plate 240 so that currency bills can be positively driven along the top surface of the plate in a flat manner. The distance between the axes of the two driven transport rolls, and the corresponding counter-rotating passive rolls, is selected to be just short of the length of the narrow dimension of the currency bills. Accordingly, the bills are firmly gripped under uniform pressure between the upper and lower transport rolls within the scanhead area, thereby minimizing the possibility of bill skew and enhancing the reliability of the overall scanning and recognition process.

The positive guiding arrangement described above is advantageous in that uniform guiding pressure is maintained on the bills as they are transported through the optical scanhead area, and twisting or skewing of the bills is substantially reduced. This positive action is supplemented by the use of the H-springs 252, 253 for uniformly biasing the passive rollers into contact with the active rollers so that bill twisting or skew resulting from differential pressure applied to the bills along the transport path is avoided. The O-rings 244, 245 function as simple, yet extremely effective means for ensuring that the central portions of the bills are held flat.

The location of a magnetic head 256 and a magnetic head adjustment screw 257 are illustrated in FIG. 23. The adjustment screw 257 adjusts the proximity of the magnetic head 256 relative to a passing bill and thereby adjusts the strength of the magnetic field in the vicinity of the bill.

FIG. 22 shows the mechanical arrangement for driving the various means for transporting currency bills through the machine. A motor 260 drives a shaft 261 carrying a pair of pulleys 262 and 263. The pulley 262 drives the roll 241 through a belt 264 and pulley 265, and the pulley 263 drives the roll 223 through a belt 266 and pulley 267. Both pulleys 265 and 267 are larger than pulleys 262 and 263 in order to achieve the desired speed reduction from the typically high speed at which the motor 260 operates.

The shaft 221 of the stripping wheels 220 is driven by means of a pulley 268 provided thereon and linked to a corresponding pulley 269 on the shaft 224 through a belt 270. The pulleys 268 and 269 are of the same diameter so that the shafts 221 and 224 rotate in unison.

As shown in FIG. 20b, the optical encoder 32 is mounted on the shaft of the roller 241 for precisely tracking the position of each bill as it is transported through the machine, as discussed in detail above in connection with the optical sensing and correlation technique.

5       The upper and lower scanhead assemblies are shown most clearly in FIGs. 25-28. It can be seen that the housing for each scanhead is formed as an integral part of a unitary molded plastic support member 280 or 281 that also forms the housings for the light sources and photodetectors of the photosensors PS1 and PS2. The lower member 281 also forms the flat guide plate 240 that receives the bills from the drive  
10   roll 223 and supports the bills as they are driven past the scanheads 18a and 18b.

The two support members 280 and 281 are mounted facing each other so that the lenses 282 and 283 of the two scanheads 18a, 18b define a narrow gap through which each bill is transported. Similar, but slightly larger, gaps are formed by the opposed lenses of the light sources and photodetectors of the photosensors PS1 and  
15   PS2. The upper support member 280 includes a tapered entry guide 280a which guides an incoming bill into the gaps between the various pairs of opposed lenses.

The lower support member 281 is attached rigidly to the machine frame. The upper support member 280, however, is mounted for limited vertical movement when it is lifted manually by a handle 284, to facilitate the clearing of any paper jams that  
20   occur beneath the member 280. To allow for such vertical movement, the member 280 is slidably mounted on a pair of posts 285 and 286 on the machine frame, with a pair of springs 287 and 288 biasing the member 280 to its lowermost position.

Each of the two optical scanheads 18a and 18b housed in the support members 280, 281 includes a pair of light sources acting in combination to uniformly  
25   illuminate light strips of the desired dimension on opposite sides of a bill as it is transported across the plate 240. Thus, the upper scanhead 18a includes a pair of LEDs 22a, directing light downwardly through an optical mask on top of the lens 282 onto a bill traversing the flat guide plate 240 beneath the scanhead. The LEDs 22a are angularly disposed relative to the vertical axis of the scanhead so that their  
30   respective light beams combine to illuminate the desired light strip defined by an aperture in the mask. The scanhead 18a also includes a photodetector 26a mounted directly over the center of the illuminated strip for sensing the light reflected off the

strip. The photodetector 26a is linked to the CPU 30 through the ADC 28 for processing the sensed data as described above.

When the photodetector 26a is positioned on an axis passing through the center of the illuminated strip, the illumination by the LED's as a function of the distance from the central point "0" along the X axis, should optimally approximate a step function as illustrated by the curve A in FIG. 29. With the use of a single light source angularly displaced relative to a vertical axis through the center of the illuminated strip, the variation in illumination by an LED typically approximates a Gaussian function, as illustrated by the curve B in FIG. 29.

The two LEDs 22a are angularly disposed relative to the vertical axis by angles  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , respectively. The angles  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are selected to be such that the resultant strip illumination by the LED's is as close as possible to the optimum distribution curve A in FIG. 29. The LED illumination distribution realized by this arrangement is illustrated by the curve designated as "C" in FIG. 29 which effectively merges the individual Gaussian distributions of each light source to yield a composite distribution which sufficiently approximates the optimum curve A.

In the particular embodiment of the scanheads 18a and 18b illustrated in the drawings, each scanhead includes two pairs of LEDs and two photodetectors for illuminating, and detecting light reflected from, strips of two different sizes. Thus, each mask also includes two slits which are formed to allow light from the LEDs to pass through and illuminate light strips of the desired dimensions. More specifically, one slit illuminates a relatively wide strip used for obtaining the reflectance samples which correspond to the characteristic pattern for a test bill. In a preferred embodiment, the wide slit has a length of about 0.500" and a width of about 0.050". The second slit forms a relatively narrow illuminated strip used for detecting the thin borderline surrounding the printed indicia on currency bills, as described above in detail. In a preferred embodiment, the narrow slit 283 has a length of about 0.300" and a width of about 0.010".

In order to prevent dust from fouling the operation of the scanheads, each scanhead includes three resilient seals or gaskets 290, 291, and 292. The two side seals 290 and 291 seal the outer ends of the LEDs 22, while the center seal 292 seals the outer end of the photodetector 26. Thus, dust cannot collect on either the light

sources or the photodetectors, and cannot accumulate and block the slits through which light is transmitted from the sources to the bill, and from the bill to the photodetectors.

5 Doubling or overlapping of bills in the illustrative transport system is detected by two photosensors PS1 and PS2 which are located on a common transverse axis that is perpendicular to the direction of bill flow (see e.g., FIGs. 30a and 30b). The photosensors PS1 and PS2 include photodetectors 293 and 294 mounted within the lower support member 281 in immediate opposition to corresponding light sources 295 and 296 mounted in the upper support member 280. The photodetectors 293,  
10 294 detect beams of light directed downwardly onto the bill transport path from the light sources 295, 296 and generate analog outputs which correspond to the sensed light passing through the bill. Each such output is converted into a digital signal by a conventional ADC convertor unit (not shown) whose output is fed as a digital input to and processed by the system CPU.

15 The presence of a bill adjacent the photosensors PS1 and PS2 causes a change in the intensity of the detected light, and the corresponding changes in the analog outputs of the photodetectors 293 and 294 serve as a convenient means for density-based measurements for detecting the presence of "doubles" (two or more overlaid or overlapped bills) during the currency scanning process. For instance, the  
20 photosensors may be used to collect a predefined number of density measurements on a test bill, and the average density value for a bill may be compared to predetermined density thresholds (based, for instance, on standardized density readings for master bills) to determine the presence of overlaid bills or doubles.

In order to prevent the accumulation of dirt on the light sources 295 and 296  
25 and/or the photodetectors 293, 294 of the photosensors PS1 and PS2, both the light sources and the photodetectors are enclosed by lenses mounted so close to the bill path that they are continually wiped by the bills. This provides a self-cleaning action which reduces maintenance problems and improves the reliability of the outputs from the photosensors over long periods of operation.

30 The CPU 30, under control of software stored in the EPROM 34, monitors and controls the speed at which the bill transport mechanism 16 transports bills from the bill separating station 14 to the bill stacking unit. Flowcharts of the speed control

routines stored in the EPROM 34 are depicted in FIGs. 31-35. To execute more than the first step in any given routine, the currency discriminating system 10 must be operating in a mode requiring the execution of the routine.

Referring first to FIG. 31, when a user places a stack of bills in the bill accepting station 12 for counting, the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism 16 must accelerate or "ramp up" from zero to top speed. Therefore, in response to receiving the stack of bills in the bill accepting station 12, the CPU 30 sets a ramp-up bit in a motor flag stored in the memory unit 38. Setting the ramp-up bit causes the CPU 30 to proceed beyond step 300b of the ramp-up routine. If the ramp-up bit is set, the CPU 30 utilizes a ramp-up counter and a fixed parameter "ramp-up step" to incrementally increase the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism 16 until the bill transport mechanism 16 reaches its top speed. The "ramp-up step" is equal to the incremental increase in the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism 16, and the ramp-up counter determines the amount of time between incremental increases in the bill transport speed. The greater the value of the "ramp-up step", the greater the increase in the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism 16 at each increment. The greater the maximum value of the ramp-up counter, the greater the amount of time between increments. Thus, the greater the value of the "ramp-up step" and the lesser the maximum value of the ramp-up counter, the lesser the time it takes the bill transport mechanism 16 to reach its top speed.

The ramp-up routine in FIG. 31 employs a variable parameter "new speed", a fixed parameter "full speed", and the variable parameter "transport speed". The "full speed" represents the top speed of the bill transport mechanism 16, while the "new speed" and "transport speed" represent the desired current speed of the bill transport mechanism 16. To account for operating offsets of the bill transport mechanism 16, the "transport speed" of the bill transport mechanism 16 actually differs from the "new speed" by a "speed offset value". Outputting the "transport speed" to the bill transport mechanism 16 causes the bill transport mechanism 16 to operate at the transport speed.

To incrementally increase the speed of the bill transport mechanism 16, the CPU 30 first decrements the ramp-up counter from its maximum value (step 301). If the maximum value of the ramp-up counter is greater than one at step 302, the CPU



30 exits the speed control software in FIGs. 31-35 and repeats steps 300b, 301, and 302 during subsequent iterations of the ramp-up routine until the ramp-up counter is equal to zero. When the ramp-up counter is equal to zero, the CPU 30 resets the ramp-up counter to its maximum value (step 303). Next, the CPU 30 increases the "new speed" by the "ramp-up step" (step 304). If the "new speed" is not yet equal to the "full speed" at step 305, the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step 306). The "transport speed" is output to the bill transport mechanism 16 at step 307 of the routine in FIG. 31 to change the speed of the bill transport mechanism 16 to the "transport speed". During subsequent iterations of the ramp-up routine, the CPU 30 repeats steps 300b-306 until the "new speed" is greater than or equal to the "full speed".

Once the "new speed" is greater than or equal to the "full speed" at step 305, the ramp-up bit in the motor flag is cleared (step 308), a pause-after-ramp bit in the motor flag is set (step 309), a pause-after-ramp counter is set to its maximum value (step 310), and the parameter "new speed" is set equal to the "full speed" (step 311). Finally, the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step 306). Since the "new speed" is equal to the "full speed", outputting the "transport speed" to the bill transport mechanism 16 causes the bill transport mechanism 16 to operate at its top speed. The ramp-up routine in FIG. 31 smoothly increases the speed of the bill transport mechanism without causing jerking or motor spikes. Motor spikes could cause false triggering of the optical scanhead 18 such that the scanhead 18 scans non-existent bills.

During normal counting, the bill transport mechanism 16 transports bills from the bill separating station 14 to the bill stacking unit at its top speed. In response to the optical scanhead 18 detecting a stranger, suspect or no call bill, however, the CPU 30 sets a ramp-to-slow-speed bit in the motor flag. Setting the ramp-to-slow-speed bit causes the CPU 30 to proceed beyond step 312 of the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. 32 on the next iteration of the software in FIGs. 31-35. Using the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. 32, the CPU 30 causes the bill transport mechanism 16 to controllably decelerate or "ramp down" from its top speed to a slow speed. As the ramp-to-slow speed routine in FIG. 32 is similar to the ramp-up routine in FIG. 31, it is not described in detail herein.

It suffices to state that if the ramp-to-slow-speed bit is set in the motor flag, the CPU 30 decrements a ramp-down counter (step 313) and determines whether or not the ramp-down counter is equal to zero (step 314). If the ramp-down counter is not equal to zero, the CPU 30 exits the speed control software in FIGs. 31-35 and  
5 repeats steps 312, 313, and 314 of the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. 32 during subsequent iterations of the speed control software until the ramp-down counter is equal to zero. Once the ramp-down counter is equal to zero, the CPU 30 resets the ramp-down counter to its maximum value (step 315) and subtracts a "ramp-down step" from the variable parameter "new speed" (step 316). The "new speed" is equal  
10 to the fixed parameter "full speed" prior to initiating the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. 32.

After subtracting the "ramp-down step" from the "new speed", the "new speed" is compared to a fixed parameter "slow speed" (step 317). If the "new speed" is greater than the "slow speed", the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new  
15 speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step 318) and this "transport speed" is output to the bill transport mechanism 16 (step 307 of FIG. 31). During subsequent iterations of the ramp-to-slow-speed routine, the CPU 30 continues to decrement the "new speed" by the "ramp-down step" until the "new speed" is less than or equal to the "slow speed". Once the "new speed" is less than or equal to the "slow speed" at step  
20 317, the CPU 30 clears the ramp-to-slow-speed bit in the motor flag (step 319), sets the pause-after-ramp bit in the motor flag (step 320), sets the pause-after-ramp counter (step 321), and sets the "new speed" equal to the "slow speed" (step 322). Finally, the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step 318). Since the "new speed" is equal to the "slow speed", outputting the  
25 "transport speed" to the bill transport mechanism 16 causes the bill transport mechanism 16 to operate at its slow speed. The ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. 32 smoothly decreases the speed of the bill transport mechanism 16 without causing jerking or motor spikes.

FIG. 33 depicts a ramp-to-zero-speed routine in which the CPU 30 ramps  
30 down the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism 16 to zero either from its top speed or its slow speed. In response to completion of counting of a stack of bills, the CPU 30 enters this routine to ramp down the transport speed of the bill

transport mechanism 16 from its top speed to zero. Similarly, in response to the optical scanhead 18 detecting a stranger, suspect, or no call bill and the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG. 32 causing the transport speed to be equal to a slow speed, the CPU 30 enters the ramp-to-zero-speed routine to ramp down the transport speed from the slow speed to zero.

With the ramp-to-zero-speed bit set at step 323, the CPU 30 determines whether or not an initial-braking bit is set in the motor flag (step 324). Prior to ramping down the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism 16, the initial-braking bit is clear. Therefore, flow proceeds to the left branch of the ramp-to-zero-speed routine in FIG. 33. In this left branch, the CPU 30 sets the initial-braking bit in the motor flag (step 325), resets the ramp-down counter to its maximum value (step 326), and subtracts an "initial-braking step" from the variable parameter "new speed" (step 327). Next, the CPU 30 determines whether or not the "new speed" is greater than zero (step 328). If the "new speed" is greater than zero at step 328, the variable parameter "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step 329) and this "transport speed" is output to the bill transport mechanism 16 at step 307 in FIG. 31.

During the next iteration of the ramp-to-zero-speed routine in FIG. 33, the CPU 30 enters the right branch of the routine at step 324 because the initial-braking bit was set during the previous iteration of the ramp-to-zero-speed routine. With the initial-braking bit set, the CPU 30 decrements the ramp-down counter from its maximum value (step 330) and determines whether or not the ramp-down counter is equal to zero (step 331). If the ramp-down counter is not equal to zero, the CPU 30 immediately exits the speed control software in FIGs. 31-35 and repeats steps 323, 324, 330, and 331 of the ramp-to-slow-speed routine during subsequent iterations of the speed control software until the ramp-down counter is equal to zero. Once the ramp-down counter is equal to zero, the CPU 30 resets the ramp-down counter to its maximum value (step 332) and subtracts a "ramp-down step" from the variable parameter "new speed" (step 333). This "ramp-down step" is smaller than the "initial-braking step" so that the "initial-braking step" causes a larger decremental change in the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism 16 than that caused by the "ramp-down step".

Next, the CPU 30 determines whether or not the "new speed" is greater than zero (step 328). If the "new speed" is greater than zero, the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step 329) and this "transport speed" is outputted to the bill transport mechanism 16 (step 307 in FIG. 31). During subsequent iterations of the speed control software, the CPU 30 continues to decrement the "new speed" by the "ramp-down step" at step 333 until the "new speed" is less than or equal to zero at step 328. Once the "new speed" is less than or equal to the zero at step 328, the CPU 30 clears the ramp-to-zero-speed bit and the initial-braking bit in the motor flag (step 334), sets a motor-at-rest bit in the motor flag (step 335), and sets the "new speed" equal to zero (step 336). Finally, the "transport speed" is set equal to the "new speed" plus the "speed offset value" (step 329). Since the "new speed" is equal to zero, outputting the "transport speed" to the bill transport mechanism 16 at step 307 in FIG. 31 halts the bill transport mechanism 16.

Using the feedback loop routine in FIG. 35, the CPU 30 monitors and stabilizes the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism 16 when the bill transport mechanism 16 is operating at its top speed or at slow speed. To measure the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism 16, the CPU 30 monitors the optical encoder 32. While monitoring the optical encoder 32, it is important to synchronize the feedback loop routine with any transport speed changes of the bill transport mechanism 16. To account for the time lag between execution of the ramp-up or ramp-to-slow-speed routines in FIGs. 31-32 and the actual change in the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism 16, the CPU 30 enters a pause-after-ramp routine in FIG. 34 prior to entering the feedback loop routine in FIG. 35 if the bill transport mechanism 16 completed ramping up to its top speed or ramping down to slow speed during the previous iteration of the speed control software in FIGs. 31-35.

The pause-after-ramp routine in FIG. 34 allows the bill transport mechanism 16 to "catch up" to the CPU 30 so that the CPU 30 does not enter the feedback loop routine in FIG. 35 prior to the bill transport mechanism 16 changing speeds. As stated previously, the CPU 30 sets a pause-after-ramp bit during step 309 of the ramp-up routine in FIG. 31 or step 320 of the ramp-to-slow-speed routine in FIG.

32. With the pause-after-ramp bit set, flow proceeds from step 337 of the pause-after-ramp routine to step 338, where the CPU 30 decrements a pause-after-ramp counter from its maximum value. If the pause-after-ramp counter is not equal to zero at step 339, the CPU 30 exits the pause-after-ramp routine in FIG. 34 and repeats  
5 steps 337, 338, and 339 of the pause-after-ramp routine during subsequent iterations of the speed control software until the pause-after-ramp counter is equal to zero. Once the pause-after-ramp counter decrements to zero, the CPU 30 clears the pause-after-ramp bit in the motor flag (step 340) and sets the feedback loop counter to its maximum value (step 341). The maximum value of the pause-after-ramp counter is  
10 selected to delay the CPU 30 by an amount of time sufficient to permit the bill transport mechanism 16 to adjust to a new transport speed prior to the CPU 30 monitoring the new transport speed with the feedback loop routine in FIG. 35.

Referring now to the feedback loop routine in FIG. 35, if the motor-at-rest bit in the motor flag is not set at step 342, the CPU 30 decrements a feedback loop  
15 counter from its maximum value (step 343). If the feedback loop counter is not equal to zero at step 344, the CPU 30 immediately exits the feedback loop routine in FIG. 35 and repeats steps 342, 343, and 344 of the feedback loop routine during subsequent iterations of the speed control software in FIGs. 31-36 until the feedback loop counter is equal to zero. Once the feedback loop counter is decremented to  
20 zero, the CPU 30 resets the feedback loop counter to its maximum value (step 345), stores the present count of the optical encoder 32 (step 346), and calculates a variable parameter "actual difference" between the present count and a previous count of the optical encoder 32 (step 347). The "actual difference" between the present and previous encoder counts represents the transport speed of the bill transport  
25 mechanism 16. The larger the "actual difference" between the present and previous encoder counts, the greater the transport speed of the bill transport mechanism. The CPU 30 subtracts the "actual difference" from a fixed parameter "requested difference" to obtain a variable parameter "speed difference" (step 348).

If the "speed difference" is greater than zero at step 349, the bill transport  
30 speed of the bill transport mechanism 16 is too slow. To counteract slower than ideal bill transport speeds, the CPU 30 multiplies the "speed difference" by a "gain constant" (step 354) and sets the variable parameter "transport speed" equal to the

multiplied difference from step 354 plus the "speed offset value" plus a fixed parameter "target speed" (step 355). The "target speed" is a value that, when added to the "speed offset value", produces the ideal transport speed. The calculated "transport speed" is greater than this ideal transport speed by the amount of the multiplied difference. If the calculated "transport speed" is nonetheless less than or equal to a fixed parameter "maximum allowable speed" at step 356, the calculated "transport speed" is output to the bill transport mechanism 16 at step 307 so that the bill transport mechanism 16 operates at the calculated "transport speed". If, however, the calculated "transport speed" is greater than the "maximum allowable speed" at step 356, the parameter "transport speed" is set equal to the "maximum allowable speed" (step 357) and is output to the bill transport mechanism 16 (step 307).

If the "speed difference" is less than or equal to zero at step 349, the bill transport speed of the bill transport mechanism 16 is too fast or is ideal. To counteract faster than ideal bill transport speeds, the CPU 30 multiplies the "speed difference" by a "gain constant" (step 350) and sets the variable parameter "transport speed" equal to the multiplied difference from step 350 plus the "speed offset value" plus a fixed parameter "target speed" (step 351). The calculated "transport speed" is less than this ideal transport speed by the amount of the multiplied difference. If the calculated "transport speed" is nonetheless greater than or equal to a fixed parameter "minimum allowable speed" at step 352, the calculated "transport speed" is output to the bill transport mechanism 16 at step 307 so that the bill transport mechanism 16 operates at the calculated "transport speed". If, however, the calculated "transport speed" is less than the "minimum allowable speed" at step 352, the parameter "transport speed" is set equal to the "minimum allowable speed" (step 353) and is output to the bill transport mechanism 16 (step 307).

It should be apparent that the smaller the value of the "gain constant", the smaller the variations of the bill transport speed between successive iterations of the feedback control routine in FIG. 35 and, accordingly, the less quickly the bill transport speed is adjusted toward the ideal transport speed. Despite these slower adjustments in the bill transport speed, it is generally preferred to use a relatively

small "gain constant" to prevent abrupt fluctuations in the bill transport speed and to prevent overshooting the ideal bill transport speed.

A routine for using the outputs of the two photosensors PS1 and PS2 to detect any doubling or overlapping of bills is illustrated in FIG. 36 by sensing the optical  
5 density of each bill as it is scanned. This routine starts at step 401 and retrieves the denomination determined for the previously scanned bill at step 402. This previously determined denomination is used for detecting doubles in the event that the newly scanned bill is a "no call", as described below. Step 403 determines whether the current bill is a "no call," and if the answer is negative, the denomination determined  
10 for the new bill is retrieved at step 404.

If the answer at step 403 is affirmative, the system jumps to step 405, so that the previous denomination retrieved at step 402 is used in subsequent steps. To permit variations in the sensitivity of the density measurement, a "density setting" is retrieved from memory at step 405. The operator makes this choice manually,  
15 according to whether the bills being scanned are new bills, requiring a high degree of sensitivity, or used bills, requiring a lower level of sensitivity. If the "density setting" has been turned off, this condition is sensed at step 406, and the system returns to the main program at step 413. If the "density setting" is not turned off, a denominational density comparison value is retrieved from memory at step 407.

20 The memory preferably contains five different density values (for five different density settings, i.e., degrees of sensitivity) for each denomination. Thus, for a currency set containing seven different denominations, the memory contains 35 different values. The denomination retrieved at step 404 (or step 402 in the event of a "no call"), and the density setting retrieved at step 405, determine which of the 35  
25 stored values is retrieved at step 407 for use in the comparison steps described below.

At step 408, the density comparison value retrieved at step 407 is compared to the average density represented by the output of the photosensor PS1. The result of this comparison is evaluated at step 409 to determine whether the output of sensor S1 identifies a doubling of bills for the particular denomination of bill determined at step  
30 402 or 404. If the answer is negative, the system returns to the main program at step 413. If the answer is affirmative, step 410 then compares the retrieved density comparison value to the average density represented by the output of the second

sensor PS2. The result of this comparison is evaluated at step 411 to determine whether the output of the photosensor PS2 identifies a doubling of bills. Affirmative answers at both step 409 and step 411 result in the setting of a "doubles error" flag at step 412, and the system then returns to the main program at step 413. The

5 "doubles error" flag can, of course, be used to stop the bill transport motor.

FIG. 37 illustrates a routine that enables the system to detect bills which have been badly defaced by dark marks such as ink blotches, felt-tip pen marks and the like. Such severe defacing of a bill can result in such distorted scan data that the data can be interpreted to indicate the wrong denomination for the bill.

10 Consequently, it is desirable to detect such severely defaced bills and then stop the bill transport mechanism so that the bill in question can be examined by the operator.

The routine of FIG. 37 retrieves each successive data sample at step 450b and then advances to step 451 to determine whether that sample is too dark. As described above, the output voltage from the photodetector 26 decreases as the

15 darkness of the scanned area increases. Thus, the lower the output voltage from the photodetector, the darker the scanned area. For the evaluation carried out at step 451, a preselected threshold level for the photodetector output voltage, such as a threshold level of about 1 volt, is used to designate a sample that is "too dark."

An affirmative answer at step 451 advances the system to step 452 where a

20 "bad sample" count is incremented by one. A single sample that is too dark is not enough to designate the bill as seriously defaced. Thus, the "bad sample" count is used to determine when a preselected number of consecutive samples, e.g., ten consecutive samples, are determined to be too dark. From step 452, the system advances to step 453 to determine whether ten consecutive bad samples have been

25 received. If the answer is affirmative, the system advances to step 454 where an error flag is set. This represents a "no call" condition, which causes the bill transport system to be stopped in the same manner discussed above.

When a negative response is obtained at step 451, the system advances to step 455 where the "bad sample" count is reset to zero, so that this count always

30 represents the number of consecutive bad samples received. From step 455 the system advances to step 456 which determines when all the samples for a given bill have been checked. As long as step 456 yields a negative answer, the system



continues to retrieve successive samples at step 450b. When an affirmative answer is produced at step 456, the system returns to the main program at step 457.

A routine for automatically monitoring and making any necessary corrections in various line voltages is illustrated in FIG. 38. This routine is useful in  
5 automatically compensating for voltage drifts due to temperature changes, aging of components and the like. The routine starts at step 550 and reads the output of a line sensor which is monitoring a selected voltage at step 550b. Step 551 determines whether the reading is below 0.60, and if the answer is affirmative, step 552 determines whether the reading is above 0.40. If step 552 also produces an  
10 affirmative response, the voltage is within the required range and thus the system returns to the main program step 553. If step 551 produces a negative response, an incremental correction is made at step 554 to reduce the voltage in an attempt to return it to the desired range. Similarly, if a negative response is obtained at step 552, an incremental correction is made at step 555 to increase the voltage toward the  
15 desired range.

Now that a currency scanner has been described in connection with scanning U.S. currency, an additional currency discrimination system of the present invention will be described.

First of all, because currencies come in a variety of sizes, sensors are added  
20 to determine the size of a bill to be scanned. These sensors are placed upstream of the scanheads to be described below. A preferred embodiment of size determining sensors is illustrated in FIG. 39. Two leading/trailing edge sensors 1062 detect the leading and trailing edges of a bill 1064 as it passing along the transport path. These sensors in conjunction with the encoder 32 (FIG. 2a-2b) may be used to determine  
25 the dimension of the bill along a direction parallel to the scan direction which in FIG. 39 is the narrow dimension (or width) of the bill 1064. Additionally, two side edge sensors 1066 are used to detect the dimension of a bill 1064 transverse to the scan direction which in FIG. 39 is the wide dimension (or length) of the bill 1064. While the sensors 1062 and 1066 of FIG. 39 are optical sensors, other means of  
30 determining the size of a bill may be employed.

Once the size of a bill is determined, the potential identity of the bill is limited to those bills having the same size. Accordingly, the area to be scanned can be

tailored to the area or areas best suited for identifying the denomination and country of origin of a bill having the measured dimensions.

Secondly, while the printed indicia on U.S. currency is enclosed within a thin borderline, the sensing of which may serve as a trigger to begin scanning using a wider slit, most currencies of other currency systems such as those from other countries do not have such a borderline. Thus the system described above may be modified to begin scanning relative to the edge of a bill for currencies lacking such a borderline. Referring to FIG. 40, two leading edge detectors 1068 are shown. The detection of the leading edge 1069 of a bill 1070 by leading edge sensors 1068 triggers scanning in an area a given distance away from the leading edge of the bill 1070, e.g.,  $D_1$  or  $D_2$ , which may vary depending upon the preliminary indication of the identity of a bill based on the dimensions of a bill. Alternatively, the leading edge 1069 of a bill may be detected by one or more of the scanheads (to be described below) in a similar manner as that described with respect to FIGs. 7a and 7b. Alternatively, the beginning of scanning may be triggered by positional information provided by the encoder 32 of FIG. 2a-2b, for example, in conjunction with the signals provided by sensors 1062 of FIG. 39, thus eliminating the need for leading edge sensors 1068.

However, when the initiation of scanning is triggered by the detection of the leading edge of a bill, the chance that a scanned pattern will be offset relative to a corresponding master pattern increases. Offsets can result from the existence of manufacturing tolerances which permit the location of printed indicia of a document to vary relative to the edges of the document. For example, the printed indicia on U.S. bills may vary relative to the leading edge of a bill by as much as 50 mils which is 0.05 inches (1.27 mm). Thus when scanning is triggered relative to the edge of a bill (rather than the detection of a certain part of the printed indicia itself, such as the printed borderline of U.S. bills), a scanned pattern can be offset from a corresponding master pattern by one or more samples. Such offsets can lead to erroneous rejections of genuine bills due to poor correlation between scanned and master patterns. To compensate, overall scanned patterns and master patterns can be shifted relative to each other as illustrated in FIGs. 41a and 41b. More particularly, FIG. 41a illustrates a scanned pattern which is offset from a corresponding master

pattern. FIG. 41b illustrates the same patterns after the scanned pattern is shifted relative to the master pattern, thereby increasing the correlation between the two patterns. Alternatively, instead of shifting either scanned patterns or master patterns, master patterns may be stored in memory corresponding to different offset amounts.

5        Thirdly, while it has been determined that the scanning of the central area on the green side of a U.S. bill (see segment S of FIG. 4) provides sufficiently distinct patterns to enable discrimination among the plurality of U.S. denominations, the central area may not be suitable for bills originating in other countries. For example, for bills originating from Country 1, it may be determined that segment  $S_1$  (FIG. 40) provides a more preferable area to be scanned, while segment  $S_2$  (FIG. 40) is more  
10        preferable for bills originating from Country 2. Alternatively, in order to sufficiently discriminate among a given set of bills, it may be necessary to scan bills which are potentially from such set along more than one segment, e.g., scanning a single bill along both  $S_1$  and  $S_2$ . To accommodate scanning in areas other than the central  
15        portion of a bill, multiple scanheads may be positioned next to each other. A preferred embodiment of such a multiple scanhead system is depicted in FIG. 42. Multiple scanheads 1072a-c and 1072d-f are positioned next to each other along a direction lateral to the direction of bill movement. Such a system permits a bill 1074 to be scanned along different segments. Multiple scanheads 1072a-f are arranged on  
20        each side of the transport path, thus permitting both sides of a bill 1074 to be scanned.

Two-sided scanning may be used to permit bills to be fed into a currency discrimination system according to the present invention with either side face up. An example of a two-sided scanhead arrangement is described above in connection with  
25        FIGs. 2a, 6c, and 6d. Master patterns generated by scanning genuine bills may be stored for segments on one or both sides. In the case where master patterns are stored from the scanning of only one side of a genuine bill, the patterns retrieved by scanning both sides of a bill under test may be compared to a master set of single-sided master patterns. In such a case, a pattern retrieved from one side of a bill  
30        under test should match one of the stored master patterns, while a pattern retrieved from the other side of the bill under test should not match one of the master patterns. Alternatively, master patterns may be stored for both sides of genuine bills. In such

a two-sided system, a pattern retrieved by scanning one side of a bill under test should match with one of the master patterns of one side (Match 1) and a pattern retrieved from scanning the opposite side of a bill under test should match the master pattern associated with the opposite side of a genuine bill identified by Match 1.

5           Alternatively, in situations where the face orientation of a bill (i.e., whether a bill is "face up" or "face down") may be determined prior to or during characteristic pattern scanning, the number of comparisons may be reduced by limiting comparisons to patterns corresponding to the same side of a bill. That is, for example, when it is known that a bill is "face up", scanned patterns associated with scanheads above the  
10           transport path need only be compared to master patterns generated by scanning the "face" of genuine bills. By "face" of a bill it is meant a side which is designated as the front surface of the bill. For example, the front or "face" of a U.S. bill may be designated as the "black" surface while the back of a U.S. bill may be designated as the "green" surface. The face orientation may be determinable in some situations by  
15           sensing the color of the surfaces of a bill. An alternative method of determining the face orientation of U.S. bills by detecting the borderline on each side of a bill is described above in connection with FIGs. 6c, 6d, and 12. The implementation of color sensing is discussed in more detailed below.

          According to the embodiment of FIG. 42, the bill transport mechanism  
20           operates in such a fashion that the central area C of a bill 1074 is transported between central scanheads 1072b and 1072e. Scanheads 1072a and 1072c and likewise scanheads 1072d and 1072f are displaced the same distance from central scanheads 1072b and 1072e, respectively. By symmetrically arranging the scanheads about the central region of a bill, a bill may be scanned in either direction, e.g., top  
25           edge first (forward direction) or bottom edge first (reverse direction). As described above with respect to FIGs. 1-7b, master patterns are stored from the scanning of genuine bills in both the forward and reverse directions. While a symmetrical arrangement is preferred, it is not essential provided appropriate master patterns are stored for a non-symmetrical system.

30           While FIG. 42 illustrates a system having three scanheads per side, any number of scanheads per side may be utilized. Likewise, it is not necessary that there be a scanhead positioned over the central region of a bill. For example, FIG.

43 illustrates another preferred embodiment of the present invention capable of scanning the segments  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  of FIG. 40. Scanheads 1076a, 1076d, 1076e, and 1076h scan a bill 1078 along segment  $S_1$  while scanheads 1076b, 1076c, 1076f, and 1076g scan segment  $S_2$ .

5           FIG. 44 depicts another preferred embodiment of a scanning system according to the present invention having laterally moveable scanheads 1080a-b. Similar scanheads may be positioned on the opposite side of the transport path. Moveable scanheads 1080a-b may provide more flexibility that may be desirable in certain scanning situations. Upon the determination of the dimensions of a bill as described  
10 in connection with FIG. 39, a preliminary determination of the identity of a bill may be made. Based on this preliminary determination, the moveable scanheads 1080a-b may be positioned over the area of the bill which is most appropriate for retrieving discrimination information. For example, if based on the size of a scanned bill, it is preliminarily determined that the bill is a Japanese 5000 Yen bill-type, and if it has  
15 been determined that a suitable characteristic pattern for a 5000 Yen bill-type is obtained by scanning a segment 2.0 cm to the left of center of the bill fed in the forward direction, scanheads 1080a and 1080b may be appropriately positioned for scanning such a segment, e.g., scanhead 1080a positioned 2.0 cm left of center and scanhead 1080b positioned 2.0 cm right of center. Such positioning permits proper  
20 discrimination regardless of the whether the scanned bill is being fed in the forward or reverse direction. Likewise scanheads on the opposite side of the transport path (not shown) could be appropriately positioned. Alternatively, a single moveable scanhead may be used on one or both sides of the transport path. In such a system, size and color information (to be described in more detail below) may be used to  
25 properly position a single laterally moveable scanhead, especially where the orientation of a bill may be determined before scanning.

          FIG. 44 depicts a system in which the transport mechanism is designed to deliver a bill 1082 to be scanned centered within the area in which scanheads 1080a-b are located. Accordingly, scanheads 1080a-b are designed to move relative to the  
30 center of the transport path with scanhead 1080a being moveable within the range  $R_1$  and scanhead 1080b being moveable within range  $R_2$ .

FIG. 45 depicts another preferred embodiment of a scanning system according to the present invention wherein bills to be scanned are transported in a left justified manner along the transport path, that is wherein the left edge L of a bill 1084 is positioned in the same lateral location relative to the transport path. Based on the dimensions of the bill, the position of the center of the bill may be determined and the scanheads 1086a-b may in turn be positioned accordingly. As depicted in FIG. 45, scanhead 1086a has a range of motion  $R_3$  and scanhead 1086b has a range of motion  $R_4$ . The ranges of motion of scanheads 1086a-b may be influenced by the range of dimensions of bills which the discrimination system is designed to accommodate. Similar scanheads may be positioned on the opposite side of the transport path.

Alternatively, the transport mechanism may be designed such that scanned bills are not necessarily centered or justified along the lateral dimension of the transport path. Rather the design of the transport mechanism may permit the position of bills to vary left and right within the lateral dimension of the transport path. In such a case, the edge sensors 1066 of FIG. 39 may be used to locate the edges and center of a bill, and thus provide positional information in a moveable scanhead system and selection criteria in a stationary scanhead system.

In addition to the stationary scanhead and moveable scanhead systems described above, a hybrid system having both stationary and moveable scanheads may be used. Likewise, it should be noted that the laterally displaced scanheads described above need not lie along the same lateral axis. That is, the scanheads may be, for example, staggered upstream and downstream from each other. FIG. 46 is a top view of a staggered scanhead arrangement according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention. As illustrated in FIG. 46, a bill 1130 is transported in a centered manner along the transport path 1132 so that the center 1134 of the bill 1130 is aligned with the center 1136 of the transport path 1132. Scanheads 1140a-h are arranged in a staggered manner so as to permit scanning of the entire width of the transport path 1132. The areas illuminated by each scanhead are illustrated by strips 1142a, 1142b, 1142e, and 1142f for scanheads 1140a, 1140b, 1140e, and 1140f, respectively. Based on size determination sensors, scanheads 1140a and 1140h may either not be activated or their output ignored.

In general, if prior to scanning a document, preliminary information about a document can be obtained, such as its size or color, appropriately positioned stationary scanheads may be activated or laterally moveable scanheads may be appropriately positioned provided the preliminary information provides some indication as to the potential identity of the document. Alternatively, especially in systems having scanheads positioned over a significant portion of the transport path, many or all of the scanheads of a system may be activated to scan a document. Then subsequently, after some preliminary determination as to a document's identity has been made, only the output or derivations thereof of appropriately located scanheads may be used to generate scanned patterns. Derivations of output signals include, for example, data samples stored in memory generated by sampling output signals. Under such an alternative embodiment, information enabling a preliminary determination as to a document's identity may be obtained by analyzing information either from sensors separate from the scanheads or from one or more of the scanheads themselves. An advantage of such preliminary determinations is that the number of scanned patterns which have to be generated or compared to a set of master patterns is reduced. Likewise the number of master patterns to which scanned patterns must be compared may also be reduced.

While the scanheads 1140a-h of FIG. 46 are arranged in a non-overlapping manner, they may alternatively be arranged in an overlapping manner. By providing additional lateral positions, an overlapping scanhead arrangement may provide greater selectivity in the segments to be scanned. This increase in scanable segments may be beneficial in compensating for currency manufacturing tolerances which result in positional variances of the printed indicia on bills relative to their edges. Additionally, in a preferred embodiment, scanheads positioned above the transport path are positioned upstream relative to their corresponding scanheads positioned below the transport path.

FIGs. 47a and 47b illustrate another preferred embodiment of the present invention wherein a plurality of analog sensors 1150 such as photodetectors are laterally displaced from each other and are arranged in a linear array within a single scanhead 1152. FIG. 47a is a top view while FIG. 47b is a side elevation view of such a linear array embodiment. The output of individual sensors 1150 are connected

to analog-to-digital converters (not shown) through the use of graded index fibers, such as a "lens array" manufactured by MSG America, Inc., part number SLA20A1675702A3, and subsequently to a CPU (not shown) in a manner similar to that depicted in FIGs. 1 and 6a. As depicted in FIGs. 47a and 47b, a bill 1154 is  
5 transported past the linear array scanhead 1152 in a centered fashion. A preferred length for the linear array scanhead is about 6-7 inches (15 cm - 17 cm).

In a manner similar to that described above, based on the determination of the size of a bill, appropriate sensors may be activated and their output used to generate scanned patterns. Alternatively many or all of the sensors may be activated with only  
10 the output or derivations thereof of appropriately located sensors being used to generate scanned patterns. Derivations of output signals include, for example, data samples stored in memory generated by sampling output signals. As a result, a discriminating system incorporating a linear array scanhead according the present invention would be capable of accommodating a wide variety of bill-types.

15 Additionally, a linear array scanhead provides a great deal of flexibility in how information may be read and processed with respect to various bills. In addition to the ability to generate scanned patterns along segments in a direction parallel to the direction of bill movement, by appropriately processing scanned samples, scanned patterns may be "generated" or approximated in a direction perpendicular to the  
20 direction of bill movement. For example, if the linear array scanhead 1152 comprises one hundred and sixty (160) sensors 1150 over a length of 7 inches (17.78 cm) instead of taking samples for 64 encoder pulses from say 30 sensors, samples may be taken for 5 encoder pulses from all 160 cells (or all those positioned over the bill 1154). Alternatively, 160 scanned patterns (or selected ones thereof) of 5 data  
25 samples each may be used for pattern comparisons. Accordingly, it can be seen that the data acquisition time is significantly reduced from 64 encoder pulses to only 5 encoder pulses. The time saved in acquiring data can be used to permit more time to be spent processing data and/or to reduce the total scanning time per bill thus enabling increased throughput of the identification system. Additionally, the linear  
30 array scanhead permits a great deal of flexibility in tailoring the areas to be scanned. For example, it has been found that the leading edge of Canadian bills contain valuable graphic information. Accordingly, when it is determined that a test bill may



be a Canadian bill (or when the identification system is set to a Canadian currency setting), the scanning area can be limited to the leading edge area of bills, for example, by activating many laterally displaced sensors for a relatively few number of encoder pulses.

5           FIG. 48 is a top view of another preferred embodiment of a linear array scanhead 1170 having a plurality of analog sensors 1172 such as photodetectors wherein a bill 1174 is transported past the scanhead 1170 in a non-centered manner. As discussed above, positional information from size determining sensors may be used to select appropriate sensors. Alternatively, the linear array scanhead itself may  
10 be employed to determine the size of a bill, thus eliminating the need for separate size determining sensors. For example, all sensors may be activated, data samples derived from sensors located on the ends of the linear array scanhead may be preliminarily processed to determine the lateral position and the length of a bill. The width of a bill may be determined either by employing separate leading/trailing edge  
15 sensors or pre-processing data samples derived from initial and ending cycle encoder pulses. Once size information is obtained about a bill under test, only the data samples retrieved from appropriate areas of a bill need be further processed.

          FIG. 49 is a top view of another preferred embodiment of a linear scanhead 1180 according to the present invention illustrating the ability to compensate for  
20 skewing of bills. Scanhead 1180 has a plurality of analog sensors 1182 and a bill 1184 is transported past scanhead 1180 in a skewed manner. Once the skew of a bill has been determined, for example through the use of leading edge sensors, readings from sensors 1182 along the scanhead 1180 may be appropriately delayed. For example, suppose it is determined that a bill is being fed past scanhead 1180 so  
25 that the left front corner of the bill reaches the scanhead five encoder pulses before the right front corner of the bill. In such a case, sensor readings along the right edge of the bill can be delayed for 5 encoder pulses to compensate for the skew. Where scanned patterns are to be generated over only a few encoder pulses, the bill may be treated as being fed in a non-skewed manner since the amount of lateral deviation  
30 between a scan along a skewed angle and a scan along a non-skewed angle is minimal for a scan of only a few encoder pulses. However, where it is desired to obtain a scan over a large number of encoder pulses, a single scanned pattern may be

generated from the outputs of more than one sensor. For example, a scanned pattern may be generated by taking data samples from sensor 1186a for a given number of encoder pulses, then taking data samples from sensor 1186b for a next given number of encoder pulses, and then taking data samples from sensor 1186c for a next given number of encoder pulses. The number of given encoder pulses for which data samples may be taken from the same sensor is influenced by the degree of skew, the greater the degree of skew of the bill, the fewer the number of data samples which may be obtained before switching to the next sensor. Alternatively, master patterns may be generated and stored for various degrees of skew, thus permitting a single sensor to generate a scanned pattern from a bill under test.

With regards to FIGs. 47-49, while only a single linear array scanhead is shown, another linear array scanhead may be positioned on the opposite side of the transport path to permit scanning of either or both sides of a bill. Likewise, the benefits of using a linear array scanhead may also be obtainable using a multiple scanhead arrangement which is configured appropriately, for example such as depicted in FIG. 46 or a linear arrangement of multiple scanheads.

In addition to size and scanned characteristic patterns, color may also be used to discriminate bills. For example, while all U.S. bills are printed in the same colors, e.g., a green side and a black side, bills from other countries often vary in color with the denomination of the bill. For example, a German 50 deutsche mark bill-type is brown in color while a German 100 deutsche mark bill-type is blue in color. Alternatively, color detection may be used to determine the face orientation of a bill, such as where the color of each side of a bill varies. For example, color detection may be used to determine the face orientation of U.S. bills by detecting whether or not the "green" side of a U.S. bill is facing upwards. Separate color sensors may be added upstream of the scanheads described above. According to such an embodiment, color information may be used in addition to size information to preliminarily identify a bill. Likewise, color information may be used to determine the face orientation of a bill which determination may be used to select upper or lower scanheads for scanning a bill accordingly or compare scanned patterns retrieved from upper scanheads with a set of master patterns generated by scanning a corresponding face while the scanned patterns retrieved from the lower scanheads are

compared with a set of master patterns generated by scanning an opposing face. Alternatively, color sensing may be incorporated into the scanheads described above. Such color sensing may be achieved by, for example, incorporating color filters, colored light sources, and/or dichroic beamsplitters into the currency discrimination system of the present invention. Color information acquisition is described in more detail in co-pending U.S. application Serial No. 08/219,093 filed March 29, 1994, for a "Currency Discriminator and Authenticator" incorporated herein by reference. Various color information acquisition techniques are described in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,841,358; 4,658,289; 4,716,456; 4,825,246; and 4,992,860.

The operation of a currency discriminator according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention may be further understood by referring to the flowchart of FIGs. 50a and 50b. In the process beginning at step 1100, a bill is fed along a transport path (step 1102) past sensors which measure the length and width of the bill (step 1104). These size determining sensors may be, for example, those illustrated in FIG. 39. Next at step 1106, it is determined whether the measured dimensions of the bill match the dimensions of at least one bill stored in memory, such as EPROM 60 of FIG. 7a. If no match is found, an appropriate error is generated at step 1108. If a match is found, the color of the bill is scanned for at step 1110. At step 1112, it is determined whether the color of the bill matches a color associated with a genuine bill having the dimensions measured at step 1104. An error is generated at step 1114 if no such match is found. However, if a match is found, a preliminary set of potentially matching bills is generated at step 1116. Often, only one possible identity will exist for a bill having a given color and dimensions. However, the preliminary set of step 1116 is not limited to the identification of a single bill-type, that is, a specific denomination of a specific currency system; but rather, the preliminary set may comprise a number of potential bill-types. For example, all U.S. bills have the same size and color. Therefore, the preliminary set generated by scanning a U.S. \$5 bill would include U.S. bills of all denominations.

Based on the preliminary set (step 1116), selected scanheads in a stationary scanhead system may be activated (step 1118). For example, if the preliminary identification indicates that a bill being scanned has the color and dimensions of a

German 100 deutsche mark, the scanheads over regions associated with the scanning of an appropriate segment for a German 100 deutsche mark may be activated. Then upon detection of the leading edge of the bill by sensors 1068 of FIG. 40, the appropriate segment may be scanned. Alternatively, all scanheads may be active with only the scanning information from selected scanheads being processed.

5 Alternatively, based on the preliminary identification of a bill (step 1116), moveable scanheads may be appropriately positioned (step 1118).

Subsequently, the bill is scanned for a characteristic pattern (step 1120). At step 1122, the scanned patterns produced by the scanheads are compared with the stored master patterns associated with genuine bills as dictated by the preliminary set.

10 By only making comparisons with master patterns of bills within the preliminary set, processing time may be reduced. Thus for example, if the preliminary set indicated that the scanned bill could only possibly be a German 100 deutsche mark, then only the master pattern or patterns associated with a German 100 deutsche mark need be compared to the scanned patterns. If no match is found, an appropriate error is generated (step 1124). If a scanned pattern does match an appropriate master pattern, the identity of the bill is accordingly indicated (step 1126) and the process is ended (step 1128).

15

While some of the preferred embodiments discussed above entailed a system capable of identifying a plurality of bill-types, the system may be adapted to identify a bill under test as either belonging to a specific bill-type or not. For example, the system may be adapted to store master information associated with only a single bill-type such as a United Kingdom 5 pound bill. Such a system would identify bills under test which were United Kingdom 5 pound bills and would reject all other bill-types.

20

25

The scanheads of the present invention may be incorporated into a document identification system capable of identifying a variety of documents. For example, the system may be designed to accommodate a number of currencies from different countries. Such a system may be designed to permit operation in a number of modes. For example, the system may be designed to permit an operator to select one or more of a plurality of bill-types which the system is designed to accommodate. Such a selection may be used to limit the number of master patterns with which

30

scanned patterns are to be compared. Likewise, the operator may be permitted to select the manner in which bills will be fed, such as all bills face up, all bills top edge first, random face orientation, and/or random top edge orientation.

Additionally, the system may be designed to permit output information to be

5 displayed in a variety of formats to a variety of peripherals, such as a monitor, LCD display, or printer. For example, the system may be designed to count the number of each specific bill-types identified and to tabulate the total amount of currency counted for each of a plurality of currency systems. For example, a stack of bills could be placed in the bill accepting station 12 of FIG. 2a-2b, and the output unit 36 of FIG. 10 2a-2b may indicate that a total of 370 British pounds and 650 German marks were counted. Alternatively, the output from scanning the same batch of bills may provide more detailed information about the specific denominations counted, for example one 100 pound bill, five 50 pound bills, and one 20 pound bill and thirteen 50 deutsche mark bills. Such a device would be useful in a bank teller environment. A bank 15 customer could hand the teller the above stack of bills. The teller could then place the stack of bills in the device. The device quickly scans the bills and indicates that a total of 370 British pounds and 650 German marks were counted. The teller could then issue the customer a receipt. At some point after the above transaction, the teller could separate the bills either by hand and/or by using an automatic sorter 20 device located, for example, in a back room. The above transaction could then be performed rapidly without the customer being detained while the bills are being sorted.

In a document identification system capable of identifying a variety of bills from a number of countries, a manual selection device, such as a switch or a 25 scrolling selection display, may be provided so that the operator may designate what type of currency is to be discriminated. For example, in a system designed to accommodate both Canadian and German currency, the operator could turn a dial to the Canadian bill setting or scroll through a displayed menu and designate Canadian bills. By pre-declaring what type of currency is to be discriminated, scanned patterns 30 need only be compared to master patterns corresponding to the indicated type of currency, e.g., Canadian bills. By reducing the number of master patterns which have to be compared to scanned patterns, the processing time can be reduced.

Alternatively, a system may be designed to compare scanned patterns to all stored master patterns. In such a system, the operator need not pre-declare what type of currency is to be scanned. This reduces the demands on the operator of the device. Furthermore, such a system would permit the inputting of a mixture of bills from a number of countries. The system would scan each bill and automatically determine the issuing country and the denomination.

In addition to the manual and automatic bill-type discriminating systems, an alternate system employs a semi-automatic bill-type discriminating method. Such a system would work in a manner similar to the stranger mode described above. In such a system, a stack of bills is placed in the input hopper. The first bill is scanned and the generated scanned pattern is compared with the master patterns associated with bills from a number of different countries. The discriminator identifies the country-type and the denomination of the bill. Then the discriminator compares all subsequent bills in the stack to the master patterns associated with bills only from the same country as the first bill. For example, if a stack of U.S. bills were placed in the input hopper and the first bill was a \$5 bill, the first bill would be scanned. The scanned pattern would be compared to master patterns associated with bills from a number of countries, e.g., U.S., Canadian, and German bills. Upon determining that the first bill is a U.S. \$5 bill, scanned patterns from the remaining bills in the stack are compared only to master patterns associated with U.S. bills, e.g., \$1, \$2, \$5, \$10, \$20, \$50, and \$100 bills. When a bill fails to sufficiently match one of the compared patterns, the bill may be flagged as described above such as by stopping the transport mechanism with the flagged bill being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle.

A currency discriminating device designed to accommodate both Canadian and German currency bills will now be described. According to this preferred embodiment, a currency discriminating device similar to that described above in connection with scanning U.S. currency (see, e.g., FIGs. 1-38 and accompanying description) is modified so as to be able to accept both Canadian and German currency bills. According to a preferred embodiment when Canadian bills are being discriminated, no magnetic sampling or authentication is performed.

Canadian bills have one side with a portrait (the portrait side) and a reverse side with a picture (the picture side). Likewise, German bills also have one side with a portrait (the portrait side) and a reverse side with a picture (the picture side). In a preferred embodiment, the discriminator is designed to accept either stacks of Canadian bills or stacks of German bills, the bills in the stacks being faced so that the picture side of all the bills will be scanned by a triple scanhead arrangement to be described in connection with FIG. 51. In a preferred embodiment, this triple scanhead replaces the single scanhead arrangement housed in the unitary molded plastic support member 280 (see, e.g., FIGs. 25 and 26).

FIG. 51 is a top view of a triple scanhead arrangement 1200. The triple scanhead arrangement 1200 comprises a center scanhead 1202, a left scanhead 1204, and a right scanhead 1206 housed in a unitary molded plastic support member 1208. A bill 1210 passes under the arrangement 1200 in the direction shown. O-rings are positioned near each scanhead, preferably two O-rings per scanhead, one on each side of a respective scanhead, to engage the bill continuously while transporting the bill between rolls 223 and 241 (FIG. 20a) and to help hold the bill flat against the guide plate 240 (FIG. 20a). The left 1204 and right 1206 scanhead are placed slightly upstream of the center scanhead 1202 by a distance  $D_3$ . In a preferred embodiment,  $D_3$  is 0.083 inches (0.21 cm). The center scanhead 1202 is centered over the center C of the transport path 1216. The center  $L_C$  of the left scanhead 1204 and the center  $R_C$  of the right scanhead 1206 are displaced laterally from center C of the transport path in a symmetrical fashion by a distance  $D_4$ . In a preferred embodiment  $D_4$  is 1.625 inches (4.128 cm).

The scanheads 1202, 1204, and 1206 are each similar to the scanheads describe above connection with FIGs. 1-38, except only a wide slit having a length of about 0.500" and a width of about 0.050" is utilized. The wide slit of each scanhead is used both to detect the leading edge of a bill and to scan a bill after the leading edge has been detected.

Two photosensors 1212 and 1214 are located along the lateral axis of the left and right scanheads 1204 and 1206, one on either side of the center scanhead 1202. Photosensors 1212 and 1214 are same as the photosensors PS1 and PS2 describe above (see, e.g., FIGs. 26 and 30). Photosensors 1212 and 1214 are used to detect

doubles and also to measure the dimension of bills in the direction of bill movement which in the preferred embodiment depicted in FIG. 51 is the narrow dimension of bills. Photosensors 1212 and 1214 are used to measure the narrow dimension of a bill by indicating when the leading and trailing edges of a bill passes by the  
5 photosensors 1212 and 1214. This information in combination with the encoder information permits the narrow dimension of a bill to be measured.

All Canadian bills are 6" (15.24 cm) in their long dimension and 2.75" (6.985 cm) in their narrow dimension. German bills vary in size according to denomination. In a preferred embodiment of the currency discriminating system, the discriminating  
10 device is designed to accept and discriminate \$2, \$5, \$10, \$20, \$50, and \$100 Canadian bills and 10 DM, 20 DM, 50 DM, and 100 DM German bills. These German bills vary in size from 13.0 cm (5.12") in the long dimension by 6.0 cm (2.36") in the narrow dimension for 10 DM bills to 16.0 cm (6.30") in the long dimension by 8.0 cm (3.15") in the narrow dimension for 100 DM bills. The input  
15 hopper of the discriminating device is made sufficiently wide to accommodate all the above listed Canadian and German bills, e.g., 6.3" (16.0 cm) wide.

FIG. 52 is a top view of a Canadian bill illustrating the areas scanned by the triple scanhead arrangement of FIG. 51. In generating scanned patterns from a Canadian bill 1300 traveling along a transport path 1301, segments  $SL_1$ ,  $SC_1$ , and  $SR_1$   
20 are scanned by the left 1204, center 1202, and right 1206 scanheads, respectively, on the picture side of the bill 1300. These segments are similar to segment S in FIG. 4. Each segment begins a predetermined distance  $D_s$  inboard of the leading edge of the bill. In a preferred embodiment  $D_s$  is 0.5" (1.27 cm). Segments  $SL_1$ ,  $SC_1$ , and  $SR_1$  each comprise 64 samples as shown in FIGs. 3 and 5. In a preferred embodiment  
25 Canadian bills are scanned at a rate of 1000 bills per minute. The lateral location of segments  $SL_1$ ,  $SC_1$ , and  $SR_1$  is fixed relative to the transport path 1301 but may vary left to right relative to bill 1300 since the lateral position of bill 1300 may vary left to right within the transport path 1301.

A set of eighteen (18) master Canadian patterns are stored for each type of  
30 Canadian bill that the system is designed to discriminate, three (3) for each scanhead in both the forward and reverse directions. For example, three patterns are generated by scanning a given genuine Canadian bill in the forward direction with the center



scanhead. One pattern is generated by scanning down the center of the bill along segment  $SC_1$ , a second is generated by scanning along a segment  $SC_2$  initiated 1.5 samples before the beginning of  $SC_1$ , and a third is generated by scanning along a segment  $SC_3$  initiated 1.5 samples after the beginning of  $SC_1$ . The second and third  
5 patterns are generated to compensate for the problems associated with triggering off the edge of a bill as discussed above.

To compensate for possible lateral displacement of bills to be scanned along a direction transverse to the direction of bill movement, the exact lateral location along which each of the above master patterns is generated is chosen after considering the  
10 correlation results achieved when a bill is displaced slightly to the left or to the right of the center of each scanhead, i.e., lines  $L_C$ ,  $S_C$ , and  $R_C$ . For example, in generating a master pattern associated with segment  $SC_1$ , a scan of a genuine bill may be taken down the center of a bill, a second scan may be taken along a segment 0.15" to the right of center (+0.15"), and a third scan may be taken along a segment  
15 0.15" to the left of center (-0.15"). Based on the correlation result achieved, the actual scan location may be adjusted slightly to the right or left so the effect of the lateral displacement of a bill on the correlation results is minimized. Thus, for example, the master pattern associated with a forward scan of a Canadian \$2 bill using the center scanhead 1202 may be taken along a line 0.05" to the right of the  
20 center of the bill.

Furthermore, the above stored master patterns are generated either by scanning both a relatively new crisp genuine bill and an older yellowed genuine bill and averaging the patterns generated from each or, alternatively, by scanning an average looking bill.

25 Master patterns are stored for nine (9) types of Canadian bills, namely, the newer series \$2, \$5, \$10, \$20, \$50, and \$100 bills and the older series \$20, \$50, and \$100 bills. Accordingly, a total of 162 Canadian master patterns are stored (9 types x 18 per type).

FIG. 53 is a flowchart of the threshold test utilized in calling the denomination  
30 of a Canadian bill. When Canadian bills are being discriminated the flowchart of FIG. 53 replaces the flowchart of FIG. 13. The correlation results associated with correlating a scanned pattern to a master pattern of a given type of Canadian bill in a

given scan direction and a given offset in the direction of bill movement from each of the three scanheads are summed. The highest of the resulting 54 summations is designated the #1 correlation and the second highest is preliminarily designated the #2 correlation. The #1 and #2 correlations each have a given bill type associated with them. If the bill type associated with the #2 correlation is merely a different series from, but the same denomination as, the bill type associated with the #1 denomination, the preliminarily designated #2 correlation is substituted with the next highest correlation where the bill denomination is different from the denomination of the bill type associated with the #1 correlation.

10       The threshold test of FIG. 53 begins at step 1302. Step 1304 checks the denomination associated with the #1 correlation. If the denomination associated with the #1 correlation is not a \$50 or \$100, the #1 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1900 at step 1306. If the #1 correlation is less than or equal to 1900, the correlation number is too low to identify the denomination of the bill with certainty.

15       Therefore, step 1308 sets a "no call" bit in a correlation result flag and the system returns to the main program at step 1310. If, however, the #1 correlation is greater than 1900 at step 1306, the system advances to step 1312 which determines whether the #1 correlation is greater than 2000. If the #1 correlation is greater than 2000, the correlation number is sufficiently high that the denomination of the scanned bill can

20       be identified with certainty without any further checking. Consequently, a "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 1314 and the system returns to the main program at step 1310.

      If the #1 correlation is not greater than 2000 at step 1312, step 1316 checks the denomination associated with the #2 correlation. If the denomination associated

25       with the #2 correlation is not a \$50 or \$100, the #2 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1900 at step 1318. If the #2 correlation is less than or equal to 1900, the denomination identified by the #1 correlation is acceptable, and thus the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 1314 and the system returns to the main program at step 1310. If, however, the #2 correlation is greater than 1900 at

30       step 1318, the denomination of the scanned bill cannot be identified with certainty because the #1 and #2 correlations are both above 1900 and, yet, are associated with

different denominations. Accordingly, the "no call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 1308.

If the denomination associated with the #2 correlation is a \$50 or \$100 at step 1316, the #2 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1500 at step 1320. If the #2 correlation is less than or equal to 1500, the denomination identified by the #1 correlation is acceptable, and thus the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 1314 and the system returns to the main program at step 1310. If, however, the #2 correlation is greater than 1500 at step 1320, the denomination of the scanned bill cannot be identified with certainty. As a result, the "no call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 1308.

If the denomination associated with the #1 correlation is a \$50 or \$100 at step 1304, the #1 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1500 at step 1322. If the #1 correlation is less than or equal to 1500, the denomination of the scanned bill cannot be identified with certainty and, therefore, the "no call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 1308. If, however, the #1 correlation at step 1322 is greater than 1500, the system advances to step 1312 which determines whether the #1 correlation is greater than 2000. If the #1 correlation is greater than 2000, the correlation number is sufficiently high that the denomination of the scanned bill can be identified with certainty without any further checking. Consequently, a "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 1314 and the system returns to the main program at step 1310.

If the #1 correlation is not greater than 2000 at step 1312, step 1316 checks the denomination associated with the #2 correlation. If the denomination associated with the #2 correlation is not a \$50 or \$100, the #2 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1900 at step 1318. If the #2 correlation is less than or equal to 1900, the denomination identified by the #1 correlation is acceptable, and thus the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 1314 and the system returns to the main program at step 1310. If, however, the #2 correlation is greater than 1900 at step 1318, the denomination of the scanned bill cannot be identified with certainty. Accordingly, the "no call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 1308.

If the denomination associated with the #2 correlation is a \$50 or \$100 at step 1316, the #2 correlation is compared to a threshold of 1500 at step 1320. If the #2

correlation is less than or equal to 1500, the denomination identified by the #1 correlation is acceptable, and thus the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 1314 and the system returns to the main program at step 1310. If, however, the #2 correlation is greater than 1500 at step 1320, the denomination of the scanned bill cannot be identified with certainty. As a result, the "no call" bit is set in the correlation result flag at step 1308 and the system returns to the main program at step 1310.

Now the use of the triple scanhead arrangement 1200 in scanning and discriminating German currency will be described. When scanning German bills, only the output of the center scanhead 1202 is utilized to generate scanned patterns. A segment similar to segment S of FIG. 4 is scanned over the center of the transport path at a predetermined distance  $D_6$  inboard after the leading edge of a bill is detected. In a preferred embodiment  $D_6$  is 0.25" (0.635 cm). The scanned segment comprises 64 samples as shown in FIGs. 3 and 5. In a preferred embodiment German bills are scanned at a rate of 1000 bills per minute. The lateral location of the scanned segment is fixed relative to the transport path 1216 but may vary left to right relative to bill 1210 since the lateral position of bill 1210 may vary left to right within the transport path 1216.

FIG. 54a illustrates the general areas scanned in generating master 10 DM German patterns. Due to the short length of 10 DM bills in their long dimension relative to the width of the transport path, thirty (30) 10 DM master patterns are stored. A first set of five patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 10 DM bill 1400 in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments all beginning a predetermined distance  $D_6$  inboard of the leading edge of the bill 1400. Each of these five laterally displaced segments is centered about a respective one of lines  $L_1$ - $L_5$ . One such segment  $S10_1$  centered about line  $L_1$  is illustrated in FIG. 54a. Line  $L_1$  is disposed down the center C of the bill 1400. In a preferred embodiment lines  $L_2$ - $L_5$  are disposed in a symmetrical fashion about the center C of the bill 1400. In a preferred embodiment lines  $L_2$  and  $L_3$  are laterally displaced from  $L_1$  by a distance  $D_7$  where  $D_7$  is 0.24" (0.61 cm) and lines  $L_4$  and  $L_5$  are laterally displaced from  $L_1$  by a distance  $D_8$  where  $D_8$  is 0.48" (1.22 cm).

A second set of five patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 10 DM bill 1400 in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments along lines  $L_1$ - $L_5$  all beginning at a second predetermined distance inboard of the leading edge of the bill 1400, the second predetermined distance being less than the predetermined distance  $D_6$ . One such segment  $S10_2$  centered about line  $L_1$  is illustrated in FIG. 54a. In a preferred embodiment the second predetermined distance is such that scanning begins one sample earlier than  $D_6$ , that is about 30 mils before the initiation of the patterns in the first set of five patterns.

A third set of five patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 10 DM bill 1400 in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments along lines  $L_1$ - $L_5$  all beginning at a third predetermined distance inboard of the leading edge of the bill 1400, the third predetermined distance being greater than the predetermined distance  $D_6$ . One such segment  $S10_3$  centered about line  $L_1$  is illustrated in FIG. 54a. In a preferred embodiment the third predetermined distance is such that scanning begins one sample later than  $D_6$ , that is about 30 mils after the initiation of the patterns in the first set of five patterns.

The above three sets of five patterns yield fifteen patterns in the forward direction. Fifteen additional 10 DM master patterns taken in the manner described above but in the reverse direction are also stored.

FIG. 54b illustrates the general areas scanned in generating master 20 DM, 50 DM, and 100 DM German patterns. Due to the lengths of 20 DM, 50 DM, and 100 DM bills in their long dimension being shorter than the width of the transport path, eighteen (18) 20 DM master patterns, eighteen (18) 50 DM master patterns, and eighteen (18) 100 DM master patterns are stored. The 50 DM master patterns and the 100 DM master patterns are taken in the same manner as the 20 DM master patterns except that the 50 DM master patterns and 100 DM master patterns are generated from respective genuine 50 DM bills and 100 DM bills while the 20 DM master patterns are generated from genuine 20 DM bills. Therefore, only the generation of the 20 DM master patterns will be described in detail.

A first set of three patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 20 DM bill 1402 in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments all beginning a predetermined distance  $D_6$  inboard of the leading edge of the bill 1402. Each of

these three laterally displaced segments is centered about a respective one of lines  $L_6$ - $L_8$ . One such segment  $S20_1$  centered about line  $L_6$  is illustrated in FIG. 54b. Line  $L_6$  is disposed down the center  $C$  of the bill 1402. In a preferred embodiment lines  $L_7$ - $L_8$  are disposed in a symmetrical fashion about the center  $C$  of the bill 1402. In a preferred embodiment lines  $L_7$  and  $L_8$  are laterally displaced from  $L_6$  by a distance  $D_9$  where  $D_9$  is 0.30" (0.76 cm) for the 20 DM bill. The value of  $D_9$  is 0.20" (0.51 cm) for the 50 DM bill and 0.10" (0.25 cm) for the 100 DM bill.

A second set of three patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 20 DM bill 1402 in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments along lines  $L_6$ - $L_8$  all beginning at a second predetermined distance inboard of the leading edge of the bill 1402, the second predetermined distance being less than the predetermined distance  $D_6$ . One such segment  $S20_2$  centered about line  $L_6$  is illustrated in FIG. 54b. In a preferred embodiment the second predetermined distance is such that scanning begins one sample earlier than  $D_6$ , that is about 30 mils before the initiation of the patterns in the first set of three patterns.

A third set of three patterns are generated by scanning a genuine 20 DM bill 1402 in the forward direction along laterally displaced segments along lines  $L_6$ - $L_8$  all beginning at a third predetermined distance inboard of the leading edge of the bill 1402, the third predetermined distance being greater than the predetermined distance  $D_6$ . One such segment  $S20_3$  centered about line  $L_6$  is illustrated in FIG. 54b. In a preferred embodiment the third predetermined distance is such that scanning begins one sample later than  $D_6$ , that is about 30 mils after the initiation of the patterns in the first set of three patterns.

The above three sets of three patterns yield nine patterns in the forward direction. Nine additional 20 DM master patterns taken in the manner described above but in the reverse direction are also stored. Furthermore, the above stored master patterns are generated either by scanning both a relatively new crisp genuine bill and an older yellowed genuine bill and averaging the patterns generated from each or, alternatively, by scanning an average looking bill.

This yields a total of 84 German master patterns (30 for 10 DM bills, 18 for 20 DM bills, 18 for 50 DM bills, and 18 for 100 DM bills). To reduce the number of master patterns that must be compared to a given scanned pattern, the narrow

dimension of a scanned bill is measured using photosensors 1212 and 1214. After a given bill has been scanned by the center scanhead 1202, the generated scanned pattern is correlated only against certain ones of above described 84 master patterns based on the size of the narrow dimension of the bill as determined by the photosensors 1212 and 1214. The narrow dimension of each bill is measured independently by photosensors 1212 and 1214 and then averaged to indicate the length of the narrow dimension of a bill. In particular, a first number of encoder pulses occur between the detection of the leading and trailing edges of a bill by the photosensor 1212. Likewise, a second number of encoder pulses occur between the detection of the leading and trailing edges of the bill by the photosensor 1214. These first and second numbers of encoder pulses are averaged to indicate the length of the narrow dimension of the bill in terms of encoder pulses.

The photosensors 1212 and 1214 can also determine the degree of skew of a bill as it passes by the triple scanhead arrangement 1200. By counting the number of encoder pulses between the time when photosensors 1212 and 1214 detect the leading edge of a bill, the degree of skew can be determined in terms of encoder pulses. If no or little skew is measured, a generated scanned pattern is only compared to master patterns associated with genuine bills having the same narrow dimension length. If a relatively large degree of skew is detected, a scanned pattern will be compared with master patterns associated with genuine bills having the next smaller denominational amount than would be indicated by the measured narrow dimension length.

Table 4 indicates which denominational set of master patterns are chosen for comparison to the scanned pattern based on the measured narrow dimension length in terms of encoder pulses and the measured degree of skew in terms of encoder pulses:

**TABLE 4**

Narrow Dimension Length in Encoder Pulses	Degree of Skew in Encoder Pulses	Selected Set of Master Patterns
< 1515	Not applicable	10 DM
$\geq 1515$ and < 1550	$\geq 175$	10 DM
$\geq 1515$ and < 1550	< 175	20 DM
$\geq 1550$ and < 1585	$\geq 300$	10 DM

$\geq 1550$ and $< 1585$	$< 300$	20 DM
$\geq 1585$ and $< 1620$	$\geq 200$	20 DM
$\geq 1585$ and $< 1620$	$< 200$	50 DM
$\geq 1620$ and $< 1655$	$\geq 300$	20 DM
$\geq 1620$ and $< 1655$	$< 300$	50 DM
$\geq 1655$ and $< 1690$	$\geq 150$	50 DM
$\geq 1655$ and $< 1690$	$< 150$	100 DM
$\geq 1690$ and $< 1725$	$\geq 300$	50 DM
$\geq 1690$ and $< 1725$	$< 300$	100 DM
$\geq 1725$	Not applicable	100 DM

FIG. 55 is a flowchart of the threshold test utilized in calling the denomination of a German bill. It should be understood that this threshold test compares the scanned bill pattern only to the set of master patterns selected in accordance with Table 4. Therefore, the selection made in accordance with Table 4 provides a preliminary indication as to the denomination of the scanned bill. The threshold test in FIG. 55, in effect, serves to confirm or overturn the preliminary indication given by Table 4.

The threshold test of FIG. 55 begins at step 1324. Step 1326 checks the narrow dimension length of the scanned bill in terms of encoder pulses. If the narrow dimension length is less than 1515 at step 1326, the preliminary indication is that the denomination of the scanned bill is a 10 DM bill. In order to confirm this preliminary indication, the #1 correlation is compared to 550 at step 1328. If the #1 correlation is greater than 550, the correlation number is sufficiently high to identify the denomination of the bill as a 10 DM bill. Accordingly, a "good call" bit is set in a correlation result flag at step 1330, and the system returns to the main program at step 1332. If, however, the #1 correlation is less than or equal to 550 at step 1328, the preliminary indication that the scanned bill is a 10 DM bill is effectively overturned. The system advances to step 1334 which sets a "no call" bit in the correlation result flag.



If step 1326 determines that the narrow dimension length is greater than or equal to 1515, a correlation threshold of 800 is required to confirm the preliminary denominational indication provided by Table 4. Therefore, if the #1 correlation is greater than 800 at step 1336, the preliminary indication provided by Table 4 is confirmed. To confirm the preliminary indication, the "good call" bit is set in the correlation result flag. If, however, the #1 correlation is less than or equal to 800 at step 1336, the preliminary indication is rejected and the "no call" bit in the correlation result flag is set at step 1334. The system then returns to the main program at step 1332.

According to a preferred embodiment, the operator of the above described currency discriminating device designed to accommodate both Canadian and German currency bills pre-declares whether Canadian or German bills are to be discriminated. By depressing an appropriate key on the keypad 62 (FIG. 59), the display 63 will scroll through five different modes: a count mode, a Canadian stranger mode, a Canadian mixed mode, a German stranger mode, and a German mixed mode. In the count mode, the device acts like a simply bill counter (counting the number of bills in a stack but not discriminating them by denomination). Canadian stranger mode is similar to the stranger mode described below in connection with FIG. 59 but bills are scanned as described above in connection with FIG. 52 and scanned patterns are correlated against Canadian master patterns. Likewise, Canadian mixed mode is similar to the mixed mode described below in connection with FIG. 59 but bills are scanned as described above in connection with FIG. 52 and scanned patterns are correlated against Canadian master patterns. Likewise German stranger and German mixed mode are similar to the stranger and mixed modes described below in connection with FIG. 59 but bills are scanned as described above in connection with the scanning of German bills and scanned patterns are correlated against German master patterns.

FIG. 56 is a functional block diagram illustrating another preferred embodiment of a currency discriminator system 1662 according to the present invention. The discriminator system 1662 comprises an input receptacle 1664 for receiving a stack of currency bills. A transport mechanism (as represented by arrows A and B) transports the bills in the input receptacle passed an authenticating and

discriminating unit 1666 to an output receptacle 1668 where the bills are re-stacked such that each bill is stacked on top of or behind the previous bill so that the most recent bill is the top-most or rear-most bill. The authenticating and discriminating unit scans and determines the denomination of each passing bill. Any variety of discriminating techniques may be used. For example, the discriminating method disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,295,196 (incorporated herein in its entirety) may be employed to optically scan each bill. Depending on the characteristics of the discriminating unit employed, the discriminator may be able to recognize bills only if fed face up or face down, regardless of whether fed face up or face down, only if fed in a forward orientation or reverse orientation, regardless of whether fed in a forward or reverse orientation, or some combination thereof. Additionally, the discriminating unit may be able to scan only one side or both sides of a bill. In addition to determining the denomination of each scanned bill, the authenticating and discriminating unit 1666 may additionally include various authenticating tests such as an ultraviolet authentication test as disclosed in U.S. patent application Serial No. 08/317,349 filed on October 4, 1994 for a "Method and Apparatus for Authenticating Documents Including Currency."

Signals from the authenticating and discriminating unit 1666 are sent to a signal processor such as a central processor unit ("CPU") 1670. The CPU 1670 records of results of the authenticating and discriminating tests in a memory 1672. When the authenticating and discriminating unit 1666 is able to confirm the genuineness and denomination of a bill, the value of the bill is added to a total value counter in memory 1672 that keeps track of the total value of the stack of bills that were inserted in the input receptacle 1664 and scanned by the authenticating and discriminating unit 1666. Additionally, depending on the mode of operation of the discriminator system 1662, counters associated with one or more denominations are maintained in the memory 1672. For example, a \$1 counter may be maintained to record how many \$1 bills were scanned by the authenticating and discriminating unit 1666. Likewise, a \$5 counter may be maintained to record how many \$5 bills were scanned, and so on. In an operating mode where individual denomination counters are maintained, the total value of the scanned bills may be determined without maintaining a separate total value counter. The total value of the scanned bills and/or

the number of each individual denomination may be displayed on a display 1674 such as a monitor or LCD display.

As discussed above, a discriminating unit such as the authenticating and discriminating unit 1666 may not be able to identify the denomination of one or more bills in the stack of bills loaded into the input receptacle 1664. For example, if a bill is excessively worn or soiled or if the bill is torn a discriminating unit may not be able to identify the bill. Furthermore, some known discrimination methods do not have a high discrimination efficiency and thus are unable to identify bills which vary even somewhat from an "ideal" bill condition or which are even somewhat displaced by the transport mechanism relative to the scanning mechanism used to discriminate bills. Accordingly, such poorer performing discriminating units may yield a relatively large number of bills which are not identified. Alternatively, some discriminating units may be capable of identifying bills only when they are fed in a predetermined manner. For example, some discriminators may require a bill to be faced in a predetermined manner. Accordingly, when a bill is fed face down passed a discriminating unit which can only identify bills fed face up, the discriminating unit can not identify the bill. Likewise, other discriminators require a specific edge of a bill to be fed first, for example, the top edge of a bill. Accordingly, bills which are not fed in the forward direction, that is, those that are fed in the reverse direction, are not identified by such a discriminating unit.

According to a preferred embodiment, the discriminator system 1662 is designed so that when the authenticating and discriminating unit is unable to identify a bill, the transport mechanism is stopped so that the unidentified bill is the last bill transported to the output receptacle. After the transport mechanism stops, the unidentified bill is then, for example, positioned at the top of or at the rear of the stack of bills in the output receptacle 1668. The output receptacle 1668 is preferably positioned within the discriminator system 1662 so that the operator may conveniently see the flagged bill and/or remove it for closer inspection. Accordingly, the operator is able to easily see the bill which has not been identified by the authenticating and discriminating unit 1666. The operator may then either visually inspect the flagged bill while it is resting on the top of or at the rear of the stack, or alternatively, the operator may chose to remove the bill from the output receptacle in order to examine

the flagged bill more closely. The discriminator system 1662 may be designed to continue operation automatically when a flagged bill is removed from the output receptacle or, according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, may be designed to require a selection element to be depressed. Upon examination of a  
5 flagged bill by the operator, it may be found that the flagged bill is genuine even though it was not identified by the discriminating unit. However, because the bill was not identified, the total value and/or denomination counters in the memory 1672 will not reflect its value. According to one embodiment, such an unidentified bill is removed from the output stack and either re-fed through the discriminator or set  
10 aside. In the latter case, any genuine set aside bills are counted by hand.

In prior discriminators, unidentified discriminators were routed to a separate reject receptacle. In such systems, an unidentified genuine bill would have to be removed from a reject receptacle and re-fed through the discriminator or the stack of rejected bills would have to be counted by hand and the results separately recorded.  
15 Furthermore, because re-fed bills have gone unidentified once, they are more likely to go unidentified again and ultimately may have to be counted by hand. However, as discussed above, such procedures may increase the chance for human error or at least lower the efficiency of the discriminator and the operator.

In order to avoid problems associated with re-feeding bills, counting bills by  
20 hand, and adding together separate totals, according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention a number of selection elements associated with individual denominations are provided. In FIG. 56, these selection elements are in the form of keys or buttons of a keypad 1676 or 62. Other types of selection elements such as switches or displayed keys in a touch-screen environment may be employed. The  
25 operation of the selection elements will be described in more detail in connection with FIG. 59 but briefly when an operator determines that a flagged bill is acceptable, the operator may simply depress the selection element associated with the denomination of the flagged bill and the corresponding denomination counter and/or the total value counter are appropriately incremented and the discriminator system 1662 or 10  
30 resumes operating again. As discussed above, a bill may be flagged for any number of reasons including the bill being a no call or suspect bill. In non-automatic restart discriminators, where an operator has removed a genuine flagged bill from the output

receptacle for closer examination, the bill is first replaced into the output receptacle before a corresponding selection element is chosen. When an operator determines that a flagged bill is not acceptable, the operator may remove the unacceptable flagged bill from the output receptacle without replacement and depress a continuation key on the keypad 1676 or 62. When the continuation key is selected the denomination counters and the total value counter are not affected and the discriminator system 1662 or 10 will resume operating again. In automatic restart discriminators, the removal of a bill from the output receptacle is treated as an indication that the bill is unacceptable and the discriminator automatically resumes operation without affecting the denomination counters and/or total value counters. An advantage of the above described procedure is that appropriate counters are incremented and the discriminator is restarted with the touch of a single key, greatly simplifying the operation of the discriminator system 1662 or 10 while reducing the opportunities for human error.

Turning now to FIG. 57, there is shown a functional block diagram illustrating another preferred embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention. The discriminator system 1680 comprises an input receptacle 1682 for receiving a stack of currency bills. A transport mechanism (as represented by arrow C) transports the bills in the input receptacle, one at a time, passed an authenticating and discriminating unit 1684. Based on the results of the authenticating and discriminating unit 1684, a bill is either transported to one of a plurality of output receptacles 1686 (arrow D), to a reject receptacle 1688 (arrow E), or to an operator inspection station 1690 (arrow F). When a bill is determined to be genuine and its denomination has been identified, the bill is transported to an output receptacle associated with its denomination. For example, the discriminator system 1680 may comprise seven output receptacles 1686, one associated with each of seven U.S. denominations, i.e., \$1, \$2, \$5, \$10, \$20, \$50, and \$100. The transport mechanism directs (arrow D) the identified bill to the corresponding output receptacle. Alternatively, where the authenticating and discriminating unit determines that a bill is a fake, the bill is immediately routed (arrow E) to the reject receptacle 1688. Finally, if a bill is not determined to be fake but for some reason the authenticating and discriminating unit 1684 is not able to

identify the denomination of the bill, the flagged bill is routed (arrow F) to an inspection station and the discriminator system 1680 stops operating. The inspection station is preferably positioned within the discriminator system 1680 so that the operator may conveniently see the flagged bill and/or remove it for closer inspection.

5 If the operator determines that the bill is acceptable, the operator returns the bill to the inspection station if it was removed and selects a selection element (not shown) corresponding to the denomination of the flagged bill. Appropriate counters (not shown) are incremented, the discriminator system 1680 resumes operation, and the flagged bill is routed (arrow G) to the output receptacle associated with the chosen

10 selection element. On the other hand, if the operator determines that the flagged bill is unacceptable, the operator returns the bill to the inspection station if it was removed and selects a continuation element (not shown). The discriminator system 1680 resumes operation, and the flagged bill is routed (arrow H) to the reject receptacle 1688 without incrementing the counters associated with the various

15 denomination and/or the total value counters. Alternatively, the discriminator system 1680 may permit the operator to place any unacceptable unidentified bills aside or into the reject receptacle by hand. While transport paths D and G and paths E and H are illustrated as separate paths, paths D and G and paths E and H, respectively, may be the same path so that all bills proceeding to either one of the output receptacles

20 1686 or the reject receptacle 1688, respectively, are routed through the inspection station 1690.

Turning now to FIG. 58, there is shown a functional block diagram illustrating another preferred embodiment of a document authenticator and discriminator according to the present invention. The discriminator system 1692

25 comprises an input receptacle 1694 for receiving a stack of currency bills. A transport mechanism (as represented by arrow I) transports the bills in the input receptacle, one at a time, passed an authenticating and discriminating unit 1696. Based on the results of the authenticating and discriminating unit 1684, a bill is either transported to a single output receptacle 1698 (arrow J) or to an operator inspection

30 station 1699 (arrow K). When a bill is determined to be genuine and its denomination has been identified, the bill is transported to the single output receptacle. Alternatively, where the authenticating and discriminating unit determines

that a bill is a fake or for some reason the authenticating and discriminating unit 1684 is not able to identify the denomination of the bill, the flagged bill is routed (arrow K) to an inspection station and the discriminator system 1692 stops operating. The inspection station is preferably positioned within the discriminator system 1692 so that the operator may conveniently see the flagged bill and/or remove it for closer inspection. Where a bill has been positively determined to be a fake by the authenticating and discriminating unit 1696, an appropriate indication, for example, via a message in a display or the illumination of a light, can be given to the operator as to the lack of genuineness of the bill. The operator may then remove the bill without replacement from the inspection station 1699 and select a continuation element. Where a bill has not been positively identified as a fake nor has had its denomination identified and where the operator determines that the bill is acceptable, the operator returns the bill to the inspection station if it was removed and selects a selection element (not shown) corresponding to the denomination of the flagged bill. Appropriate counters (not shown) are incremented, the discriminator system 1680 resumes operation, and the flagged bill is routed (arrow L) to the single output receptacle 1698. On the other hand, if the operator determines that the flagged bill is unacceptable, the operator removes the bill without replacement from the inspection station and selects a continuation element (not shown). The discriminator system 1692 resumes operation without incrementing the counters associated with the various denomination and/or the total value counters. While transport paths J and L are illustrated as separate paths, they may be the same path so that all bills proceeding to the single output receptacle 1698 are routed through the inspection station 1699.

The operation of the selection elements will now be described in more detail in conjunction with FIG. 59 which is a front view of a control panel 61 of a preferred embodiment of the present invention. The control panel 61 comprises a keypad 62 and a display section 63. The keypad 62 comprises a plurality of keys including seven denomination selection elements 64a-64g, each associated with one of seven U.S. currency denominations, i.e., \$1, \$2, \$5, \$10, \$20, \$50, and \$100. The \$1 denomination selection key 64a also serves as a mode selection key. The keypad 62 also comprises a "Continuation" selection element 65. Various information such as instructions, mode selection information, authentication and discrimination

information, individual denomination counter values, and total batch counter value are communicated to the operator via an LCD 66 in the display section 63. A discriminator according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention has a number of operating modes including a mixed mode, a stranger mode, a sort mode, a face mode, and a forward/reverse orientation mode. The operation of a discriminator having the denomination selection elements 64a-64g and the continuation element 65 will now be discussed in connection with several operating modes.

#### (A) Mixed Mode

Mixed mode is designed to accept a stack of bills of mixed denomination, total the aggregate value of all the bills in the stack and display the aggregate value in the display 63. Information regarding the number of bills of each individual denomination in a stack may also be stored in denomination counters. When an otherwise acceptable bill remains unidentified after passing through the authenticating and discriminating unit, operation of the discriminator may be resumed and the corresponding denomination counter and/or the aggregate value counter may be appropriately incremented by selecting the denomination selection key 64a-64g associated with the denomination of the unidentified bill. For example, if the discriminator system 62 of FIG. 56 or 10 of FIG. 1 stops operation with an otherwise acceptable \$5 bill being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle, the operator may simply select key 64b. When key 64b is depressed, the operation of the discriminator is resumed and the \$5 denomination counter is incremented and/or the aggregate value counter is incremented by \$5. Furthermore, in the discriminator systems 1680 of FIG. 57 and 1692 of FIG. 58, the flagged bill may be routed from the inspection station to an appropriate output receptacle. Otherwise, if the operator determines the flagged bill is unacceptable, the bill may be removed from the output receptacle of FIGs. 1 or 56 or the inspection station of FIGs. 8 and 9 (or in the system 1680 of FIG. 57, the flagged bill may be routed to the reject receptacle 1688). The continuation key 65 is depressed after the unacceptable bill is removed, and the discriminator resumes operation without affecting the total value counter and/or the individual denomination counters.



(B) Stranger Mode

Stranger mode is designed to accommodate a stack of bills all having the same denomination, such as a stack of \$10 bills. In such a mode, when a stack of bills is processed by the discriminator the denomination of the first bill in the stack is determined and subsequent bills are flagged if they are not of the same denomination. Alternatively, the discriminator may be designed to permit the operator to designate the denomination against which bills will be evaluated with those of a different denomination being flagged. Assuming the first bill in a stack determines the relevant denomination and assuming the first bill is a \$10 bill, then provided all the bills in the stack are \$10 bills, the display 63 will indicate the aggregate value of the bills in the stack and/or the number of \$10 bills in the stack. However, if a bill having a denomination other than \$10 is included in the stack, the discriminator will stop operating with the non-\$10 bill or "stranger bill" being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle in the case of the discriminator system 62 of FIG. 56 or 10 of FIG. 1 (or the inspection station of FIGs. 8 and 9). The stranger bill may then be removed from the output receptacle and the discriminator is started again either automatically or by depression of the "Continuation" key 65 depending on the set up of the discriminator system. An unidentified but otherwise acceptable \$10 bill may be handled in a manner similar to that described above in connection with the mixed mode, e.g., by depressing the \$10 denomination selection element 64c, or alternatively, the unidentified but otherwise acceptable \$10 bill may be removed from the output receptacle and placed into the input hopper to be re-scanned. Upon the completion of processing the entire stack, the display 63 will indicate the aggregate value of the \$10 bills in the stack and/or the number of \$10 bills in the stack. All bills having a denomination other than \$10 will have been set aside and will not be included in the totals. Alternatively, these stranger bills can be included in the totals via operator selection choices. For example, if a \$5 stranger bill is detected and flagged in a stack of \$10 bills, the operator may be prompted via the display as to whether the \$5 bill should be incorporated into the running totals. If the operator responds positively, the \$5 bill is incorporated into appropriate running totals, otherwise it is not. Alternatively, a set-up selection may be chosen whereby all stranger bills are automatically incorporated into appropriate running totals.

(C) Sort Mode

Sort mode is designed to accommodate a stack of bills wherein the bills are separated by denomination. For example, all the \$1 bills may be placed at the beginning of the stack, followed by all the \$5 bills, followed by all the \$10 bills, etc.

5 The operation of the sort mode is similar to that of the stranger mode except that after stopping upon the detection of a different denomination bill, the discriminator is designed to resume operation upon removal of all bills from the output receptacle. Returning to the above example, assuming the first bill in a stack determines the relevant denomination and assuming the first bill is a \$1 bill, then the discriminator

10 processes the bills in the stack until the first non-\$1 bill is detected, which in this example is the first \$5 bill. At that point, the discriminator will stop operating with the first \$5 being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle. The display 63 may be designed to indicate the aggregate value of the preceding \$1 bills processed and/or the number of preceding \$1 bills. The scanned \$1 bills and the first \$5 bill are

15 removed from the output receptacle and placed in separate \$1 and \$5 bill stacks. The discriminator will start again automatically and subsequent bills will be assessed relative to being \$5 bills. The discriminator continues processing bills until the first \$10 bill is encountered. The above procedure is repeated and the discriminator resumes operation until encountering the first bill which is not a \$10 bill, and so on.

20 Upon the completion of processing the entire stack, the display 63 will indicate the aggregate value of all the bills in the stack and/or the number of bills of each denomination in the stack. This mode permits the operator to separate a stack of bills having multiple denominations into separate stacks according to denomination.

(D) Face Mode

25 Face mode is designed to accommodate a stack of bills all faced in the same direction, e.g., all placed in the input hopper face up (that is the portrait or black side up for U.S. bills) and to detect any bills facing the opposite direction. In such a mode, when a stack of bills is processed by the discriminator, the face orientation of the first bill in the stack is determined and subsequent bills are flagged if they do not

30 have the same face orientation. Alternatively, the discriminator may be designed to permit designation of the face orientation to which bills will be evaluated with those

having a different face orientation being flagged. Assuming the first bill in a stack determines the relevant face orientation and assuming the first bill is face up, then provided all the bills in the stack are face up, the display 63 will indicate the aggregate value of the bills in the stack and/or the number of bills of each denomination in the stack. However, if a bill faced in the opposite direction (i.e., face down in this example) is included in the stack, the discriminator will stop operating with the reverse-faced bill being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle. The reverse-faced bill then may be removed from the output receptacle. In automatic re-start embodiments, the removal of the reverse-faced bill causes the discriminator to continue operating. The removed bill may then be placed into the input receptacle with the proper face orientation. Alternatively, in non-automatic re-start embodiments, the reverse-faced bill may be either placed into the input receptacle with the proper face orientation and the continuation key 65 depressed, or placed back into the output receptacle with the proper face orientation. Depending on the set up of the discriminator when a bill is placed back into the output receptacle with the proper face orientation, the denomination selection key associated with the reverse-faced bill may be selected, whereby the associated denomination counter and/or aggregate value counter are appropriately incremented and the discriminator resumes operation. Alternatively, in embodiments wherein the discriminator is capable of determining denomination regardless of face orientation, the continuation key 65 or a third key may be depressed whereby the discriminator resumes operation and the appropriate denomination counter and/or total value counter is incremented in accordance with the denomination identified by the discriminating unit. In discriminators that require a specific face orientation, any reverse-faced bills will be unidentified bills. In discriminators that can accept a bill regardless of face orientation, reverse-faced bills may be properly identified. The later type of discriminator may have a discriminating unit with a scanhead on each side of the transport path. Examples of such dual-sided discriminators are disclosed above (see e.g., FIGs. 2a, 6c, 20a, 26, and 42). The ability to detect and correct for reverse-faced bills is important as the Federal Reserve requires currency it receives to be faced in the same direction.

In a multi-output receptacle discriminator, the face mode may be used to route all bills facing upward to one output receptacle and all bills facing downward to another output receptacle. In single-sided discriminators, reverse-faced bills may be routed to an inspection station such as 1690 of FIG. 57 for manual turnover by the operator and the unidentified reverse-faced bills may then be passed by the discriminator again. In dual-sided discriminators, identified reverse-faced bills may be routed directly to an appropriate output receptacle. For example, in dual-sided discriminators bills may be sorted both by face orientation and by denomination, e.g., face up \$1 bills into pocket #1, face down \$1 bills into pocket #2, face up \$5 bills into pocket #3, and so on or simply by denomination, regardless of face orientation, e.g., all \$1 bills into pocket #1 regardless of face orientation, all \$2 bills into pocket #2, etc.

#### (E) Forward/Reverse Orientation Mode

Forward/Reverse Orientation mode ("Orientation" mode) is designed to accommodate a stack of bills all oriented in a predetermined forward or reverse orientation direction. For example in a discriminator that feeds bills along their narrow dimension, the forward direction may be defined as the fed direction whereby the top edge of a bill is fed first and conversely for the reverse direction. In a discriminator that feeds bills along their long dimension, the forward direction may be defined as the fed direction whereby the left edge of a bill is fed first and conversely for the reverse direction. In such a mode, when a stack of bills is processed by the discriminator, the forward/reverse orientation of the first bill in the stack is determined and subsequent bills are flagged if they do not have the same forward/reverse orientation. Alternatively, the discriminator may be designed to permit the operator to designate the forward/reverse orientation against which bills will be evaluated with those having a different forward/reverse orientation being flagged. Assuming the first bill in a stack determines the relevant forward/reverse orientation and assuming the first bill is fed in the forward direction, then provided all the bills in the stack are also fed in the forward direction, the display 63 will indicate the aggregate value of the bills in the stack and/or the number of bills of each denomination in the stack. However, if a bill having the opposite

forward/reverse orientation is included in the stack, the discriminator will stop operating with the opposite forward/reverse oriented bill being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle. The opposite forward/reverse oriented bill then may be removed from the output receptacle. In automatic re-start embodiments, the removal of the opposite forward/reverse oriented bill causes the discriminator to continue operating. The removed bill may then be placed into the input receptacle with the proper face orientation. Alternatively, in non-automatic re-start embodiments, the opposite forward/reverse oriented bill may be either placed into the input receptacle with the proper forward/reverse orientation and the continuation key 65 depressed, or placed back into the output receptacle with the proper forward/reverse orientation. Depending on the set up of the discriminator when a bill is placed back into the output receptacle with the proper forward/reverse orientation, the denomination selection key associated with the opposite forward/reverse oriented bill may be selected, whereby the associated denomination counter and/or aggregate value counter are appropriately incremented and the discriminator resumes operation. Alternatively, in embodiments wherein the discriminator is capable of determining denomination regardless of forward/reverse orientation, the continuation key 65 or a the third key may be depressed whereby the discriminator resumes operation and the appropriate denomination counter and/or total value counter is incremented in accordance with the denomination identified by the discriminating unit. In single-direction discriminators, any reverse-oriented bills will be unidentified bills. In dual-direction discriminators, reverse-oriented bills may be properly identified by the discriminating unit. An example of a dual-direction discriminating system is described above connection with FIGs. 1-7b and in United States Pat. No. 5,295,196. The ability to detect and correct for reverse-oriented bills is important as the Federal Reserve may soon require currency it receives to be oriented in the same forward/reverse direction.

In a multi-output receptacle discriminator, the orientation mode may be used to route all bills oriented in the forward direction to one output receptacle and all bills oriented in the reverse direction to another output receptacle. In single-direction discriminators, reverse-oriented bills may be routed to an inspection station such as 1690 of FIG. 57 for manual turnover by the operator and the unidentified reverse-

oriented bills may then be passed by the discriminator again. In discriminators capable of identifying bills fed in both forward and reverse directions ("dual-direction discriminators"), identified reverse-oriented bills may be routed directly to an appropriate output receptacle. For example, in dual-direction discriminators bills may be sorted both by forward/reverse orientation and by denomination, e.g., forward \$1 bills into pocket #1, reverse \$1 bills into pocket #2, forward \$5 bills into pocket #3, and so on or simply by denomination, regardless of forward/reverse orientation, e.g., all \$1 bills into pocket #1 regardless of forward/reverse orientation, all \$2 bills into pocket #2, etc.

#### 10           Suspect Mode

In addition to the above modes, a suspect mode may be activated in connection with these modes whereby one or more authentication tests may be performed on the bills in a stack. When a bill fails an authentication test, the discriminator will stop with the failing or suspect bill being the last bill transported to the output receptacle. The suspect bill then may be removed from the output receptacle and set aside.

Likewise, one or more of the above described modes may be activated at the same time. For example, the face mode and the forward/reverse orientation mode may be activated at the same time. In such a case, bills that are either reverse-faced or opposite forward/reverse oriented will be flagged.

According to a preferred embodiment, when a bill is flagged, for example, by stopping the transport motor with the flagged bill being the last bill deposited in the output receptacle, the discriminating device indicates to the operator when the bill was flagged. This indication may be accomplished by, for example, lighting an appropriate light, generating an appropriate sound, and/or displaying an appropriate message in the display section 63 (FIG. 59). Such indication might include, for example, "no call", "stranger", "failed magnetic test", "failed UV test", "no security thread", etc.

Referring now to FIGs. 60a-60c, there is shown a side view of a preferred embodiment of a document authenticating system according to the present invention, a top view of the preferred embodiment of FIG. 60a along the direction 60b, and a

top view of the preferred embodiment of FIG. 60a along the direction 60c, respectively. An ultraviolet ("UV") light source 2102 illuminates a document 2104. Depending upon the characteristics of the document, ultraviolet light may be reflected off the document and/or fluorescent light may be emitted from the document. A  
5 detection system 2106 is positioned so as to receive any light reflected or emitted toward it but not to receive any UV light directly from the light source 2102. The detection system 2106 comprises a UV sensor 2108, a fluorescence sensor 2110, filters, and a plastic housing. The light source 2102 and the detection system 2106 are both mounted to a printed circuit board 2112. The document 2104 is transported  
10 in the direction indicated by arrow A by a transport system (not shown). The document is transported over a transport plate 2114 which has a rectangular opening 2116 in it to permit passage of light to and from the document. In a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the rectangular opening 2116 is 1.375 inches (3.493 cm) by 0.375 inches (0.953 cm). To minimize dust accumulation onto the  
15 light source 2102 and the detection system 2106 and to prevent document jams, the opening 2116 is covered with a transparent UV transmitting acrylic window 2118. To further reduce dust accumulation, the UV light source 2102 and the detection system 2106 are completely enclosed within a housing (not shown) comprising the transport plate 2114.

20 Referring now to FIG. 61, there is shown a functional block diagram illustrating a preferred embodiment of a document authenticating system according to the present invention. FIG. 61 shows an UV sensor 2202, a fluorescence sensor 2204, and filters 2206, 2208 of a detection system such as the detection system 2106 of FIG. 60. Light from the document passes through the filters 2206, 2208 before  
25 striking the sensors 2202, 2204, respectively. An ultraviolet filter 2206 filters out visible light and permits UV light to be transmitted and hence to strike UV sensor 2202. Similarly, a visible light filter 2208 filters out UV light and permits visible light to be transmitted and hence to strike fluorescence sensor 2204. Accordingly, UV light, which has a wavelength below 400 nm, is prevented from striking the  
30 fluorescence sensor 2204 and visible light, which has a wavelength greater than 400 nm, is prevented from striking the UV sensor 2202. In a preferred embodiment the UV filter 2206 transmits light having a wavelength between about 260 nm and about

380 nm and has a peak transmittance at 360 nm. In a preferred embodiment, the visible light filter 2208 is a blue filter and preferably transmits light having a wavelength between about 415 nm and about 620 nm and has a peak transmittance at 450 nm. The above preferred blue filter comprises a combination of a blue  
5 component filter and a yellow component filter. The blue component filter transmits light having a wavelength between about 320 nm and about 620 nm and has a peak transmittance at 450 nm. The yellow component filter transmits light having a wavelength between about 415 nm and about 2800 nm. Examples of suitable filters  
10 are UG1 (UV filter), BG23 (blue bandpass filter), and GG420 (yellow longpass filter), all manufactured by Schott. In a preferred embodiment the filters are about 8 mm in diameter and about 1.5 mm thick.

The UV sensor 2202 outputs an analog signal proportional to the amount of light incident thereon and this signal is amplified by amplifier 2210 and fed to a microcontroller 2212. Similarly, the fluorescence sensor 2204 outputs an analog  
15 signal proportional to the amount of light incident thereon and this signal is amplified by amplifier 2214 and fed to a microcontroller 2212. Analog-to-digital converters 2216 within the microcontroller 2212 convert the signals from the amplifiers 2210, 2214 to digital and these digital signals are processed by the software of the microcontroller 2212. The UV sensor 2202 may be, for example, an ultraviolet  
20 enhanced photodiode sensitive to light having a wavelength of about 360 nm and the fluorescence sensor 2204 may be a blue enhanced photodiode sensitive to light having a wavelength of about 450 nm. Such photodiodes are available from, for example, Advanced Photonix, Inc., Massachusetts. The microcontroller 2212 may be, for example, a Motorola 68HC16.

25 The exact characteristics of the sensors 2202, 2204 and the filters 2206, 2208 including the wavelength transmittance ranges of the above filters are not as critical to the present invention as the prevention of the fluorescence sensor from generating an output signal in response to ultraviolet light and the ultraviolet sensor from  
generating an output signal in response to visible light. For example, instead of, or  
30 in addition to, filters, a authentication system according to the present invention may employ an ultraviolet sensor which is not responsive to light having a wavelength



longer than 400 nm and/or a fluorescence sensor which is not responsive to light having a wavelength shorter than 400 nm.

Calibration potentiometers 2218, 2220 permit the gains of amplifiers 2210, 2214 to be adjusted to appropriate levels. Calibration may be performed by positioning a piece of white fluorescent paper on the transport plate 2114 so that it completely covers the rectangular opening 2116 of FIG. 60. The potentiometers 2218, 2220 may then be adjusted so that the output of the amplifiers 2210, 2214 is 5 volts.

The implementation of the preferred embodiment of a document authenticating system according to the present invention as illustrated in FIG. 61 with respect to the authentication of U.S. currency will now be described. As discussed above, it has been determined that genuine United States currency reflects a high level of ultraviolet light and does not fluoresce under ultraviolet illumination. It has also been determined that under ultraviolet illumination counterfeit United States currency exhibits one of the four sets of characteristics listed below:

- 1) Reflects a low level of ultraviolet light and fluoresces;
- 2) Reflects a low level of ultraviolet light and does not fluoresce;
- 3) Reflects a high level of ultraviolet light and fluoresces;
- 4) Reflects a high level of ultraviolet light and does not fluoresce.

Counterfeit bills in categories (1) and (2) may be detected by a currency authenticator employing an ultraviolet light reflection test according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention. Counterfeit bills in category (3) may be detected by a currency authenticator employing both an ultraviolet reflection test and a fluorescence test according to another preferred embodiment of the present invention. Only counterfeits in category (4) are not detected by the authenticating methods of the present invention.

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, fluorescence is determined by any signal that is above the noise floor. Thus, the amplified fluorescent sensor signal 2222 will be approximately 0 volts for genuine U.S. currency and will vary between approximately 0 and 5 volts for counterfeit bills depending upon their fluorescent characteristics. Accordingly, an authenticating

system according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention will reject bills when signal 2222 exceeds approximately 0 volts.

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, a high level of reflected UV light ("high UV") is indicated when the amplified UV sensor signal 2224 is above a predetermined threshold. The high/low UV threshold is a function of lamp intensity and reflectance. Lamp intensity can degrade by as much as 50% over the life of the lamp and can be further attenuated by dust accumulation on the lamp and the sensors. The problem of dust accumulation is mitigated by enclosing the lamp and sensors in a housing as discussed above. An authenticating system according to a preferred embodiment of the present invention tracks the intensity of the UV light source and readjusts the high/low threshold accordingly. The degradation of the UV light source may be compensated for by periodically feeding a genuine bill into the system, sampling the output of the UV sensor, and adjusting the threshold accordingly. Alternatively, degradation may be compensated for by periodically sampling the output of the UV sensor when no bill is present in the rectangular opening 2116 of the transport plate 2114. It is noted that a certain amount of UV light is always reflected off the acrylic window 2118. By periodically sampling the output of the UV sensor when no bill is present, the system can compensate for light source degradation. Furthermore, such sampling could also be used to indicate to the operator of the system when the ultraviolet light source has burned out or otherwise requires replacement. This may be accomplished, for example, by means of a display reading or an illuminated light emitting diode ("LED"). The amplified ultraviolet sensor signal 2224 will initially vary between 1.0 and 5.0 volts depending upon the UV reflectance characteristics of the document being scanned and will slowly drift downward as the light source degrades. In an alternative preferred embodiment to a preferred embodiment wherein the threshold level is adjusted as the light source degrades, the sampling of the UV sensor output may be used to adjust the gain of the amplifier 2210 thereby maintaining the output of the amplifier 2210 at its initial levels.

It has been found that the voltage ratio between counterfeit and genuine U.S. bills varies from a discernable 2-to-1 ratio to a non-discernable ratio. According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention a 2-to-1 ratio is used to discriminate

between genuine and counterfeit bills. For example, if a genuine U.S. bill generates an amplified UV output sensor signal 2224 of 4.0 volts, documents generating an amplified UV output sensor signal 2224 of 2.0 volts or less will be rejected as counterfeit. As described above, this threshold of 2.0 volts may either be lowered as the light source degrades or the gain of the amplifier 2210 may be adjusted so that 2.0 volts remains an appropriate threshold value.

According to a preferred embodiment of the present invention, the determination of whether the level of UV reflected off a document is high or low is made by sampling the output of the UV sensor at a number of intervals, averaging the readings, and comparing the average level with the predetermined high/low threshold. Alternatively, a comparison may be made by measuring the amount of UV light reflected at a number of locations on the bill and comparing these measurements with those obtained from genuine bills. Alternatively, the output of one or more UV sensors may be processed to generate one or more patterns of reflected UV light and these patterns may be compared to the patterns generated by genuine bills. Such a pattern generation and comparison technique may be performed by modifying an optical pattern technique such as that disclosed in United States Pat. No. 5,295,196 incorporated herein by reference in its entirety or in United States patent application Serial No. 08/287,882 filed August 9, 1994 for a "Method and Apparatus for Document Identification," incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

In a similar manner, the presence of fluorescence may be performed by sampling the output of the fluorescence sensor at a number of intervals. However, in a preferred embodiment, a bill is rejected as counterfeit U.S. currency if any of the sampled outputs rise above the noise floor. However, the alternative methods discussed above with respect to processing the signal or signals of a UV sensor or sensors may also be employed, especially with respect to currencies of other countries or other types of documents which may employ as security features certain locations or patterns of fluorescent materials.

A currency authenticating system according to the present invention may be provided with means, such as a display, to indicate to the operator the reasons why a document has been rejected, e.g., messages such as "UV FAILURE" or

"FLUORESCENCE FAILURE." A currency authenticating system according to the present invention may also permit the operator to selectively choose to activate or deactivate either the UV reflection test or the fluorescence test or both. A currency authenticating system according to the present invention may also be provided with

5 means for adjusting the sensitivities of the UV reflection and/or fluorescence test, for example, by adjusting the respective thresholds. For example, in the case of U.S. currency, a system according to the present invention may permit the high/low threshold to be adjusted, for example, either in absolute voltage terms or in genuine/suspect ratio terms.

**What we claim is:**

1. An apparatus for currency discrimination, comprising;  
first and second stationary scanheads, disposed on opposite sides of a bill  
transport path, for scanning respective first and second opposing surfaces of each bill  
5 of a plurality of bills traveling downstream along said bill transport path and for  
producing output signals associated with said respective first and second surfaces of  
each bill, said bills traveling between said scanheads in the direction of a  
predetermined dimension of said bills at a rate in excess of about 800 bills per  
minute, each scanned bill having a primary characteristic pattern on one of said first  
10 and second surfaces and a secondary characteristic pattern on the other of said first  
and second surfaces;  
a memory for storing master primary characteristic patterns of a plurality of  
denominations of genuine bills;  
sampling means for sampling said output signals associated with said  
15 respective first and second opposing surfaces of each scanned bill; and  
signal processing means for
  - (1) determining which surface of said first and second opposing  
surfaces of each scanned bill includes said primary  
characteristic pattern in response to said first and second  
20 scanheads scanning portions of said first and second opposing  
surfaces of each bill, and
  - (2) in response to determining which surface of said first and  
second opposing surfaces of each scanned bill includes said  
primary characteristic pattern to a predetermined degree of  
25 certainty, correlating only an output signal associated with said  
surface of each scanned bill which includes said primary  
characteristic pattern with said master primary characteristic  
patterns to identify the denomination of each scanned bill.
2. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein said master primary characteristic  
30 patterns are on the green surfaces of United States currency bills.
3. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein said first and second scanheads are  
optical scanheads each including at least one light source for illuminating a strip of a

preselected segment of a central portion of each bill, and at least one detector for receiving reflected light from the illuminated strip on each bill.

4. The apparatus of claim 1, wherein said first scanhead is disposed upstream relative to said second scanhead in the direction of said transport path.

5 5. The apparatus of claim 4, further including an encoder for generating a repetitive sequence of counts while each bill moves downstream along said transport path, and wherein the distance between said first and second scanheads in the direction of said transport path corresponds to a predetermined number of encoder counts.

10 6. The apparatus of claim 5, wherein said signal processing means

(1) retrieves a first encoder count in response to said first scanhead detecting a leading borderline of the printed image on said first surface of each bill,

(2) retrieves a second encoder count in response to said second scanhead detecting a leading borderline of the printed image on said second surface of each

15 bill,

(3) determines the difference between said first and second encoder counts, and

(4) compares said difference between said first and second encoder counts to said predetermined number.

20 7. The apparatus of claim 6, wherein said signal processing means correlates said output signal associated with said second surface with said master primary characteristic patterns if said difference between said first and second encoder counts is greater than said predetermined number.

25 8. The apparatus of claim 7, wherein said signal processing means correlates said output signal associated with said first surface with said master primary characteristic patterns if said difference between said first and second encoder counts is less than said predetermined number minus a relatively small safety value.

30 9. The apparatus of claim 8, wherein said signal processing means correlates said output signals associated with said first and second surfaces with said master primary characteristic patterns if said difference between said first and second

encoder counts is less than said predetermined number and greater than said predetermined number minus said safety value.

10. A method for currency discrimination, comprising:

5 transporting a plurality of bills along a bill transport path between first and second stationary scanheads disposed on opposite sides of said transport path, said bills traveling downstream between said scanheads in the direction of a predetermined dimension of said bill at a rate in excess of about 800 bills per minute;

10 scanning first and second opposing surfaces of each bill using said respective first and second scanheads as each bill travels downstream between said scanheads, and producing output signals associated therewith, each scanned bill having a primary characteristic pattern on one of said first and second surfaces and a secondary characteristic pattern on the other of said first and second surfaces;

sampling said output signals associated with said respective first and second opposing surfaces of each scanned bill;

15 storing master primary characteristic patterns of a plurality of denominations of genuine bills;

20 determining which surface of said first and second opposing surfaces of each scanned bill includes said primary characteristic pattern in response to said first and second scanheads scanning portions of said first and second opposing surfaces of each bill; and

25 in response to determining which surface of said first and second opposing surfaces of each scanned bill includes said primary characteristic pattern to a predetermined degree of certainty, correlating only an output signal associated with said surface of each scanned bill which includes said primary characteristic pattern with said master primary characteristic patterns to identify the denomination of each scanned bill.

11. A method of generating modified scanned or master patterns for use in a discrimination system capable of identifying one or more currency bills comprising the steps of:

30 designating either a scanned pattern or the master pattern for modification, each of said scanned and master patterns comprising a sequence of data values

representing analog variations of characteristic information along a segment of a bill, each of said data values having an associated sequence position;

removing one or more data values from one end of the sequence of data values of said designated pattern; and

5        inserting at the opposite end of the sequence of data values of said designated pattern a number of data values equal to the number of data values removed, said inserted data values being set equal to selected data values of said non-designated pattern, said selected data values having the same sequence positions in said non-designated pattern as said sequence positions of said designated pattern into which  
10        said selected data values are to be inserted.

12.     A method of generating modified scanned or master patterns for use in a discrimination system capable of identifying one or more currency bills comprising the steps of:

designating either a scanned pattern or the master pattern for modification in  
15        either a forward direction or a backward direction, each of said scanned and master patterns comprising a sequence of data values representing analog variations of characteristic information along a segment of a bill, each pattern having a leading end and a trailing end, each of said data values having an associated sequence position; and

20        inserting a predetermined number, R, of data values either at the trailing end of the sequence of data values of said designated pattern when said modification is performed in the forward direction or at the leading end of the sequence of data values of said designated pattern when said modification is performed in the backward direction, said inserted data values being set equal to either the last R data  
25        values of said non-designated pattern when said modification is performed in the forward direction or the first R data values of said non-designated pattern when said modification is performed in the backward direction, said modification effectively removing R data values from the leading or trailing end, respectively, of said designated pattern.

30        13.     An improved method of identifying one or more currency bills for use in identification systems which compare a scanned pattern with one or more master patterns comprising the steps of:



comparing a scanned pattern to one or more master patterns, said patterns comprising a sequence of data values representing analog variations of characteristic information along a segment of a bill, each of said data values having an associated sequence position, said scanned pattern being associated with a bill under test and  
5 said one or more master patterns being associated with one or more genuine bills;

identifying said bill under test associated with said scanned pattern based on said step of comparing where a sufficient match is obtained; and

where the identity of said bill under test has not been determined as a result of said identifying step:

10 comparing either said scanned pattern with modified versions of one or more of said master patterns or a modified version of said scanned pattern with one or more of said master patterns; and

identifying said bill under test associated with said scanned pattern based on said second comparing step where a sufficient match is obtained;

15 wherein said modified version of said scanned pattern comprises a sequence of data values; said modified scanned pattern having data values which are equal to said data values of said unmodified scanned pattern but which are offset in their sequence positions by a predetermined amount, R; either said first R or last R data values of said unmodified scanned pattern not appearing in said modified scanned pattern; and  
20 either said last R or first R, respectively, data values of said modified scanned pattern being equal to said last R or first R, respectively, data values of a master pattern to which said modified scanned pattern is to be compared in said second comparing step; and

wherein said modified versions of one or more of said master patterns each  
25 comprise a sequence of data values; each of said modified master patterns having data values which are equal to said data values of a corresponding unmodified master pattern but which are offset in their sequence positions by a predetermined amount, R; either said first R or last R data values of said unmodified master patterns not appearing in said modified master patterns; and either said last R or first R,  
30 respectively, data values of said modified master patterns being equal to said last R or first R, respectively, data values of said scanned pattern to which said modified master patterns are to be compared in said second comparing step.

14. An improved method for discriminating among currency bills of different denominations, comprising the steps of:

illuminating a predetermined section of a currency bill by focusing at least one strip of light thereupon;

5 detecting the light reflected off said illuminated section of said bill to generate an analog reflectance signal;

generating relative displacement between said strip of light and said currency bill so as to illuminate or optically scan successive sections of said bill along a predetermined dimension thereof;

10 obtaining a series of analog reflectance signals corresponding to light reflected from each of said successive bill sections using said strip of light;

digitizing and processing said series of analog reflectance signals to yield a sequence of digital data samples which, in combination, represent a scanned data pattern characteristic of the currency denomination of said bill, each of said data  
15 samples having an associated sequence position;

generating and storing a set of master characteristic patterns corresponding to optical scanning of genuine bills of each of the different currency denominations to be discriminated, each of said master patterns comprising a sequence of data samples, each of said data samples having an associated sequence position; and

20 comparing said scanned pattern to each of said stored master patterns to determine the degree of correlation therebetween, and

identifying the denomination of said currency bill based on said step of comparing where a sufficient match is obtained; and

25 where the denomination of said currency bill has not been determined as a result of said identifying step:

comparing either the scanned pattern with modified versions of one or more of said master patterns or a modified version of the scanned pattern with one or more of said master patterns; and

30 identifying the denomination of said currency bill based on said second comparing step where a sufficient match is obtained;

wherein said modified version of the scanned pattern comprises a sequence of data samples; said modified scanned pattern having data samples which are equal to the

data samples of the unmodified scanned pattern but which are offset in their sequence positions by a predetermined amount, R; either the first R or last R data samples of the unmodified scanned pattern not appearing in the modified scanned pattern; and either the last R or first R, respectively, data samples of said modified scanned pattern being equal to the last R or first R, respectively, data samples of a master pattern to which said modified scanned pattern is to be compared in said second comparing step; and

wherein said modified versions of one or more of the master patterns each comprise a sequence of data samples; each of said modified master patterns having data samples which are equal to the data values of a corresponding unmodified master pattern but which are offset in their sequence positions by a predetermined amount, R; either the first R or last R data samples of the unmodified master patterns not appearing in the modified master patterns; and either the last R or first R, respectively, data samples of said modified master patterns being equal to the last R or first R, respectively, data samples of the scanned pattern to which said modified master patterns are to be compared in said second comparing step.

15. A method of generating a modified master pattern from a master pattern for use in a discrimination system capable of identifying one or more currency bills comprising the steps of:

removing one or more data values from one end of a sequence of data values of a master pattern, said master pattern comprising a sequence of data values representing analog variations of characteristic information along a segment of a bill, each of said data values having an associated sequence position; and

inserting at the opposite end of the sequence of data values of the modified master pattern a number of data values equal to the number of data values removed, said inserted data values being set equal to zero.

16. A method of generating a modified master pattern from a master pattern for use in a discrimination system capable of identifying one or more currency bills, the master pattern comprising a sequence of data values representing analog variations of characteristic information along a segment of a bill, each pattern having a leading end and a trailing end, each of said data values having an associated sequence position, comprising the step of:

inserting a predetermined number, R, of data values either at the trailing end of the sequence of data values of the master pattern or at the leading end of the sequence of data values of the master pattern to form a modified master pattern, said inserted data values being set equal to zero, said inserting step effectively removing R data values from the leading or trailing end, respectively, of said master pattern.

17. An improved method of identifying one or more currency bills for use in identification systems which compare a scanned pattern with one or more master patterns comprising the steps of:

comparing a scanned pattern to one or more master patterns, said patterns comprising a sequence of data values representing analog variations of characteristic information along a segment of a bill, each of said data values having an associated sequence position, said scanned pattern being associated with a bill under test and said one or more master patterns being associated with one or more genuine bills;

identifying said bill under test associated with said scanned pattern based on said step of comparing where a sufficient match is obtained; and

where the identity of said bill under test has not been determined as a result of said identifying step:

comparing the scanned pattern with modified versions of one or more of said master patterns; and

identifying the bill under test associated with said scanned pattern based on said second comparing step where a sufficient match is obtained; wherein said modified versions of one or more of the master patterns each comprise a sequence of data values; each of said modified master patterns having data values which are equal to the data values of a corresponding unmodified master pattern but which are offset in their sequence positions by a predetermined amount, R; either the first R or last R data values of the unmodified master patterns not appearing in the modified master patterns; and either the last R or first R, respectively, data values of said modified master patterns being equal to zero.

18. An improved method for discriminating among currency bills of different denominations, comprising the steps of:

illuminating a predetermined section of a currency bill by focusing at least one strip of light thereupon;

detecting the light reflected off said illuminated section of said bill to generate an analog reflectance signal;

generating relative displacement between said strip of light and said currency bill so as to illuminate or optically scan successive sections of said bill along a  
5 predetermined dimension thereof;

obtaining a series of analog reflectance signals corresponding to light reflected from each of said successive bill sections using said strip of light;

digitizing and processing said series of analog reflectance signals to yield a sequence of digital data samples which, in combination, represent a scanned data  
10 pattern characteristic of the currency denomination of said bill, each of said data samples having an associated sequence position;

generating and storing a set of master characteristic patterns corresponding to optical scanning of genuine bills of each of the different currency denominations to be discriminated, each of said master patterns comprising a sequence of data samples,  
15 each of said data samples having an associated sequence position; and

comparing said scanned pattern to each of said stored master patterns to determine the degree of correlation therebetween, and

identifying the denomination of said currency bill based on said step of comparing where a sufficient match is obtained; and

20 where the denomination of said currency bill has not been determined as a result of said identifying step:

comparing the scanned pattern with modified versions of one or more of said master patterns; and

identifying the denomination of said currency bill based on said second  
25 comparing step where a sufficient match is obtained;

wherein said modified versions of one or more of said master patterns each comprise a sequence of data samples; each of said modified master patterns having data samples which are equal to the data values of a corresponding unmodified master pattern but which are offset in their sequence positions by a predetermined amount,  
30 R; either the first R or last R data samples of the unmodified master patterns not appearing in the modified master patterns; and either the last R or first R, respectively, data samples of said modified master patterns being equal to zero.

19. A currency discriminating device comprising:
- a detection circuitry for detecting characteristic information from a scanned bill;
- a memory for storing at least one master pattern of characteristic information for each of a plurality of denominations of genuine bills, each of said master patterns comprising a sequence of data values, each of said data values having an associated sequence position; and
- a signal processing means for
- (1) generating a scanned pattern from said characteristic information detected from said scanned bill, said scanned pattern comprising a sequence of data values, each of said data values having an associated sequence position;
  - (2) performing a comparison whereby said scanned pattern is compared with at least one of said master patterns; and
  - (3) indicating the denomination of said scanned bill based on said comparison where a sufficient match is obtained or
    - (a) performing a second comparison whereby said scanned pattern is compared with a modified version of at least one of said master patterns;
    - (b) identifying the denomination of said currency bill based on said second comparison where a sufficient match is obtained;
- wherein said modified version of at least one said master patterns each comprises a sequence of data values; said modified master pattern having data values which are equal to the data values of a corresponding unmodified master pattern but which are offset in their sequence positions by a predetermined amount, R; either the first R or last R data values of the unmodified master pattern not appearing in said modified master pattern; and either the last R or first R, respectively, data values of said modified master pattern being equal to zero.
20. A currency counting and discrimination device for receiving a stack of currency bills, rapidly counting and discriminating the bills in the stack, and then re-stacking the bills comprising:
- an input receptacle for receiving a stack of currency bills to be discriminated;

a discriminating unit for discriminating said currency bills as belonging to one or more denominations;

an output receptacle for receiving said currency bills after being discriminated by said discriminating unit;

5 a transport mechanism for transporting said currency bills, one at a time, from said input receptacle passed said discriminating unit and to said output receptacle;

either (a) one or more denomination counters associated with one or more denominations; each counter keeping track of the number of discriminated bills belonging to the associated denomination as determined by said discrimination unit;

10 or

(b) a total value counter maintaining the total value of said bills as they are discriminated by said discrimination unit; or

(c) both one or more denomination counters and a total value counter;

wherein the operation of said counting and discrimination device is suspended  
15 when said discriminating unit is unable to identify the denomination of a bill; said device being halted so that said unidentified bill is located at a predetermined position within said discrimination device when said transport mechanism stops, thereby permitting an operator to conveniently examine said unidentified bill;

denomination selection elements corresponding to one or more denominations  
20 whereby selection of one of said denomination selection elements increases either (i) a denomination counter corresponding to the denomination of said unidentified bill, (ii) said total value counter by the value of said unidentified bill, or (iii) both and whereby said currency discrimination device resumes operation; said denomination selection elements enabling said operator to thereby conveniently increment a  
25 respective denomination counter and/or total value counter and to restart the operation of the currency discriminator when said operator determines said unidentified bill is acceptable; and

a continuation element the selection of which resumes operation of said currency discriminator without increasing one of said denomination counters or said  
30 total value counter, thereby permitting said operator to remove said unidentified bill from said output receptacle before said discriminator resumes operation when said operator determines said unidentified bill is not acceptable.

21. A method of discriminating and counting documents comprising the steps of:

receiving a stack of documents in an input receptacle;

feeding said documents in said input receptacle one at a time to a

5 discriminating unit; and

transferring said documents from said discriminating unit to an output receptacle;

incrementing a count corresponding to a plurality of different types of documents the system is capable of discriminating when said discriminating unit  
10 identifies a document;

stopping said transferring step when said discriminating unit is unable to identify a document so that said unidentified document is located at a predetermined position within said output receptacle;

examining said unidentified document; and either

15 (a) depressing a key corresponding to the identity of said unidentified document when said examining step results in a determination that said document is acceptable, whereby said corresponding count associated with the denomination of said unidentified document is incremented and said transferring step is continued;

(b) removing said unidentified document without replacement when said  
20 examining step does not result in a determination that said unidentified document is acceptable and depressing a continuation key whereby said transferring step is continued.

22. A method of discriminating and counting documents comprising the steps of:

25 receiving a stack of documents in an input receptacle;

feeding said documents in said input receptacle one at a time to a discriminating unit; and

discriminating said documents based on a predetermined criteria;

transferring said documents from said discriminating unit to an output  
30 receptacle;



incrementing a count corresponding to a plurality of different types of documents the system is capable of discriminating when said discriminating unit identifies a document as satisfying said predetermined criteria;

stopping said transferring step when a document fails to satisfy said predetermined criteria or when said discriminating unit is unable to determine whether a document satisfies said predetermined criteria, said transferring step stopping so that the document that triggered said stopping step is located at a predetermined position within said output receptacle;

examining said triggering document; and either

(a) depressing a key corresponding to the identity of said triggering document when said examining step results in a determination that said document is acceptable, whereby said corresponding count associated with the identity of said triggering document is incremented and said transferring step is continued;

(b) removing said triggering document without replacement when said examining step does not result in a determination that said triggering document is acceptable and depressing a continuation key whereby said transferring step is continued.

23. A currency discriminating device comprising:

a discriminating unit for discriminating currency bills based on their forward/reverse orientation;

wherein said discriminating device flags any bills failing to be oriented in a predetermined forward or reverse direction.

24. A currency discriminating device comprising:

a discriminating unit for discriminating currency bills based on their forward/reverse orientation;

one or more first set output receptacles for receiving said currency bills after being discriminated by said discriminating unit;

one or more second set output receptacles for receiving said currency bills after being discriminated by said discriminating unit;

a transport mechanism for transporting said currency bills, one at a time, passed said discriminating unit and to said output receptacles, whereby bills oriented

in the forward direction are deposited in said first set receptacles and bills oriented in the reverse direction are deposited in said second set receptacles.

25. A document discriminating device comprising:  
a discriminating unit for discriminating documents based on their  
5 forward/reverse orientation;  
wherein said discriminating device flags any documents failing to be oriented in a predetermined forward or reverse direction.

26. A method of discriminating currency comprising the steps of:  
scanning currency bills along a predetermined segment and generating a  
10 scanned pattern based on said scanning;  
comparing said scanned pattern to master patterns associated with forward and reverse scans of one or more genuine bills; and  
identifying a bill and whether it is oriented in the forward or reverse direction based on said comparing step.

27. A method of discriminating documents comprising the steps of:  
generating a first-side scanned pattern associated with a first side of a test document;  
comparing said first-side scanned pattern with one or more of a plurality of stored first-side master patterns; each of said first-side master patterns being  
20 associated with a first-side of a genuine document;  
generating a first-side correlation number associated with each of said plurality of stored first-side master patterns that are compared to said first-side scanned pattern in said first comparing step;

calling the identity of said test document based on the highest first-side  
25 correlation number generated if the generated first-side correlation numbers meet a first set of criteria;

otherwise:

generating a second-side scanned pattern associated with a second side  
of said test document:

30 comparing said second-side scanned pattern with one or more stored second-side master patterns; each of said second-side master patterns being associated with a second-side of a genuine document;

generating a second-side correlation number associated with each of said stored second-side master patterns that are compared to said second-side scanned pattern in said second comparing step; and

calling the identity of said test document based said second-side correlation numbers if the generated second-side correlation numbers meet a second set of criteria.

28. The method of claim 1 wherein said first-side and second-side master patterns are associated with genuine currency.

29. The method of claim 2 wherein said first-side master patterns are associated with a green side of genuine U.S. currency and wherein said second-side master patterns are associated with a black side of genuine U.S. currency.

30. The method of claim 1 wherein said one or more stored first-side master patterns comprise a master pattern associated with a forward scan of each of a plurality of genuine documents that are to be discriminated and a master pattern associated with a reverse scan of each of a plurality of genuine documents that are to be discriminated;

wherein said step of performing a second side comparison is only performed if said step of performing a first side comparison does not result in calling the identity of said test document; and

wherein said second-side scanned pattern is compared only with second-side master patterns associated with the genuine document and scan direction associated with the highest first-side correlation number.

31. The method of claim 4 wherein said first-side and second-side master patterns are associated with genuine currency and wherein said first-side master patterns are associated with a green side of genuine U.S. currency and wherein said second-side master patterns are associated with a black side of genuine U.S. currency.

32. A method of discriminating documents comprising the steps of:  
storing a first set of master patterns, said first set of master patterns corresponding to one or more patterns retrieved from a first side of one or more genuine documents;

storing a second set of master patterns, said second set of master patterns corresponding to one or more patterns retrieved from a second side of one or more genuine documents;

5 generating a scanned pattern associated with either a first side or a second side of a test document;

comparing said scanned pattern with one or more master patterns of said first set or said second set of master patterns;

calling the identity of said test document based said comparing step.

33. A method of discriminating documents comprising the steps of:

10 (a) performing a first side comparison comprising the steps of:

generating a first-side scanned pattern associated with a first side of a test document;

15 comparing said first-side scanned pattern with one or more stored first-side master patterns; each of said first-side master patterns being associated with a first-side of a genuine document;

generating a first-side correlation number associated with each of said plurality of stored first-side master patterns that are compared to said first-side scanned pattern in said first comparing step;

20 calling the identity of said test document based on the highest first-side correlation number generated if the generated first-side correlation numbers meet a first set of criteria; and

(b) performing a second side comparison comprising the steps of:

generating a second-side scanned pattern associated with a second side of said test document:

25 comparing said second-side scanned pattern with one or more stored second-side master patterns; each of said second-side master patterns being associated with a second-side of a genuine document;

30 generating a second-side correlation number associated with each of said stored second-side master patterns that are compared to said second-side scanned pattern in said second comparing step; and

calling the identity of said test document based said second-side correlation numbers if the generated second-side correlation numbers meet a second set of criteria.

34. The method of claim 7 wherein said step of performing a second side comparison is only performed if said step of performing a first side comparison does not result in calling the identity of said test document.

35. The method of claim 8 wherein said first-side and second-side master patterns are associated with genuine currency.

36. The method of claim 9 wherein said first-side master patterns are associated with a green side of genuine U.S. currency and wherein said second-side master patterns are associated with a black side of genuine U.S. currency.

37. The method of claim 10 wherein said second side comparison is only performed if said first side comparison results in a preliminary indication that said test document is a \$20, \$50, and \$100 bill.

38. The method of claim 7 wherein said one or more stored first-side master patterns comprise a master pattern associated with a forward scan of each of a plurality of genuine documents that are to be discriminated and a master pattern associated with a reverse scan of each of a plurality of genuine documents that are to be discriminated;

wherein said step of performing a second side comparison is only performed if said step of performing a first side comparison does not result in calling the identity of said test document; and

wherein said second-side scanned pattern is compared only with second-side master patterns associated with the genuine document and scan direction associated with the highest first-side correlation number.

39. The method of claim 12 wherein said first-side and second-side master patterns are associated with genuine currency and wherein said first-side master patterns are associated with a green side of genuine U.S. currency and wherein said second-side master patterns are associated with a black side of genuine U.S. currency.

40. An apparatus for discriminating documents comprising:

a first-side scanhead for scanning a first side of a test document and generating a first-side scanned pattern associated with said first side of said test document;

5 a second-side scanhead for scanning a second side of a test document and generating a second-side scanned pattern associated with said second side of said test document; and

a memory for storing one or more first-side master patterns and one or more second-side master patterns, each of said first-side master patterns being associated  
10 with a first-side of a genuine document, each of said second-side master patterns being associated with a second-side of a genuine document; and

a signal processor for comparing said first-side scanned pattern with said one or more stored first-side master patterns, generating a first-side correlation number associated with each of said stored first-side master patterns that are compared to said  
15 first-side scanned pattern, calling the identity of said test document based on the highest first-side correlation number generated if the generated first-side correlation numbers meet a first set of criteria, generating a second-side scanned pattern associated with a second side of said test document, comparing said second-side scanned pattern with one or more of said stored second-side master patterns,  
20 generating a second-side correlation number associated with each of said stored second-side master patterns that are compared to said second-side scanned pattern in said second comparing step, and calling the identity of said test document based said second-side correlation numbers if the generated second-side correlation numbers meet a second set of criteria.

25 41. A method of authenticating documents comprising the steps of:  
illuminating a document with ultraviolet light;  
detecting ultraviolet light reflected by said document; and  
determining the authenticity of said document based upon a comparison of the ultraviolet light reflected from said bill with the ultraviolet light reflected from a  
30 genuine document illuminated with ultraviolet light.

42. A device for authenticating documents comprising:

an ultraviolet light source for illuminating a document to be tested;

an ultraviolet light detector for generating an output signal responsive to ultraviolet light reflected by said document; and

a signal processor for receiving said ultraviolet detector output signal and determining the authenticity of said document based upon said output signal.

5        43.     A system for authenticating documents comprising:

an ultraviolet light source for illuminating a document to be tested;

a reflected ultraviolet light testing apparatus comprising

an ultraviolet light detector for generating an output signal responsive to ultraviolet light reflected by said document; and

10        a signal processor for receiving said ultraviolet detector output signal and determining the authenticity of said document based upon said output signal; and

means for selectively activating said reflected ultraviolet light testing apparatus.

15        44.     A currency identification system comprising:

at least two scanheads positioned so as to permit scanning of said bill along at least two segments on a first side of a bill, said first-side scanheads being capable of detecting characteristic information from said bill along said segments and generating corresponding output signals representing variations in the detected characteristic information from which scanned patterns of characteristic information may be generated, at least two of said scanheads being laterally displaced relative to each other;

20        means for generating at least one scanned pattern from said output signals, said at least one scanned pattern representing analog variations in said characteristic information along a segment of said bill;

25        a memory for storing at least one master pattern associated with each genuine bill which the system is capable of identifying, said at least one master pattern representing analog variations in characteristic information along a segment of an associated genuine bill; and

30        a signal processing means for performing a pattern comparison wherein at least one of said scanned patterns or portions thereof is compared with at least one of said master patterns or portions thereof; said signal processing means generating an

indication of the identity of said bill based on said pattern comparison when said bill is one that the system is capable of identifying.

45. The currency identification system of claim 44 wherein at least two of said scanheads are stationary scanheads.

5 46. The currency identification system of claim 44 wherein at least two of said scanheads are laterally moveable scanheads.

47. The currency identification system of claim 44 further comprising:  
a bill transport mechanism for transporting a currency bill to be scanned along  
a transport path;

10 wherein said at least two scanheads are analog scanheads and are positioned on a first side of said transport path so as to permit scanning of said bill along at least two segments;

48. The currency identification system of claim 47 wherein:  
said system is able to discriminate among currency bills of different  
15 denominations;

said memory stores at least one master pattern associated with each of a plurality of denominations among which the system is capable of discriminating;

said signal processing means generates a denomination indication of the denomination of said bill based on said pattern comparison when said bill is one  
20 among which the system is capable of discriminating.

49. The currency identification system of claim 48 wherein:  
said system is able to identify currency bills of different denominations of a plurality of currency systems;

said memory stores at least one master pattern associated with each genuine  
25 bill which the system is capable of identifying, wherein said memory stores master patterns associated with genuine bills form a plurality of currency systems.

50. The currency identification system of claim 44 further comprising:  
a bill transport mechanism for transporting a currency bill to be scanned along  
a transport path;

30 wherein said at least two scanheads are positioned on a first side of said transport path so as to permit scanning of said bill along at least two segments;



further comprising means for selecting or activating one or more of said scanheads for scanning said bill along one or more segments or selecting one or more of said output signals or derivations thereof for the generation of scanned patterns based on a preliminary determination of the identity of said bill.

5           51.     The currency identification system of claims 44-50 wherein said scanheads are laterally positioned in a symmetrical fashion relative to a central axis of said bill.

          52.     The currency identification system of claims 44-51 wherein said scanheads are optical scanheads.

10           53.     The currency identification system of claim 52  
              wherein said optical scanheads each include at least one light source for illuminating a strip of said segments of said bill, and at least one detector for receiving reflected light from a corresponding illuminated strip on said bill;  
              wherein said output signals represent variations in the intensity of reflected  
15     light;

              wherein said means for generating at least one scanned pattern from said output signals comprises means for sampling said output signals at preselected intervals as said bill is moved past a corresponding scanhead, each of said output signal samples being proportional to the intensity of the light reflected from a  
20     different strip of a corresponding segment; and

              wherein said at least one master pattern is a master pattern of reflected light intensity signal samples.

          54.     The currency identification system of claim 53 wherein said strips are dimensioned so that at least 50 different strips can be scanned along a corresponding  
25     segment.

          55.     The currency identification system of claim 53 wherein said segments are each scanned in less than one tenth of a second.

          56.     The currency identification system of claim 53 further comprising:  
              a bill transport mechanism for transporting a currency bill to be scanned along  
30     a transport path;

              a bill separating station for receiving currency bills from a bill accepting station and feeding said bills, one at a time, to said bill transport mechanism, said bill

transport mechanism transporting bills from said bill separating station to a stacking station; and

wherein said optical scanheads are located between said bill separating and stacking stations.

5           57.     The currency identification system of claim 56 wherein said bill transport mechanism transports bills from said bill separating station to said bill stacking station at a rate in excess of about 800 bills per minute.

          58.     The currency identification system of claims 44-57 further comprising:  
          a size detection sensor for retrieving size information from said bill;  
10          a memory for storing master size information associated with genuine bills which the system is capable of identifying; and

          signal processing means for performing a size comparison wherein said size information of said bill is compared with master size information associated with at least one of the genuine bills which the system is capable of identifying and wherein  
15       said identity indication is additionally based on said size comparison.

          59.     The currency identification system of claim 58 wherein said size information comprises either the length or the width, or both, of said bill.

          60.     The currency identification system of claims 58 or 59 wherein said size detection sensor is positioned upstream from said scanheads; wherein said size  
20       comparison is performed before said pattern comparison; wherein said signal processing means generates a preliminary set of potential matching bills for said bill based on said size comparison; and wherein said at least one of said master patterns of said pattern comparison is chosen from said preliminary set.

          61.     The currency identification system of claims 58-59 wherein said size  
25       detection sensor is positioned upstream from said scanheads; wherein said size comparison is performed before said bill is scanned by said scanheads; wherein said signal processing means generates a preliminary set of potential matching bills for said bill based on said size comparison; and wherein one or more of said scanheads are selected to scan said bill based on said size comparison or the output signals from  
30       one or more of said scanheads or derivations thereof are selected for the generation of scanned patterns based on said size comparison, or wherein the lateral positioning

of one or more of said moveable scanheads is adjusted based on size comparison so as to permit scanning of selected segments of said bill.

62. The currency identification system of claim 61 wherein said at least one of said master patterns of said pattern comparison is chosen from said preliminary set.

63. The currency identification system of claims 44-62 further comprising:  
a color detection sensor for retrieving color information from said bill;  
a memory for storing master color information associated with genuine bills which the system is capable of identifying; and

signal processing means for performing a color comparison wherein said color information of said bill is compared with master color information associated with at least one of the genuine bills which the system is capable of identifying and wherein said identity indication is additionally based on said color comparison.

64. The currency identification system of claim 63 wherein said color detection sensor is positioned upstream from said scanheads; wherein said color comparison is performed before said pattern comparison; wherein said signal processing means generates a preliminary set of potential matching bills for said bill based on said color comparison; and wherein said at least one of said master patterns of said pattern comparison is chosen from said preliminary set.

65. The currency identification system of claim 63 wherein said color detection sensor is positioned upstream from said scanheads; wherein said color comparison is performed before said bill is scanned by said scanheads; wherein said signal processing means generates a preliminary set of potential matching bills for said bill based on said color comparison; and wherein one or more of said scanheads are selected to scan said bill based on said color comparison or the output signals from one or more of said scanheads or derivations thereof are selected for the generation of scanned patterns based on said color comparison or wherein the lateral positioning of one or more of said moveable scanheads is adjusted based on color comparison so as to permit scanning of selected segments of said bill.

66. The currency identification system of claim 65 wherein said at least one of said master patterns of said pattern comparison is chosen from said preliminary set.

67. The currency identification system of claim 63 further comprising:  
at least two scanheads positioned so as to permit scanning along at least two  
segments on a second side of said bill, said second-side scanheads being capable of  
detecting characteristic information from said bill along said segments and generating  
5 corresponding output signals representing variations in the detected characteristic  
information from which scanned patterns of characteristic information may be  
generated, at least two of said second-side scanheads being laterally displaced relative  
to each other;

wherein said second-side scanheads are included within said scanhead selection  
10 or output signal selection.

68. The currency identification system of 67 wherein the output from said  
color detection sensor is used to determine the face orientation of said bill.

69. The currency identification system of 68 wherein (1) said first-side  
scanheads or output signals therefrom or (2) said second-side scanheads or output  
15 signals therefrom are selected based on said determination of said face orientation.

70. The currency identification system of claims 44-66 further comprising:  
at least two scanheads positioned so as to permit scanning along at least two  
segments on a second side of said bill, said second-side scanheads being capable of  
detecting characteristic information from said bill along said segments and generating  
20 corresponding output signals representing variations in the detected characteristic  
information from which scanned patterns of characteristic information may be  
generated, at least two of said second-side scanheads being laterally displaced relative  
to each other;

wherein said second-side scanheads are included within said scanhead selection  
25 or output signal selection.

71. The currency identification system of claim 70 wherein said master  
patterns are generated by scanning only a single side of genuine bills of the plurality  
of genuine bills which the system is capable of identifying and wherein a valid  
identity indication is generated only when a match is found between a scanned pattern  
30 generated by scanning one side of said bill and one of said master patterns and no  
match is found between a scanned pattern generated by scanning the other side of  
said bill and any of said master patterns.

72. The currency identification system of claim 70 wherein two sets of master patterns are generated for genuine bills which the system is capable of identifying, a first side set generated by scanning genuine bills on one side thereof and a second side set generated by scanning genuine bills on an opposing side thereof; and wherein a valid identity indication is generated only when a match is found between a scanned pattern generated by scanning one side of said bill and one of said first side master patterns and another match is found between a scanned pattern generated by scanning the other side of said bill and a second side master pattern associated with the bill-type indicated by the first side master patterns comparison.

73. The currency identification system of claims 44-72 wherein said signal processing means generates a correlation number for each of said pattern comparisons and wherein said indication of the identity of said bill is based upon a determination of which pattern comparison has the highest correlation number.

74. A currency identification system comprising:  
a bill transport mechanism for transporting a currency bill to be scanned along a transport path;

one or more laterally moveable analog scanheads positioned on a first side of said transport path so as to permit scanning of said bill along at least one segment, said scanhead being capable of detecting characteristic information from said bill along said segment and generating corresponding output signal representing variations in the detected characteristic information from which scanned patterns of characteristic information may be generated;

means for generating at least one scanned pattern from said output signal, said at least one scanned pattern representing analog variations in said characteristic information along a segment of said bill;

a memory for storing at least one master pattern associated with each genuine bill which the system is capable of identifying, said at least one master pattern representing analog variations in characteristic information along a segment of an associated genuine bill; and

a signal processing means for performing a pattern comparison wherein at least one of said scanned patterns or portions thereof is compared with at least one of

said master patterns or portions thereof; said signal processing means generating an indication of the identity of said bill based on said pattern comparison when said bill is one that the system is capable of identifying.

75. The currency identification system of claim 74
- 5 wherein at least one of said scanheads is an optical scanhead;  
wherein said optical scanhead includes at least one light source for  
illuminating a strip of said segments of said bill, and at least one detector for  
receiving reflected light from a corresponding illuminated strip on said bill;  
wherein said output signals represent variations in the intensity of reflected  
10 light;  
wherein said means for generating at least one scanned pattern from said  
output signal comprises means for sampling said output signal at preselected intervals  
as said bill is moved past a corresponding scanhead, each of said output signal  
samples being proportional to the intensity of the light reflected from a different strip  
15 of a corresponding segment; and  
wherein said at least one master pattern is a master pattern of reflected light  
intensity signal samples.
76. The currency identification system of claims 74-75 further comprising:  
one or more laterally moveable analog scanheads positioned on a second side  
20 of said transport path so as to permit scanning of said bill along at least one segment,  
said second-side scanhead being capable of detecting characteristic information from  
said bill along said segment and generating corresponding output signal representing  
variations in the detected characteristic information from which scanned patterns of  
characteristic information may be generated.
- 25 77. The currency identification system of claim 74-76 further comprising:  
a size detection sensor for retrieving size information from said bill;  
a memory for storing master size information associated with said genuine  
bills which the system is capable of identifying; and  
signal processing means for performing a size comparison wherein said size  
30 information of said bill is compared with master size information associated with at  
least one of the genuine bills which the system is capable of identifying and wherein  
said identification indication is additionally based on said size comparison.

78. The currency identification system of claims 74-76 further comprising:  
a color detection sensor for retrieving color information from said bill;  
a memory for storing master color information associated with said genuine  
bills which the system is capable of identifying; and

5 signal processing means for performing a color comparison wherein said color  
information of said bill is compared with master color information associated with at  
least one of the genuine bills which the system is capable of identifying and wherein  
said identification indication is additionally based on said color comparison.

79. The currency identification system of claim 74-78 wherein said  
10 moveable scanheads are laterally positioned based upon a preliminary determination  
of the identity of said bill.

80. A document identification system comprising:  
a document transport mechanism for transporting a document to be scanned  
along a transport path;

15 at least two scanheads positioned on a first side of said transport path so as to  
permit scanning of said document along at least two segments, said scanheads being  
capable of detecting characteristic information from said document along said  
segments and generating corresponding output signals representing variations in the  
detected characteristic information from which scanned patterns of characteristic  
20 information may be generated, at least two of said scanheads being laterally displaced  
relative to each other;

means for generating at least one scanned pattern from said output signals,  
said at least one scanned pattern representing analog variations in said characteristic  
information along a segment of said bill;

25 a memory for storing at least one master pattern associated with each genuine  
document which the system is capable of identifying, said at least one master pattern  
representing analog variations in characteristic information along a segment of an  
associated genuine bill; and

a signal processing means for performing a pattern comparison wherein at  
30 least one of said scanned patterns or portions thereof is compared with at least one of  
said master patterns or portions thereof; said signal processing means generating an

indication of the identity of said document based on said pattern comparison when said document is one that the system is capable of identifying.

81. An improved method for identifying currency bills in a currency identification system, the system being capable of identifying bills that are of one or more bill-types, comprising the steps of:

scanning a test bill along at least two laterally displaced segments located on a first side of said test bill for variations in characteristic information along said segments, said scanning being performed by at least two laterally displaced analog first-side scanheads;

generating an output signal from at least one of said scanheads;

generating at least one scanned pattern from said output signals, said at least one scanned pattern representing analog variations in said characteristic information along a segment of said bill;

performing a pattern comparison wherein at least one of said scanned patterns or portions thereof is compared with one or more master patterns or portions thereof from a set of master patterns, said master patterns being associated with genuine bills of the bill-types that the system is capable of identifying, said master patterns representing analog variations in characteristic information along segments of an associated genuine bill; and

generating an indication of the identity of said test bill based on said pattern comparison when said test bill is one that the system is capable of identifying.

82. An improved method for identifying documents in a document identification system, the system being capable of identifying documents that are of one or more document-types, comprising the steps of:

scanning a test document along at least two laterally displaced segments located on a first side of said test document for variations in characteristic information along said segments, said scanning being performed by at least two laterally displaced analog first-side scanheads;

generating an output signal from at least one of said scanheads;

generating at least one scanned pattern from said output signals, said at least one scanned pattern representing analog variations in said characteristic information along a segment of said bill;



performing a pattern comparison wherein at least one of said scanned patterns or portions thereof is compared with one or more master patterns or portions thereof from a set of master patterns, said master patterns being associated with genuine documents of the document-types that the system is capable of identifying, said  
5 master patterns representing analog variations in characteristic information along segments of an associated genuine bill; and

generating an indication of the identity of said test document based on said pattern comparison when said test document is of a document-type that the system is capable of identifying.

10 83. A currency identification system comprising:

a linear array scanhead comprising at least two sensors positioned so as to permit scanning along at least two segments on a first side of a bill, said sensors being capable of detecting characteristic information from said bill along said segments and generating corresponding output signals representing variations in the  
15 detected characteristic information from which scanned patterns of characteristic information may be generated, at least two of said sensors being laterally displaced relative to each other;

means for generating at least one scanned pattern from said output signals, said at least one scanned pattern representing analog variations in said characteristic  
20 information along a segment of said bill;

a memory for storing at least one master pattern associated with each genuine bill which the system is capable of identifying, said at least one master pattern representing analog variations in characteristic information along a segment of an associated genuine bill; and

25 a signal processing means for performing a pattern comparison wherein at least one of said scanned patterns or portions thereof is compared with at least one of said master patterns or portions thereof; said signal processing means generating an indication of the identity of said bill based on said pattern comparison when said bill is one that the system is capable of identifying.

30 84. A document identification system comprising:

a linear array scanhead comprising at least two sensors positioned so as to permit scanning along at least two segments on a first side of a document, said

sensors being capable of detecting characteristic information from said document along said segments and generating corresponding output signals representing variations in the detected characteristic information from which scanned patterns of characteristic information may be generated, at least two of said sensors being

5 laterally displaced relative to each other;

means for generating at least one scanned pattern from said output signals, said at least one scanned pattern representing analog variations in said characteristic information along a segment of said document;

10 a memory for storing at least one master pattern associated with each genuine document which the system is capable of identifying, said at least one master pattern representing analog variations in characteristic information along a segment of an associated genuine document; and

15 a signal processing means for performing a pattern comparison wherein at least one of said scanned patterns or portions thereof is compared with at least one of said master patterns or portions thereof; said signal processing means generating an indication of the identity of said document based on said pattern comparison when said document is one that the system is capable of identifying.

85. An improved method for identifying documents in a document identification system, the system being capable of identifying documents that are of one or more document-types, comprising the steps of:

20 scanning a test document along at least two laterally displaced segments located on a first side of said test document for variations in characteristic information along said segments, said scanning being performed by at least two laterally displaced analog first-side sensors;

25 generating an output signal from at least one of said sensors;

generating at least one scanned pattern from said output signals, said at least one scanned pattern representing analog variations in said characteristic information along a segment of said bill;

30 performing a pattern comparison wherein at least one of said scanned patterns or portions thereof is compared with one or more master patterns or portions thereof from a set of master patterns, said master patterns being associated with genuine documents of the document-types that the system is capable of identifying, said

master patterns representing analog variations in characteristic information along segments of an associated genuine bill; and

generating an indication of the identity of said test document based on said pattern comparison when said test document is of a document-type that the system is capable of identifying.

86. A currency evaluation device comprising  
a detection circuitry for detecting first characteristic information and second  
characteristic information from a scanned bill;  
a memory for storing

- (1) at least one set of genuine first characteristic information for each of a plurality of denominations of genuine bills;
  - (2) at least one set of genuine second characteristic information for each of a plurality of denominations of genuine bills; and
- a signal processing means for
- (1) performing a first comparison whereby at least a portion of said detected first characteristic information is compared with at least a portion of at least one of said sets of genuine first characteristic information;
  - (2) indicating either the denomination of said scanned bill or an error based on said first comparison;
  - (3) retrieving at least a portion of at least one of said sets of genuine second characteristic information corresponding only to the denomination indicated by said first comparison;
  - (4) performing a second comparison whereby at least a portion of said detected second characteristic information is compared with said retrieved genuine second characteristic information; and
  - (5) indicating either the genuineness of said scanned bill or an error based on said second comparison.

87. A currency evaluation device according to claim 86 wherein said detection circuitry employs at least one detector selected from the group consisting of: optical, magnetic, electrical conductivity, capacitive, and mechanical sensors.

88. The device according to claim 86 wherein said first characteristic information is color information.

89. The device according to claim 86 wherein said second characteristic information is color information.

5 90. A currency evaluation device comprising  
a detection circuitry for detecting first characteristic information and second  
characteristic information from a scanned bill, wherein said first  
characteristic information is optically sensed;

a memory for storing  
10 (1) at least one set of genuine first characteristic information for  
each of a plurality of denominations of genuine bills;  
(2) at least one set of genuine second characteristic information for  
each of a plurality of denominations of genuine bills; and  
a signal processing means for

15 (1) performing a first comparison whereby at least a portion of said  
detected first characteristic information is compared with at  
least a portion of at least one of said sets of genuine first--  
characteristic information;  
(2) indicating either the denomination of said scanned bill or an  
20 error based on said first comparison;  
(3) performing a second comparison whereby at least a portion of  
said detected second characteristic information is compared with  
at least a portion of at least one of said sets of genuine second  
characteristic information corresponding to the denomination  
25 indicated by said first comparison; and  
(4) indicating either the genuineness of said scanned bill or an error  
based on said second comparison.

91. A currency evaluation device for receiving a stack of currency bills,  
rapidly evaluating all the bills in the stack, and then re-stacking the bills, said device  
30 comprising;

a feed mechanism for receiving a stack of currency bills and feeding said bills  
in the direction of the wide dimension of the bills, one at a time, to a feed station;

a bill transport mechanism for transporting bills, in the direction of the wide dimension of the bills, from said feed station to a stacking station;

a stationary optical scanning head located between said feed and stacking stations for scanning a preselected segment of a central portion of each bill

5 transported between said stations by said transport mechanism, said scanning head including at least one light source for illuminating a strip of said preselected segment of a bill, and at least one detector for receiving reflected light from the illuminated strip on the bill and producing an output signal representing variations in the intensity of the reflected light;

10 means for sampling said output signal at preselected intervals as a bill is moved across said scanning head in the direction of the wide dimension of the bill, each of said output signal samples being proportional to the intensity of the light reflected from a different strip of said preselected segment of a bill;

a memory for storing characteristic signal samples produced by scanning said  
15 preselected segments of bills of different denominations with said scanning head and sampling said output signal at said preselected intervals, each of said stored signal samples being proportional to the intensity of the light reflected from a different strip of said preselected segment of a bill; and

signal processing means for receiving said signal samples and determining the  
20 denomination of each scanned bill by comparing said stored signal samples with said output signal samples produced by the scanning of each bill with said scanning head.

92. The currency evaluation device of claim 91 which includes an encoder coupled to said transport mechanism for monitoring the movement of each bill by producing a repetitive tracking signal synchronized with incremental movements of  
25 said transport mechanism, and means urging each bill into firm engagement with said transport mechanism and said scanning head to ensure a fixed relationship between the increments of movement of each bill and the corresponding increments of movement of said transport mechanism which is synchronized with said encoder.

93. The currency evaluation device of claim 91 which includes means for  
30 detecting a borderline around the image printed on each bill, and wherein said preselected segment is located inside said borderline, and the scanning of said

preselected segment is initiated at a prescribed interval following the detection of said borderline.

94. The currency evaluation device of claim 91 which includes signal processing means responsive to the output signals from said detector for determining the denomination of each scanned bill before the bill has been advanced to a stacking station, and

means responsive to said signal processing means for altering the movement of a scanned bill in response to the denomination determination for the bill, before the bill is advanced to a stacking station.

95. An improved method for discriminating between currency bills of different denominations comprising the steps of:

illuminating a predetermined section of a currency bill by focusing at least one strip of light thereupon;

detecting the light reflected off said illuminated section of said bill to generate an analog reflectance signal;

generating relative lateral displacement between said strip of light and said bill so as to illuminate and optically scan successive sections of said bill along a predetermined dimension thereof;

obtaining a series of analog reflectance signals corresponding to light reflected from each of said successive bill sections;

digitizing and processing said series of analog reflectance signals to yield a set of digital data samples which, in combination, represent a data pattern characteristic of the currency denomination of said bill;

generating and storing a set of master characteristic patterns corresponding to optical scanning of original bills of each of the different currency denominations to be discriminated;

dividing at least one of (1) said data pattern and (2) said master characteristic patterns into a plurality of sections, and shifting selected ones of said sections relative to each other; and

comparing said data pattern for said scanned currency bill to each of said stored master patterns to determine the degree of correlation therebetween, and thereby to identify the denomination of said currency bill.

96. The method of claim 95, wherein said dividing step includes shifting different ones of said sections relative to each other by different amounts.

97. The method of claim 96, wherein said dividing step includes progressively shifting samples in successive ones of said sections.

5 98. The method of claim 97, wherein if said degree of correlation fails to meet a predetermined threshold, said dividing step is repeated using a progressively increasing number of sections in said plurality of sections.

99. The method of claim 95, wherein said dividing step includes measuring shrinkage of said bill, the number of sections in said plurality of sections being  
10 directly proportional to the measured shrinkage.

100. The method of claim 95, wherein said dividing step includes dividing each of said master characteristic patterns into a progressively increasing number of sections, progressively shifting samples in successive ones of said sections for each of said number of sections to generate a plurality of shifted patterns for each of said  
15 master characteristic patterns, and storing in a memory said plurality of shifted patterns for each of said master characteristic patterns.

101. The method of claim 100, wherein said comparing step includes comparing said data pattern for said scanned currency bill to each of said stored master patterns and said stored plurality of shifted patterns to determine the degree of  
20 correlation therebetween.

102. The method of claim 100, wherein each of said plurality of shifted patterns correspond to different degrees of shrinkage for said bill, and wherein said comparing step includes comparing said data pattern for said scanned currency bill to said stored patterns corresponding to a measured degree of shrinkage for said bill.

25 103. The method of claim 95 further including the step of positively identifying said scanned bill as having the denomination corresponding to the stored master pattern for which the degree of correlation is found to be the highest and at least equal to a predefined correlation threshold.

104. An improved method for discriminating between currency bills of  
30 different denominations comprising the steps of:

illuminating a predetermined section of a currency bill by focusing at least one strip of light thereupon;

detecting the light reflected off said illuminated section of said bill to generate an analog reflectance signal;

generating relative lateral displacement between said strip of light and said bill so as to illuminate and optically scan successive sections of said bill along a

5 predetermined dimension thereof;

obtaining a series of analog reflectance signals corresponding to light reflected from each of said successive bill sections;

digitizing and processing said series of analog reflectance signals to yield a set of digital data samples which, in combination, represent a data pattern characteristic  
10 of the currency denomination of said bill;

generating and storing a set of master characteristic patterns corresponding to optical scanning of original bills of each of the different currency denominations to be discriminated;

generating and storing a set of shifted patterns by dividing each of said master  
15 characteristic patterns into a plurality of sections and by shifting selected ones of said sections relative to each other; and

comparing said data pattern for said scanned currency bill to selected ones of said stored master characteristic patterns and said stored shifted patterns to determine the degree of correlation therebetween, and thereby to identify the denomination of  
20 said currency bill.

105. The method of claim 104, wherein said step of generating and storing a set of shifted patterns includes dividing each of said master characteristic patterns into a progressively increasing number of sections, progressively shifting samples in successive ones of said sections for each of said number of sections to generate a  
25 plurality of shifted patterns for each of said master characteristic patterns, and storing said plurality of shifted patterns for each of said master characteristic patterns.

106. The method of claim 104, wherein each of said shifted patterns correspond to different degrees of shrinkage for said bill, and wherein said comparing step includes comparing said data pattern for said scanned currency bill to said stored  
30 patterns corresponding to a measured degree of shrinkage for said bill.

107. An improved method of generating a master pattern corresponding to a given denomination for use in a currency evaluating device, comprising the steps of:



generating a plurality of component patterns for a given denomination by scanning one or more genuine bills of said given denomination; and

generating a master pattern for said given denomination, said master pattern being derived from an average of said component patterns.

5        108. The method of claim 107 wherein said plurality of component patterns for a given denomination are generated by scanning a single genuine bill of said given denomination a plurality of times.

109. The method of claim 108 wherein said single genuine bill is of standard or average quality.

10        110. The method of claim 108 wherein said single genuine bill is of new quality.

111. The method of claim 107 wherein said plurality of component patterns for a given denomination are generated by scanning two or more genuine bills of said given denomination.

15        112. The method of claim 111 wherein said two or more genuine bills are of the same quality.

113. The method of claim 112 wherein the said two or more genuine bills are of standard or average quality.

20        114. The method of claim 112 wherein at least one of said component patterns is generated by scanning one of said genuine bills along a path laterally displaced from the path along which at least one other of said genuine bills is scanned in generating another of said component patterns.

115. The method of claim 111 wherein at least two of said two or more genuine bills are of different qualities.

25        116. The method of claim 115 wherein at least one of said two or more genuine bills is an old bill and at least one of said two or more genuine bills is a new bill.

30        117. The method of claim 115 wherein at least one of said component patterns is generated by scanning one of said genuine bills along a path laterally displaced from the path along which at least one other of said genuine bills is scanned in generating another of said component patterns.

118. The method of claim 111 wherein said given denomination is a five dollar denomination and at least one of said two or more genuine bills has dark stairs on a green side and at least one of said two or more genuine bills has light stairs on a green side.

5        119. The method of claim 107 wherein said scanning is optical scanning.

120. An improved method for discriminating among currency bills of different denominations, comprising the steps of:

illuminating a predetermined section of a currency bill by focusing at least one strip of light thereupon;

10        detecting the light reflected off said illuminated section of said bill to generate an analog reflectance signal;

generating relative displacement between said strip of light and said currency bill so as to illuminate or optically scan successive sections of said bill along a predetermined dimension thereof;

15        obtaining a series of analog reflectance signals corresponding to light reflected from each of said successive bill sections using said strip of light;

digitizing and processing said series of analog reflectance signals to yield a set of digital data samples which, in combination, represent a data pattern characteristic of the currency denomination of said bill;

20        generating and storing a set of master characteristic patterns corresponding to optical scanning of genuine bills of each of the different currency denominations to be discriminated, said master patterns corresponding to said different denominations being derived from an average of a plurality of component patterns for each of said different denominations, said component patterns for a given denomination being  
25        derived by scanning one or more genuine bills corresponding to said given denomination; and

comparing the characteristic pattern for a scanned currency bill to each of said stored master patterns to determine the degree of correlation therebetween, and thereby to identify the denomination of said currency bill.

30        121. A currency evaluation device able to discriminate among different denominations of bills from two or more currency systems.

122. The currency evaluation device of claim 121 wherein said device is able to discriminate among different denominations of both Canadian and German bills.

123. A currency identification system for identifying currency bills of different denominations of a plurality of currency systems comprising:

a discriminating unit for discriminating the identity a bill; said discriminating unit retrieving characteristic information from said bill;

a memory for storing master characteristic information associated with each genuine bill which the system is capable of identifying; said memory storing master characteristic information associated with at least one genuine bill from at least two currency systems; and

a signal processing means for comparing said retrieved characteristic information with master characteristic information associated with at least one genuine bill; said signal processing means generating an indication of the identity of said bill based on said comparison when said bill is one that the system is capable of identifying.

124. The currency evaluation device of claim 123 wherein said device further comprises a currency system selection element for designating one of said at least two currency systems whereby said signal processor only compares said retrieved characteristic information with master characteristic information associated with genuine bills from said designated currency system.

125. The currency evaluation device of claim 123 wherein said memory stores master characteristic information associated with genuine Canadian and German bills.

126. A currency evaluation device for receiving a stack of currency bills and rapidly evaluating all the bills in the stack comprising:

a discriminating unit for evaluating bills;

means for flagging bills based on a plurality of criteria; and

means for indicating which of said plurality of criteria caused a given bill to be flagged.

127. A currency evaluation device able to discriminate among different denominations of bills comprising:

a discriminating unit for discriminating the denomination of a bill.

128. A currency counting and discrimination device for receiving a stack of currency bills, rapidly counting and discriminating the bills in the stack, and then re-stacking the bills comprising:

5           an input receptacle for receiving a stack of currency bills to be discriminated;  
          a discriminating unit for discriminating said currency bills as having one or more denominations;

          an output receptacle for receiving said currency bills after being discriminated by said discriminating unit; and

10           a transport mechanism for transporting said currency bills, one at a time, from said input receptacle past said discriminating unit and to said output receptacle, said transport mechanism comprising stripping means for stripping the lowermost bill from a stack of bills in the input receptacle, first and second driven transport rolls on opposite sides of the discriminating unit for transporting each bill past the  
15   discriminating unit, said first and second transport rolls each having a circumference, said first transport roll receiving bills directly from said stripping means and transporting the received bills to the region between said first and second transport rolls.

20           129. The currency counting and discrimination device of claim 128 wherein said first transport roll has a surface that is adapted to fictionally engage bills along only a portion of the circumference of said first transport roll, and the circumference of said first transport roll is greater than the width of the bills so that successive bills are spaced apart from each other.

25           130. The currency counting and discrimination device of claim 128 which includes a curved guideway mounted adjacent said first transport roll, said curved guideway maintaining bills engaged by said first transport roll in engagement with the surface of said first transport roll around a portion of the circumference thereof, the device having a top, said guideway being formed as a unitary part of a cover for a rear portion of the top of the device.

30           131. The currency counting and discrimination device of claim 128 wherein said input receptacle comprises a bill supporting surface for supporting a stack of bills and wherein said stripping means comprises a stripping wheel having a

circumference, said stripping wheel projecting through said bill supporting surface so as to contact said stack of bills, said stripping wheel having a high-friction surface along only a portion of its circumference such that during rotation of said stripping wheel said high-friction portion intermittently engages the lowermost bill of the stack of bills, and wherein said stripping wheel is always stopped with said high-friction portion of its circumference below said bill supporting surface.

132. The currency counting and discrimination device of claim 128 further comprising:

a frame and wherein

said input receptacle comprises a bill supporting surface for supporting said stack of bills, said bill supporting surface being removable from said frame of the currency counting and discriminating device.

133. The currency counting and discrimination device of claim 128 wherein:

a transport mechanism transports said currency bills along a transport path;

said discriminating unit comprises a first optical scanhead on one side of said transport path, said scanhead comprising a light source and a photodetector; and further comprising

a first unitary member forming a housing for said first scanhead, said unitary member being sealed to prevent dust from entering said first scanhead.

134. The currency counting and discrimination device of claim 133 wherein said unitary member defines a chamber through which light from said light source is transmitted to said transport path and light reflected from said transport path is transmitted to said photodetector, said chamber being sealed to prevent dust from entering said chamber.

135. The currency counting and discrimination device of claim 133 further comprising a second optical scanhead on a second side of said transport path, said scanhead comprising a light source and a photodetector;

a second unitary member forming a housing for said second scanhead, wherein said second unitary member is sealed to prevent dust from entering said second optical scanhead.

136. The currency counting and discrimination device of claim 128 wherein:  
said transport mechanism transports said currency bills along a transport path;  
and

5        said discriminating unit comprises a first scanhead mounted in a first housing  
on one side of said transport path; said first housing being moveable between an  
operational position adjacent said transport path and a retracted position away from  
said transport path, said housing being biased so that said first scanhead is maintained  
in said operational position.

137. The currency counting and discrimination device of claim 136 further  
10       comprising a second scanhead mounted in a second housing on a second side of said  
transport path; said second housing being rigidly attached to a frame of the counting  
and discrimination device.

138. The currency counting and discrimination device of claim 128 wherein:  
said transport mechanism transports said currency bills along a transport path,  
15       the direction of bill travel defining a first direction, the direction transverse to the  
direction of bill travel defining a second direction; and further comprising

20       a pair of photosensors disposed apart from each other in said second direction,  
each photosensor including a light source and a protective lens on one side of said  
transport path and a photodetector and a protective lens on the other side of said  
transport path, the lenses for both the light sources and the photodetectors being  
located sufficiently close to each other that the lenses are wiped by bills transported  
therebetween.

139. A currency counting and discrimination device for receiving a stack of  
currency bills, rapidly counting and discriminating the bills in the stack, and then re-  
25       stacking the bills comprising:

an input receptacle for receiving a stack of currency bills to be discriminated;  
a discriminating unit for discriminating said currency bills as having one or  
more denominations;

30       an output receptacle for receiving said currency bills after being discriminated  
by said discriminating unit;

a transport mechanism for transporting said currency bills, one at a time, from  
said input receptacle past said discriminating unit and to said output receptacle along

a transport path, the direction of bill travel defining a first direction, the direction transverse to the direction of bill travel defining a second direction; and

a pair of photosensors being disposed apart from each other in said second direction, each photosensor including a light source and a protective lens on one side of said transport path and a photodetector and a protective lens on the other side of said transport path, the lenses for both the light sources and the photodetectors being located sufficiently close to each other that the lenses are wiped by bills transported therebetween.

140. A method of controllably altering the speed of a bill transport mechanism of a currency counting and discrimination device from a first speed to a second speed, the transport mechanism being driven by a motor, comprising the steps of:

- (a) determining whether the speed of the bill transport mechanism is to be increased or decreased;
- (b) increasing or decreasing the speed by a predetermined step up or step down incremental amount, respectively;
- (c) waiting a predetermined amount of time;
- (d) determining whether the speed of the transport mechanism has reached the second speed; and
- (e) repeating steps (b) - (d) if the speed of the transport mechanism has not reached the second speed; wherein said step up and step down incremental amounts and said predetermined amount of time are chosen so that the bill transport mechanism alters its speed without jerking or causing motor spikes.

141. In currency handling apparatus wherein an input bin is provided for accepting a stack of bills from which bottom bills are to be successively fed in single file in a given feed direction along a bill transport path, a feed arrangement comprising:

- a bill supporting surface for supporting a stack of bills;
- a stripping wheel having a circumference, said stripping wheel projecting through said bill supporting surface so as to contact said stack of bills, said stripping wheel having a high-friction surface along only a portion of its circumference such that during rotation of said stripping wheel said high-friction portion intermittently

engages the lowermost bill of the stack of bills, said stripping wheel always being stopped with said high-friction portion of its circumference below said bill supporting surface.

142. A currency counting and discrimination device for receiving a stack of  
5 currency bills, rapidly counting and discriminating the bills in the stack, and then re-stacking the bills comprising:

an input receptacle for receiving a stack of currency bills to be discriminated;

a discriminating unit for discriminating said currency bills as having one or  
more denominations;

10 an output receptacle for receiving said currency bills after being discriminated by said discriminating unit;

a transport mechanism for transporting said currency bills, one at a time, from said input receptacle past said discriminating unit and to said output receptacle along a transport path;

15 said discriminating unit comprising a first scanhead mounted in a first housing on one side of said transport path; said first housing being moveable between an operational position adjacent said transport path and a retracted position away from said transport path, said housing being biased so that said first scanhead is maintained in said operational position.

20 143. The currency counting and discrimination device of claim 2 wherein said housing has a tapered entry guide for guiding bills traveling along said transport path to a position adjacent said first scanhead.

144. A currency discriminating device comprising:

a detection circuitry for detecting characteristic information from a scanned bill;

25 a memory for storing at least one master pattern of characteristic information for each of a plurality of denominations of genuine bills; and

a signal processing means for

(1) generating a scanned pattern from said characteristic information detected from said scanned bill;

30 (2) performing a comparison whereby at least a portion of said scanned pattern is compared with at least a portion of at least one of said master patterns; and



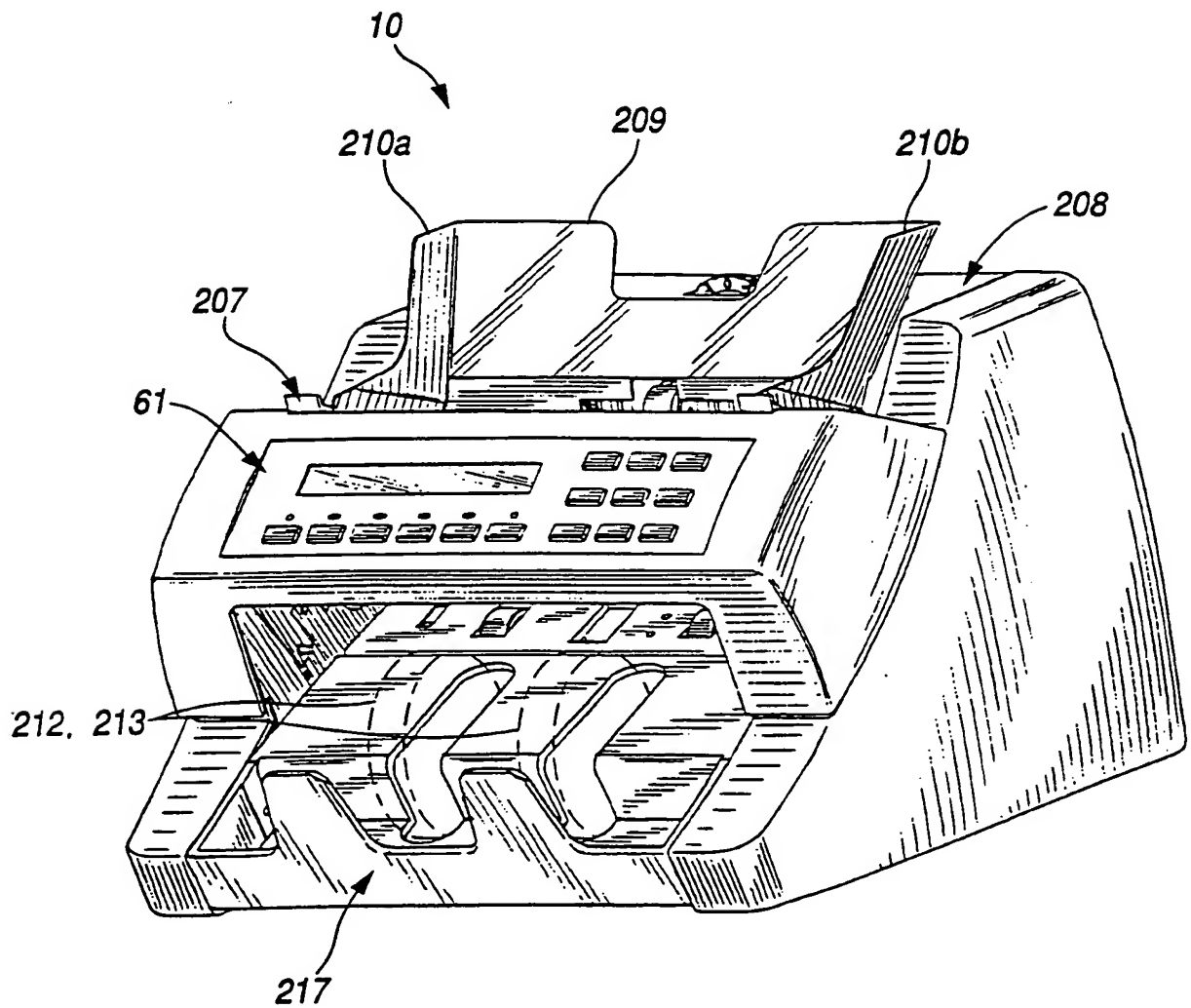
- (3) indicating the denomination of said scanned bill or an error based on said comparison;

wherein said master patterns corresponding to said plurality of denominations are derived from an average of a plurality of component patterns for each of said

- 5 plurality of denominations, said component patterns for a given denomination being derived by scanning one or more genuine bills corresponding to said given denomination.

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

1 / 77

**FIG. 1**

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

2 / 77

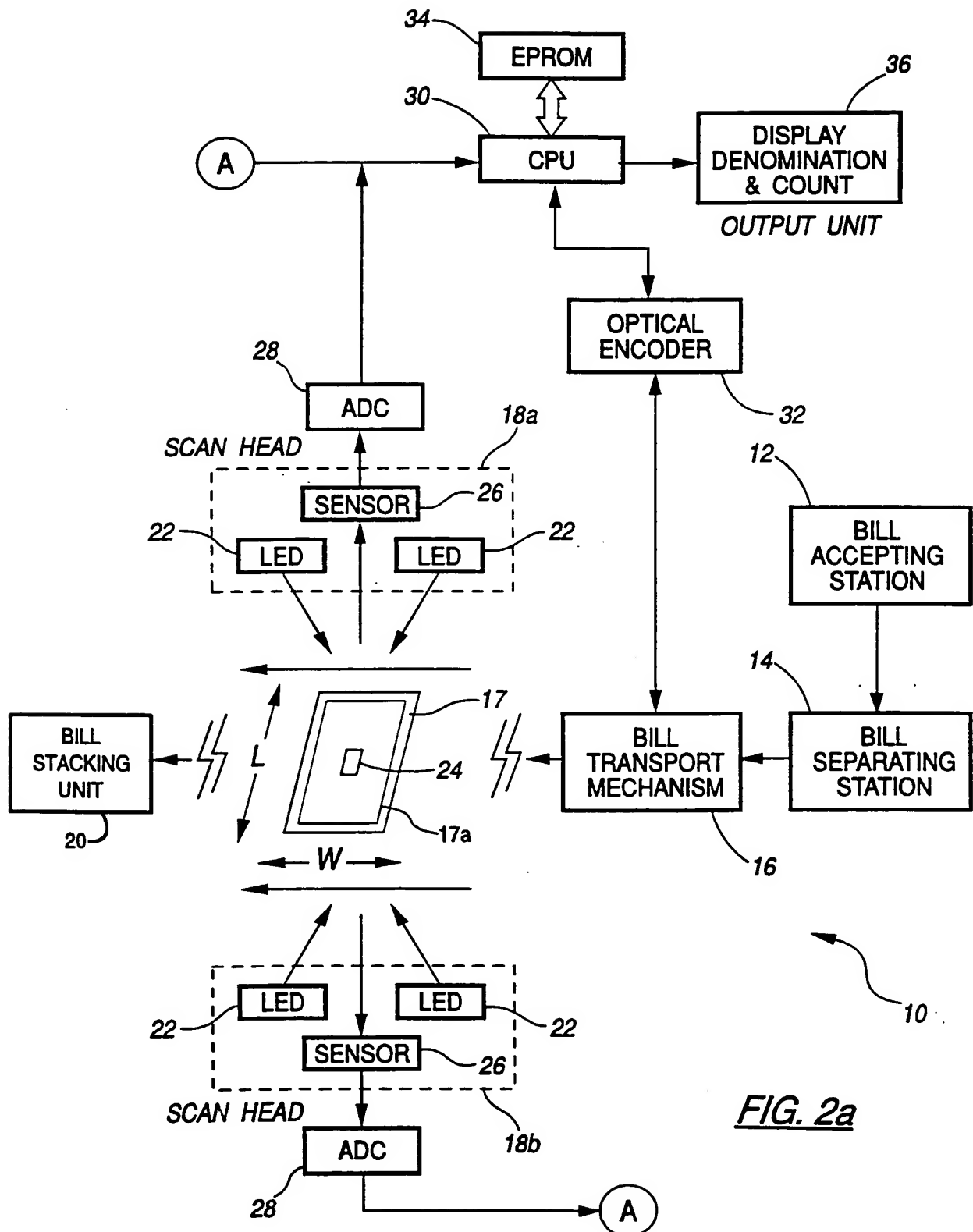


FIG. 2a

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

3 / 77

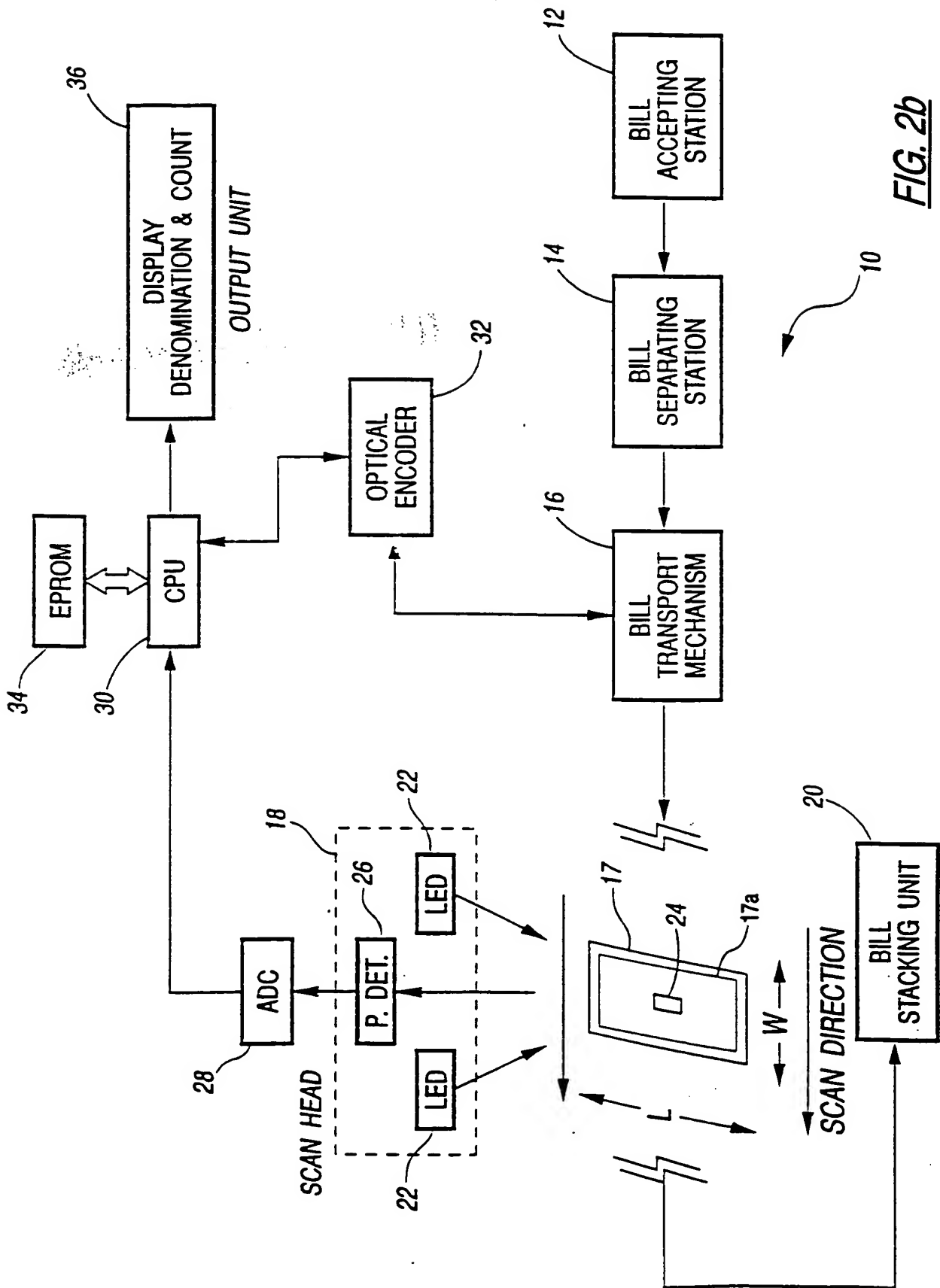


FIG. 2b

THIS PAGE IS BLANK



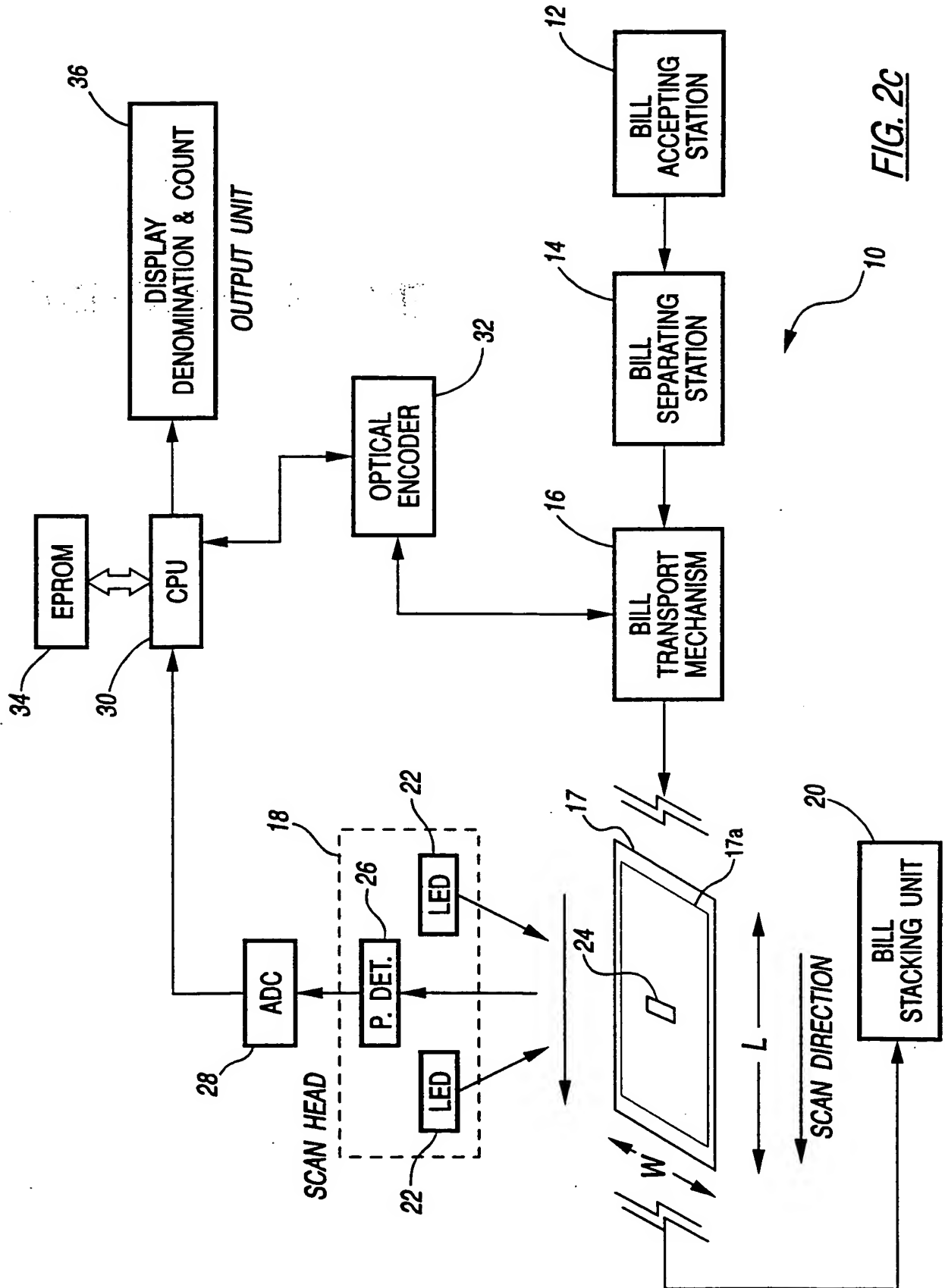
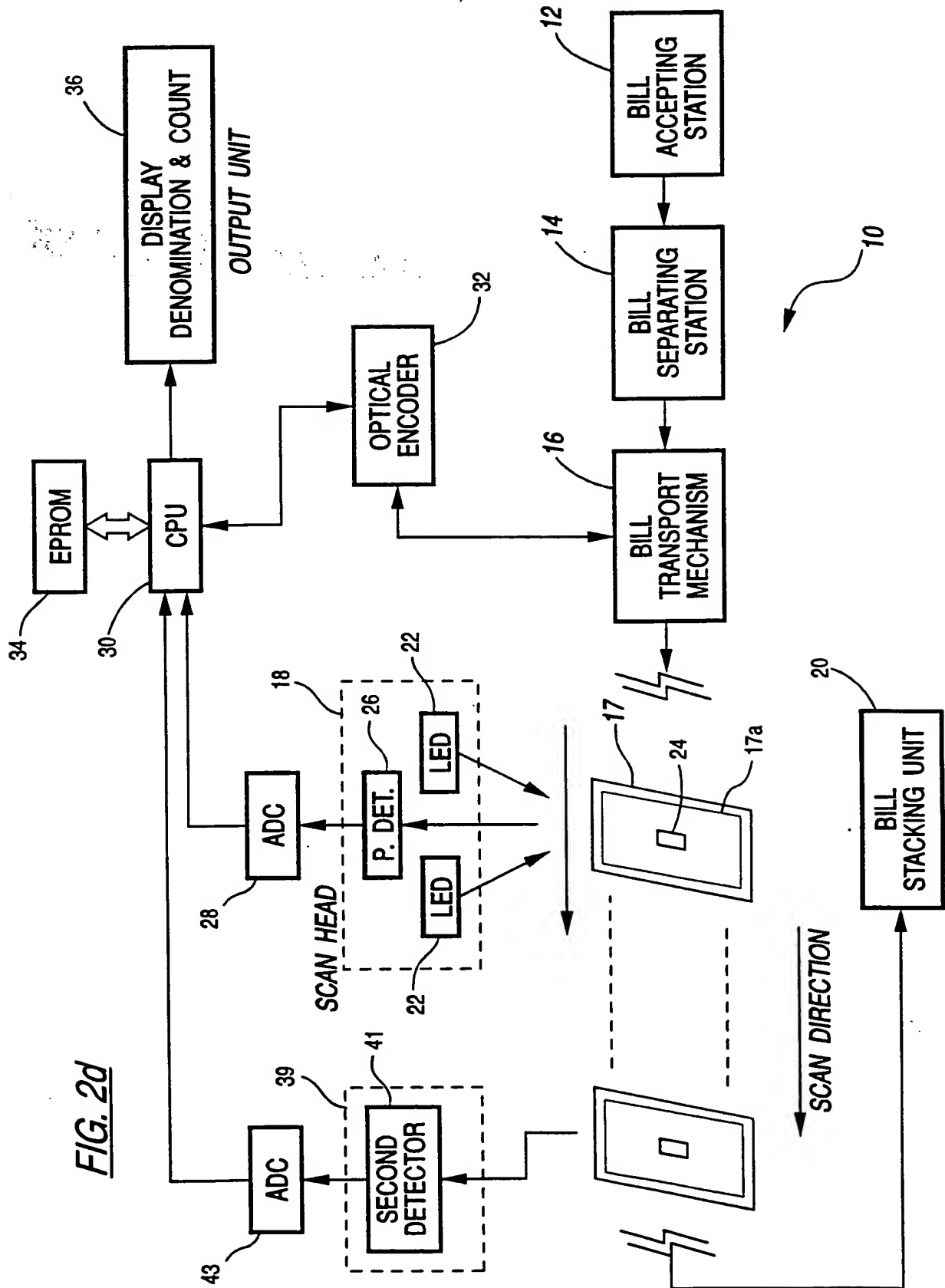


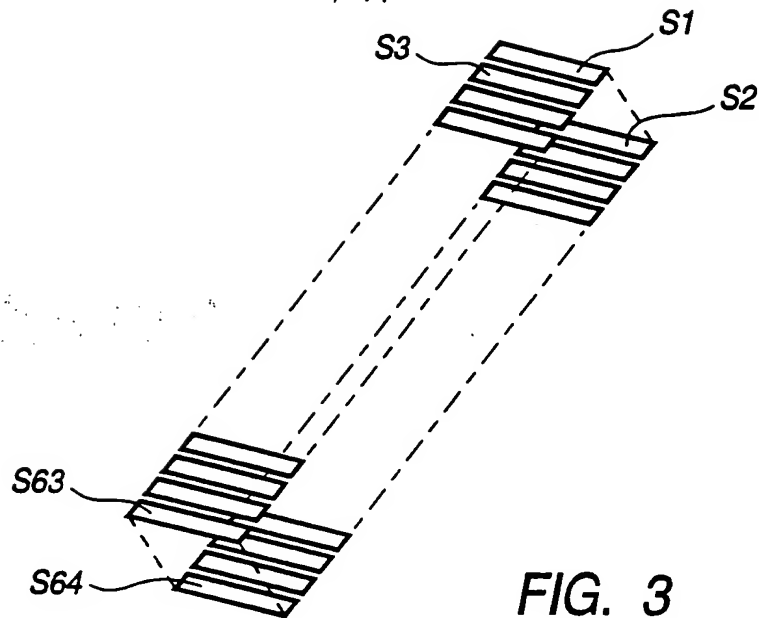
FIG. 2c

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

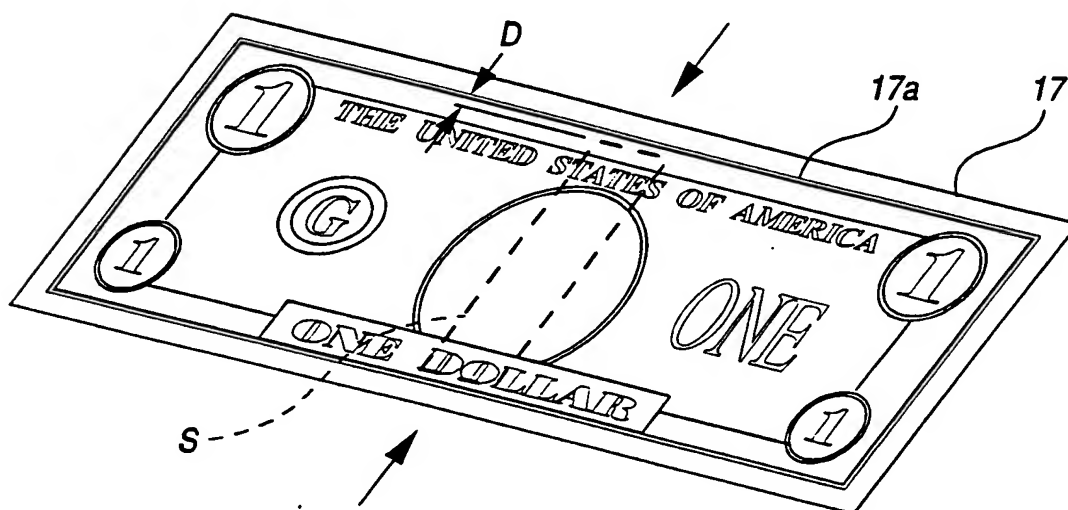


THIS PAGE IS BLANK

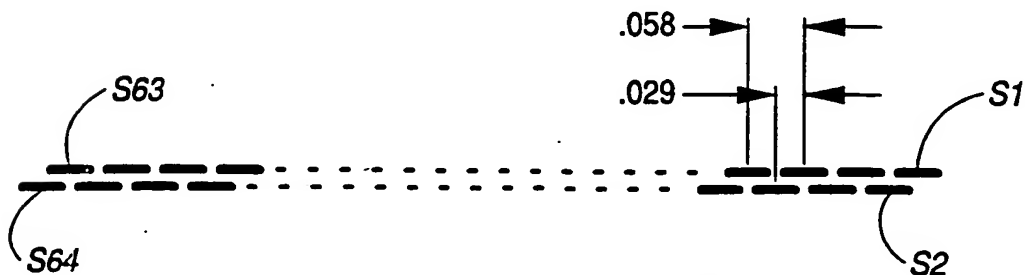
6 / 77



**FIG. 3**



**FIG. 4a**



**FIG. 5a**

THIS PAGE IS BLANK

7 / 77

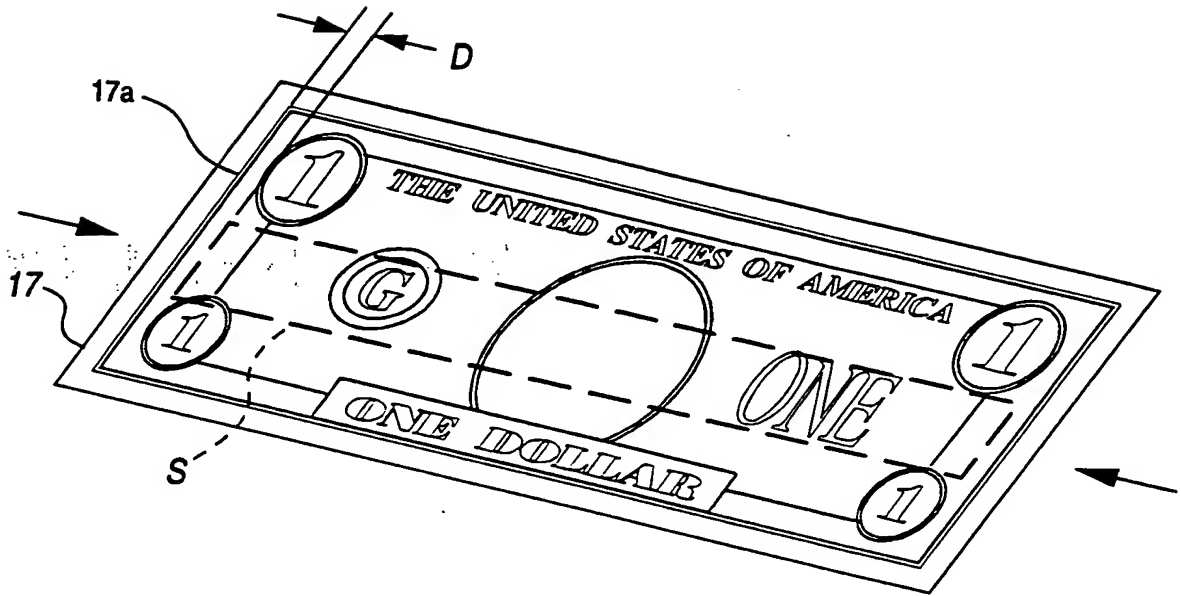


FIG. 4b

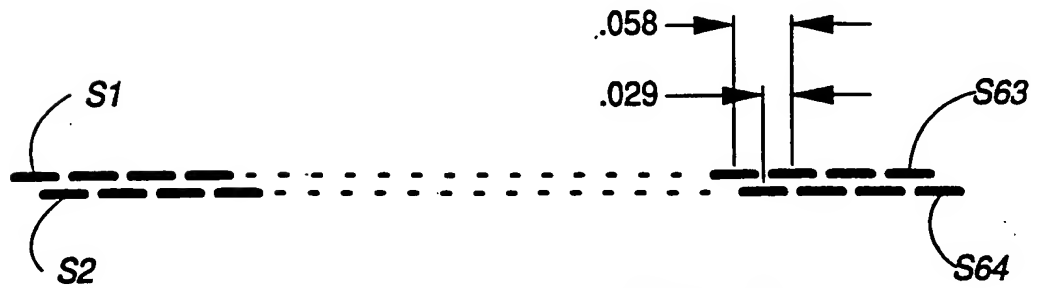


FIG. 5b

THIS PAGE IS BLANK



8 / 77

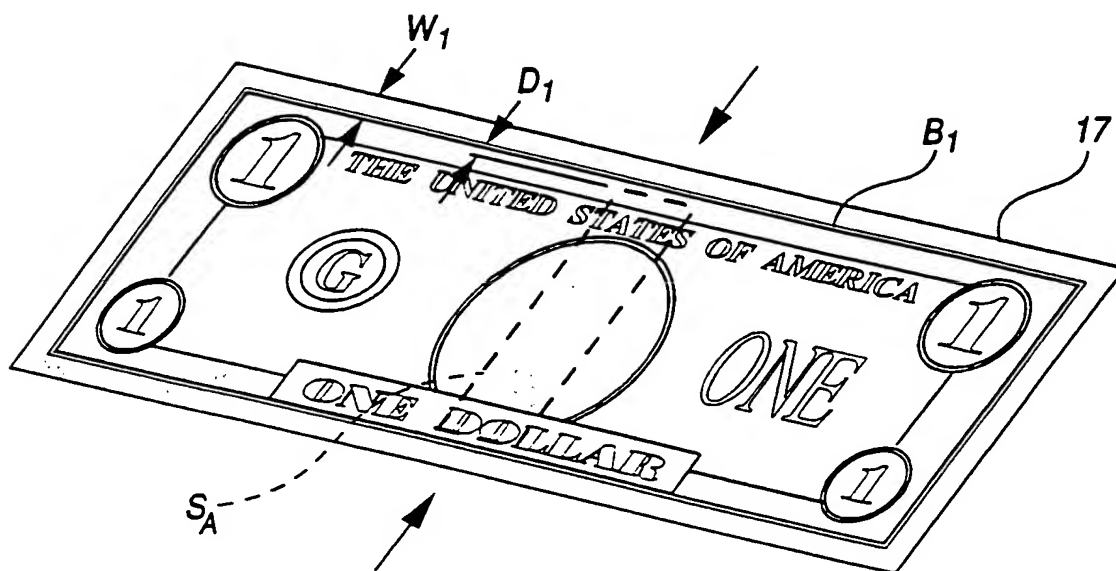


FIG. 6a

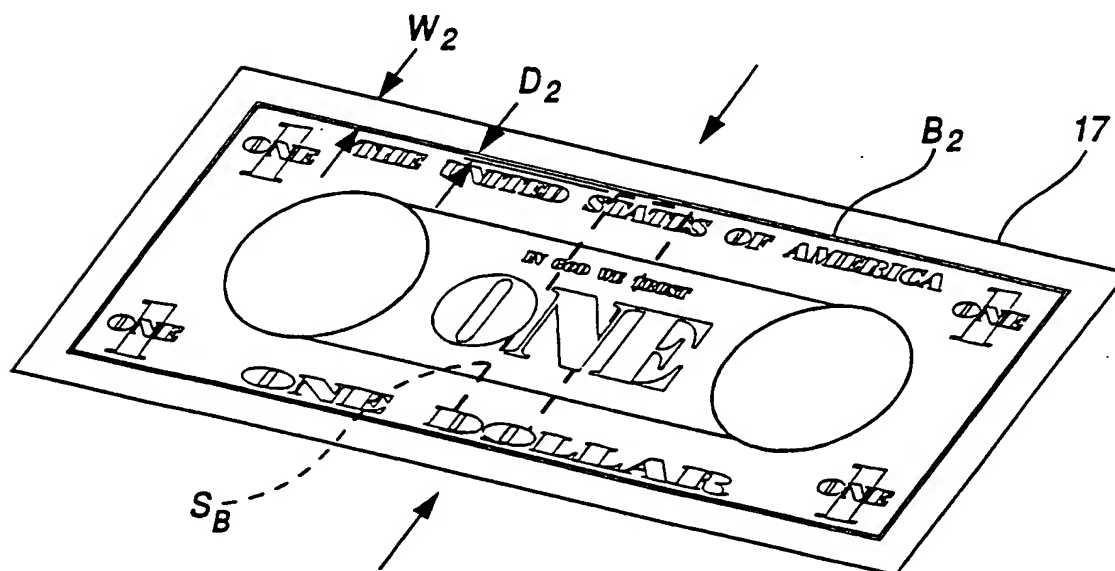
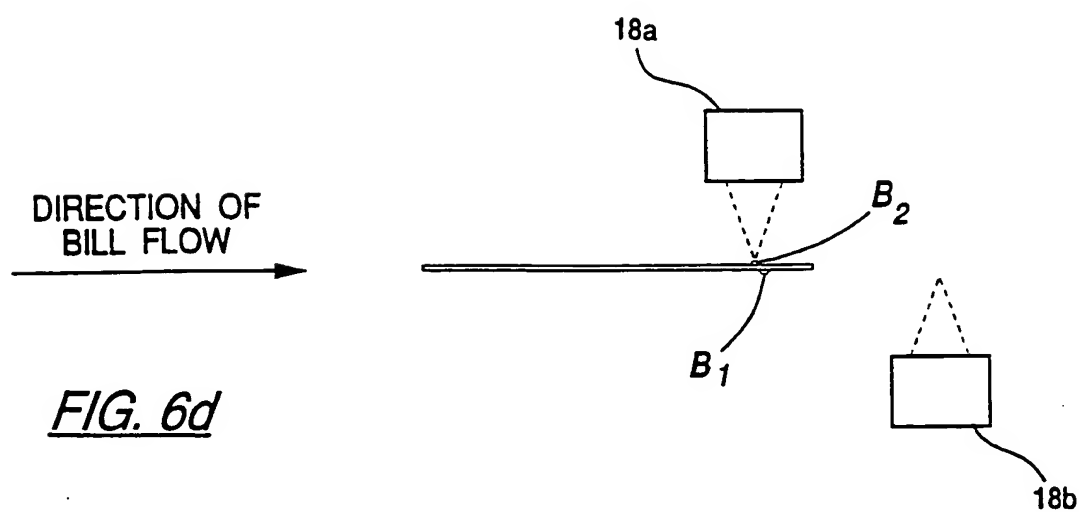
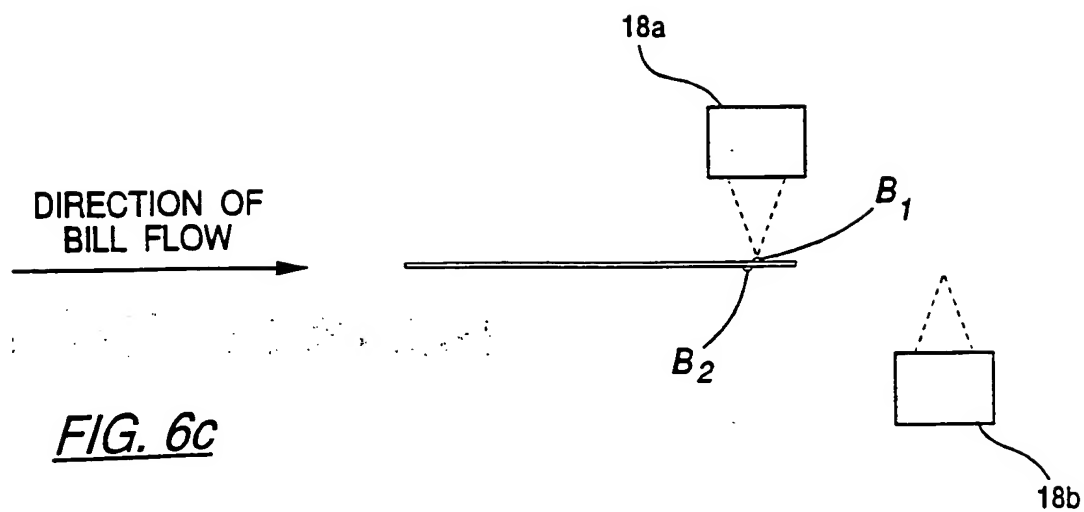


FIG. 6b

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

9 / 77



THIS PAGE IS BLANK

10 / 77

FIG. 7a

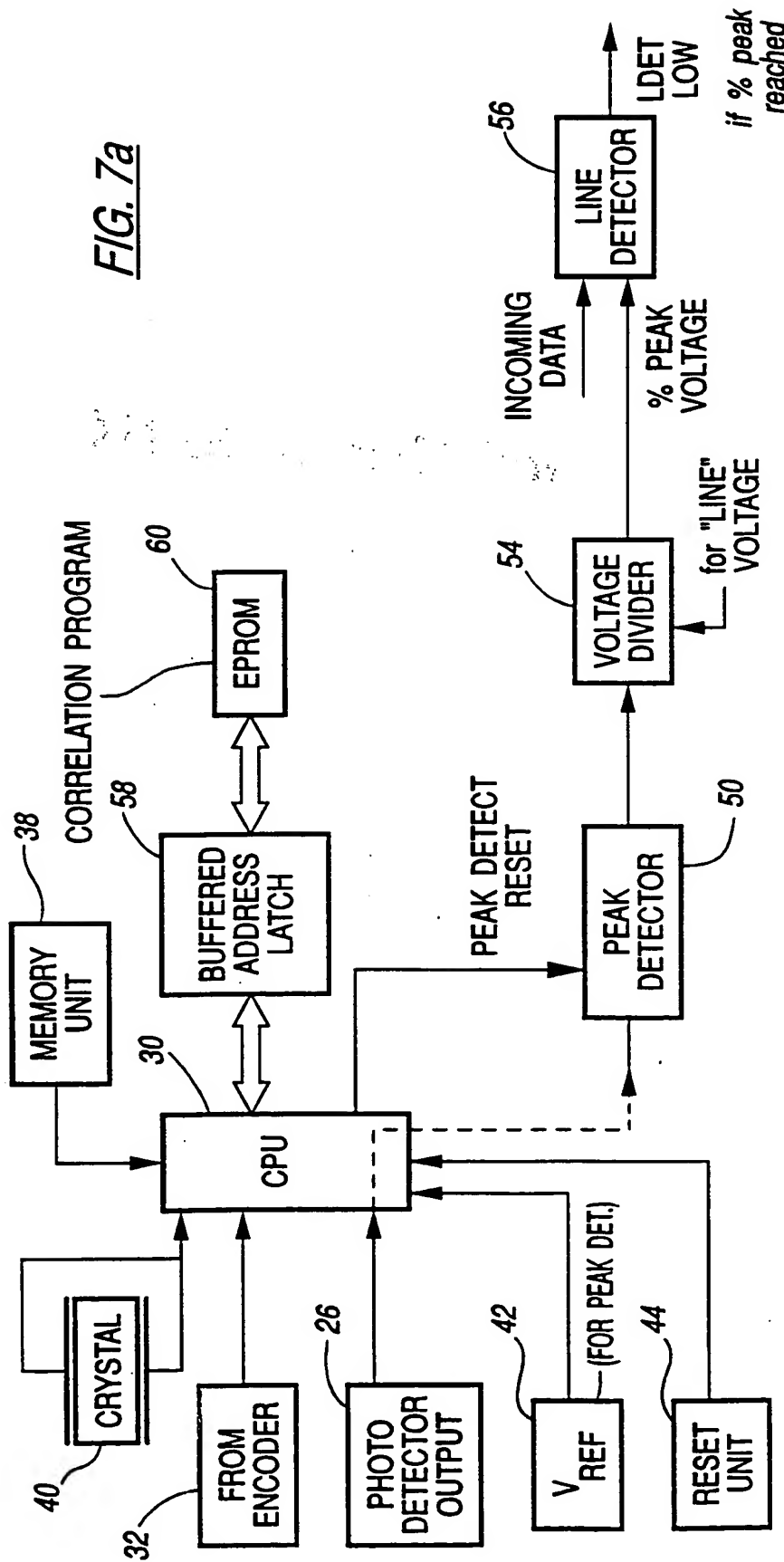
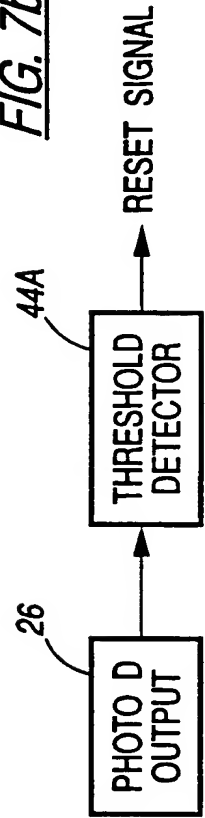
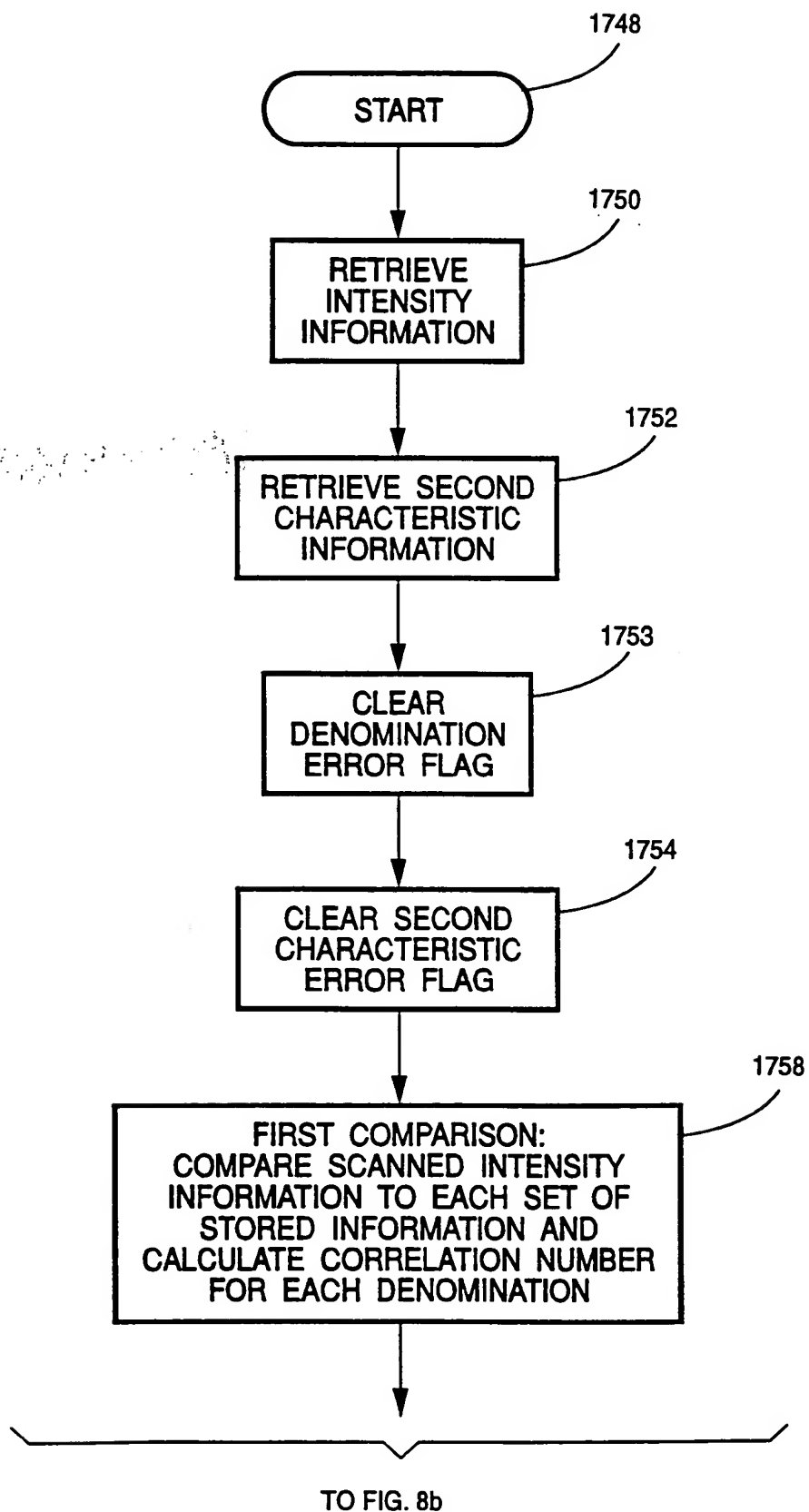


FIG. 7b



THIS PAGE IS BLANK

11 / 77

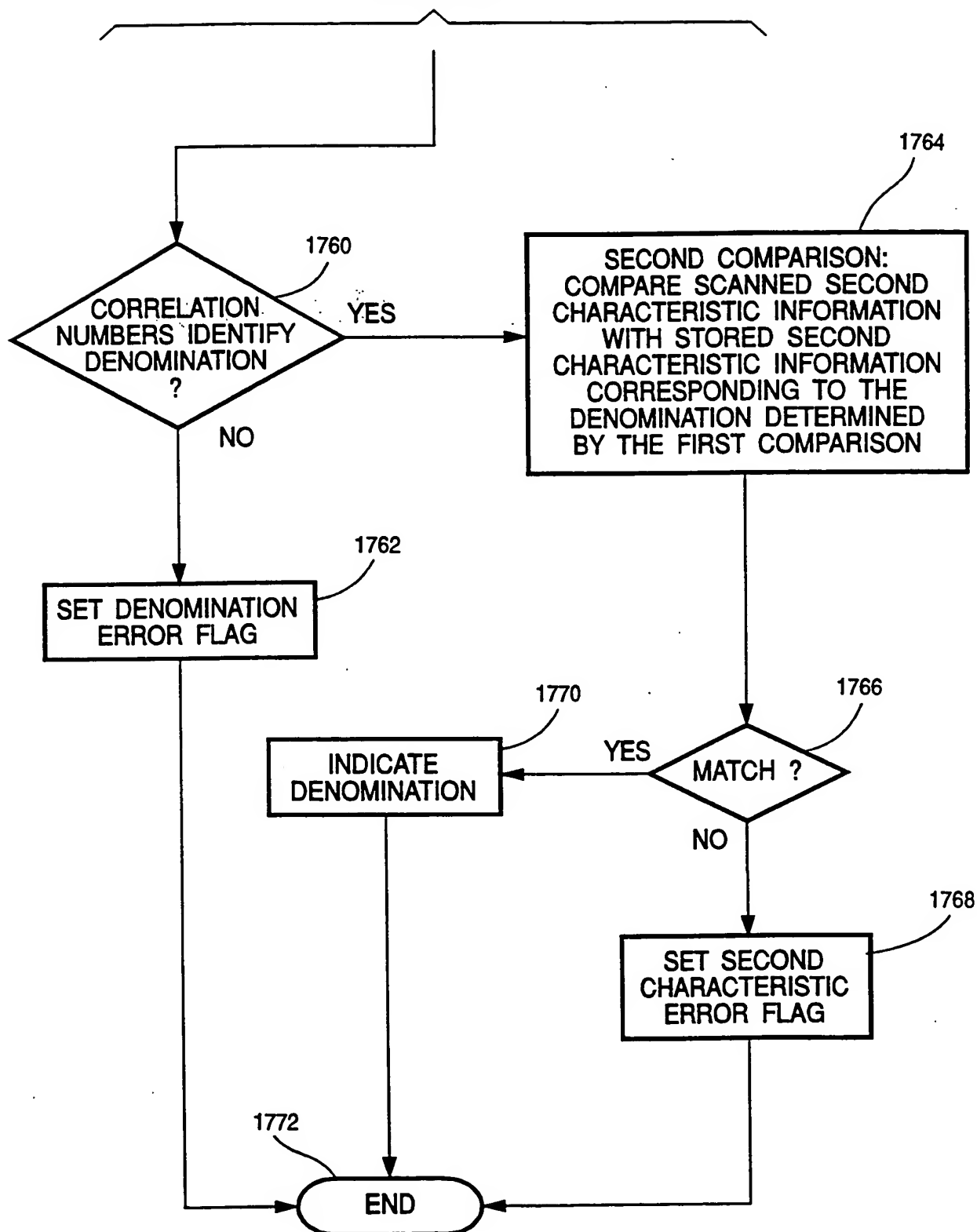
*FIG. 8a*

THIS PAGE IS BLANK



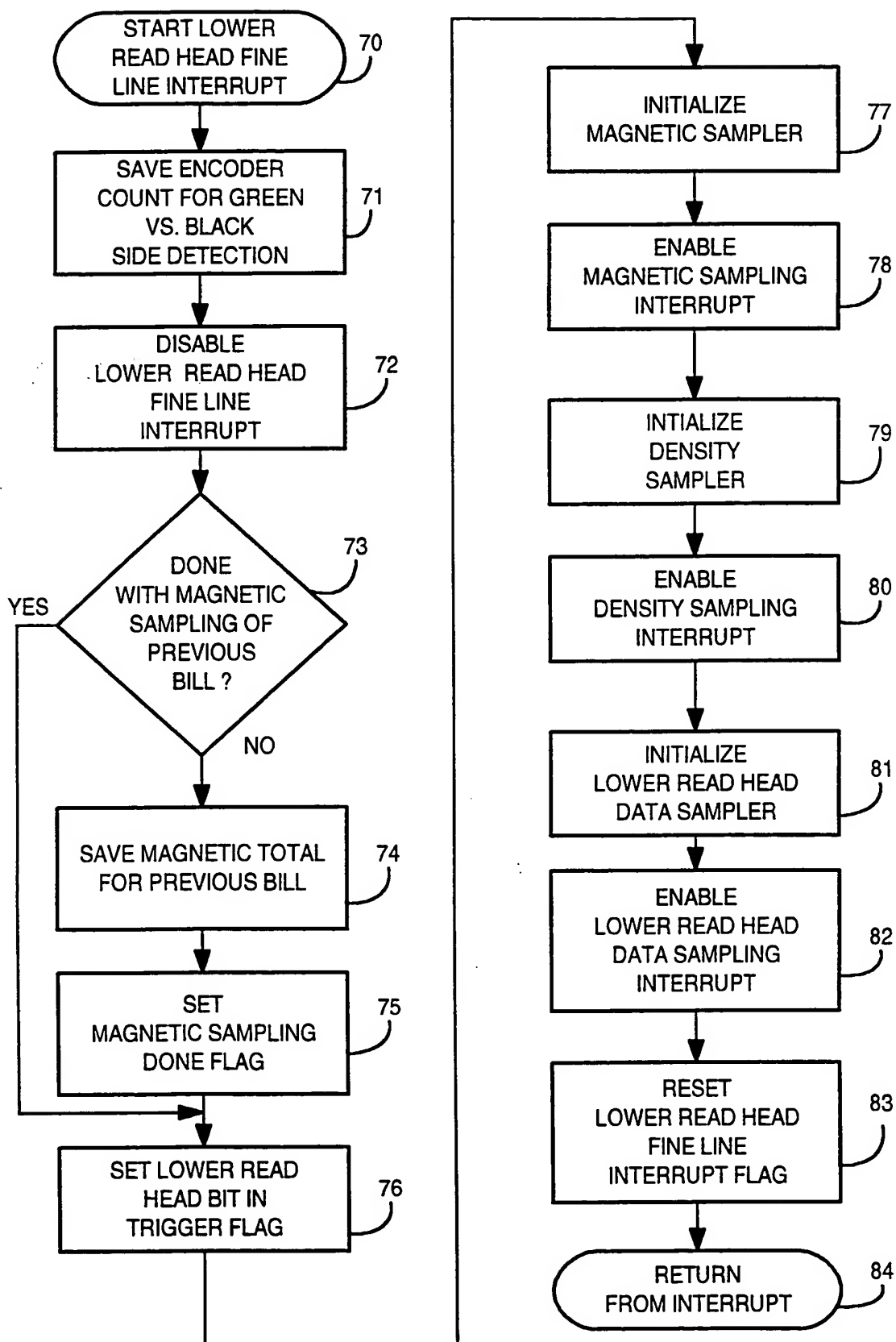
12 / 77

FROM FIG. 8a

*FIG. 8b*

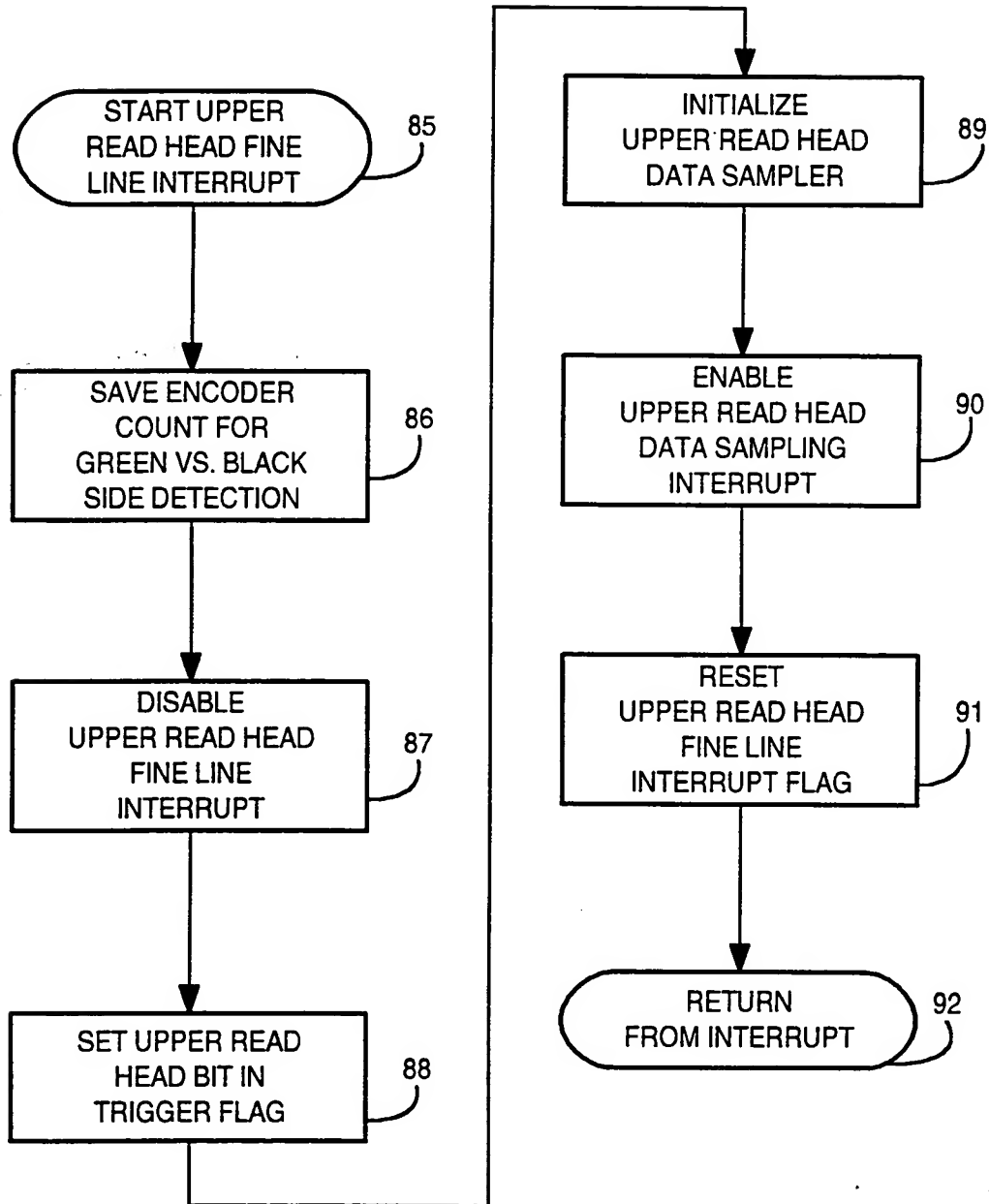
**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

13 / 77

*FIG. 9*

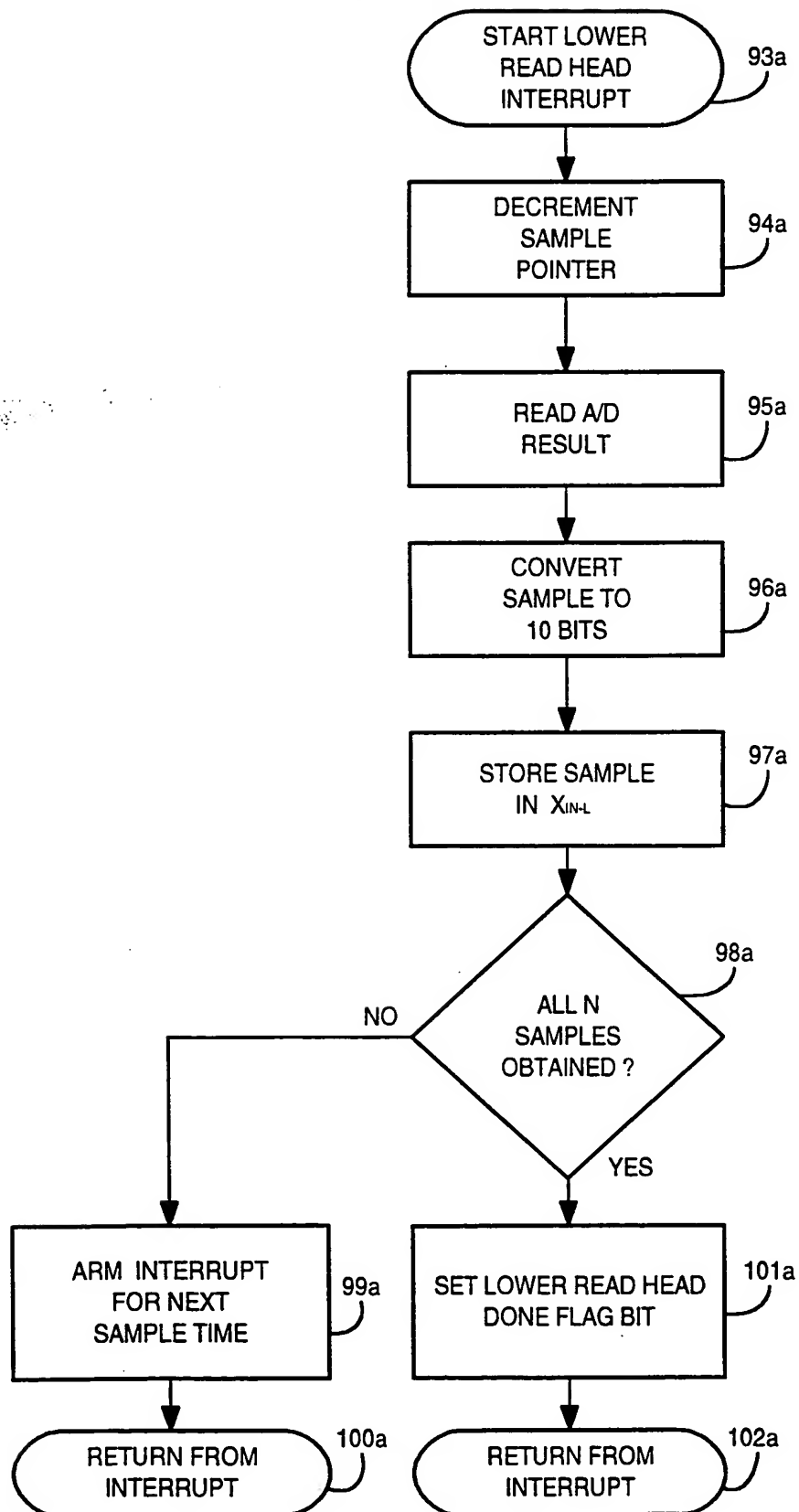
THIS PAGE IS BLANK

14 / 77

FIG. 10

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

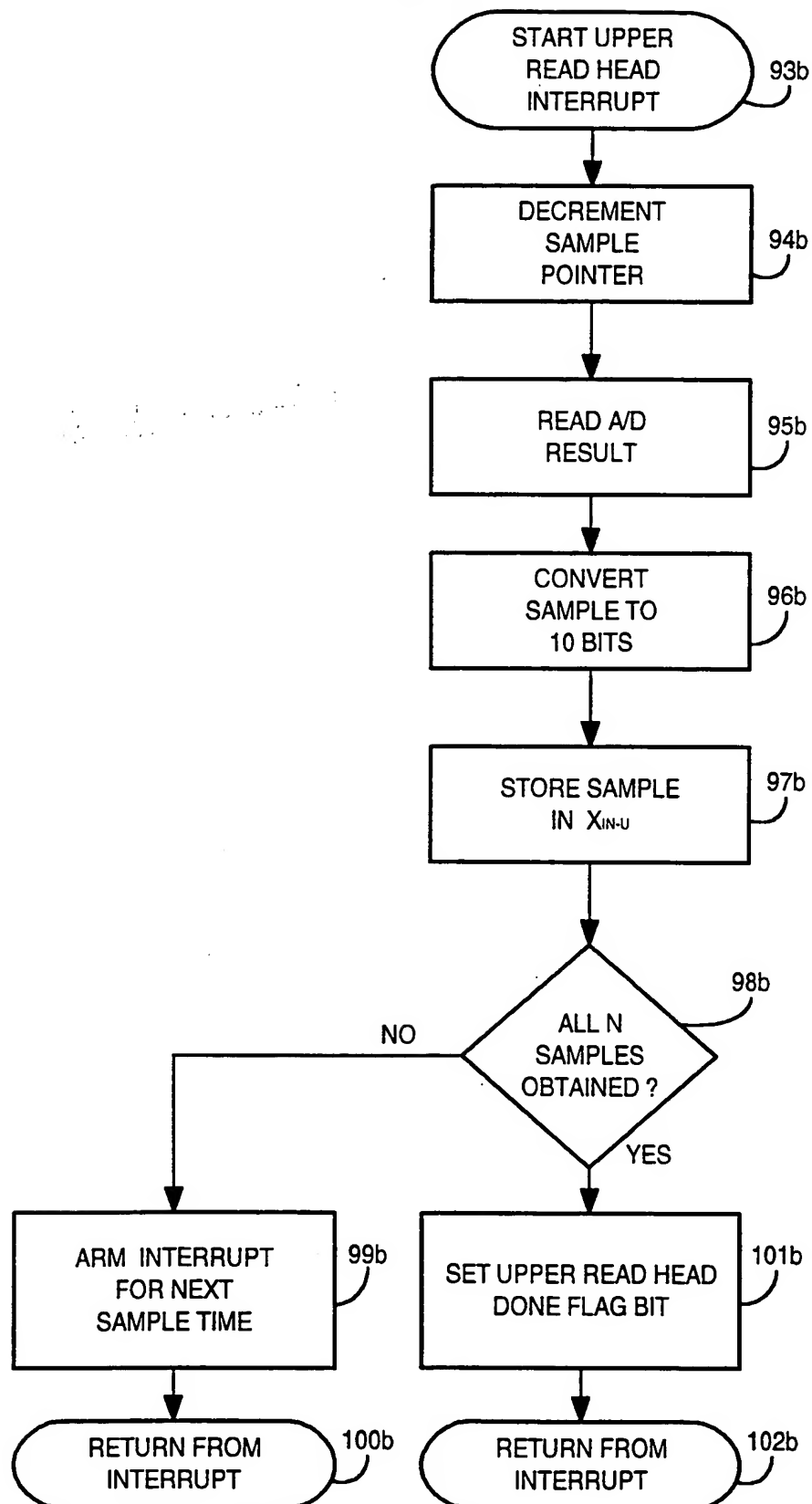
15 / 77

*FIG. 11a*

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

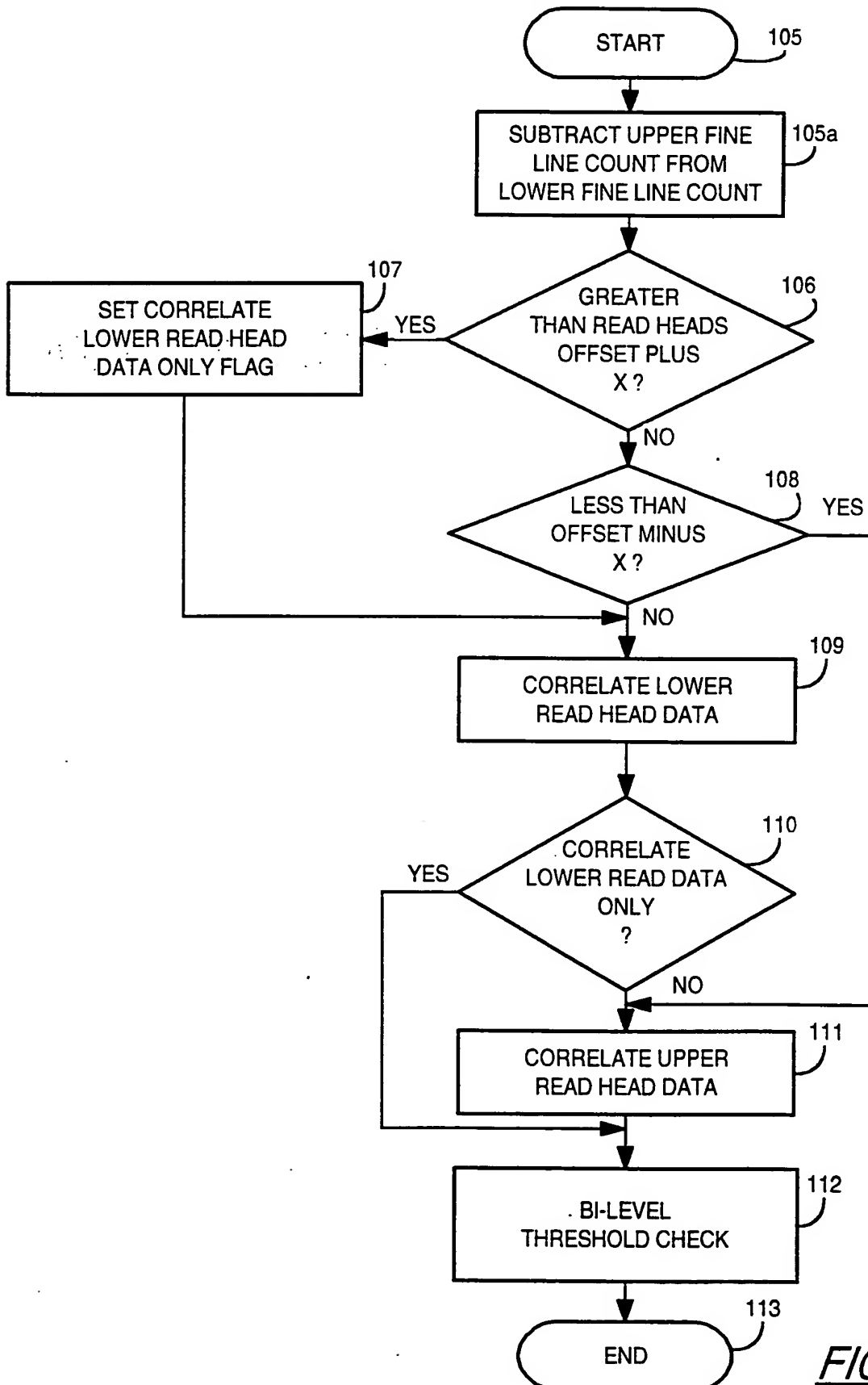


16 / 77

*FIG. 11b*

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

17 / 77

*FIG. 12*

THIS PAGE IS BLANK

18 / 77

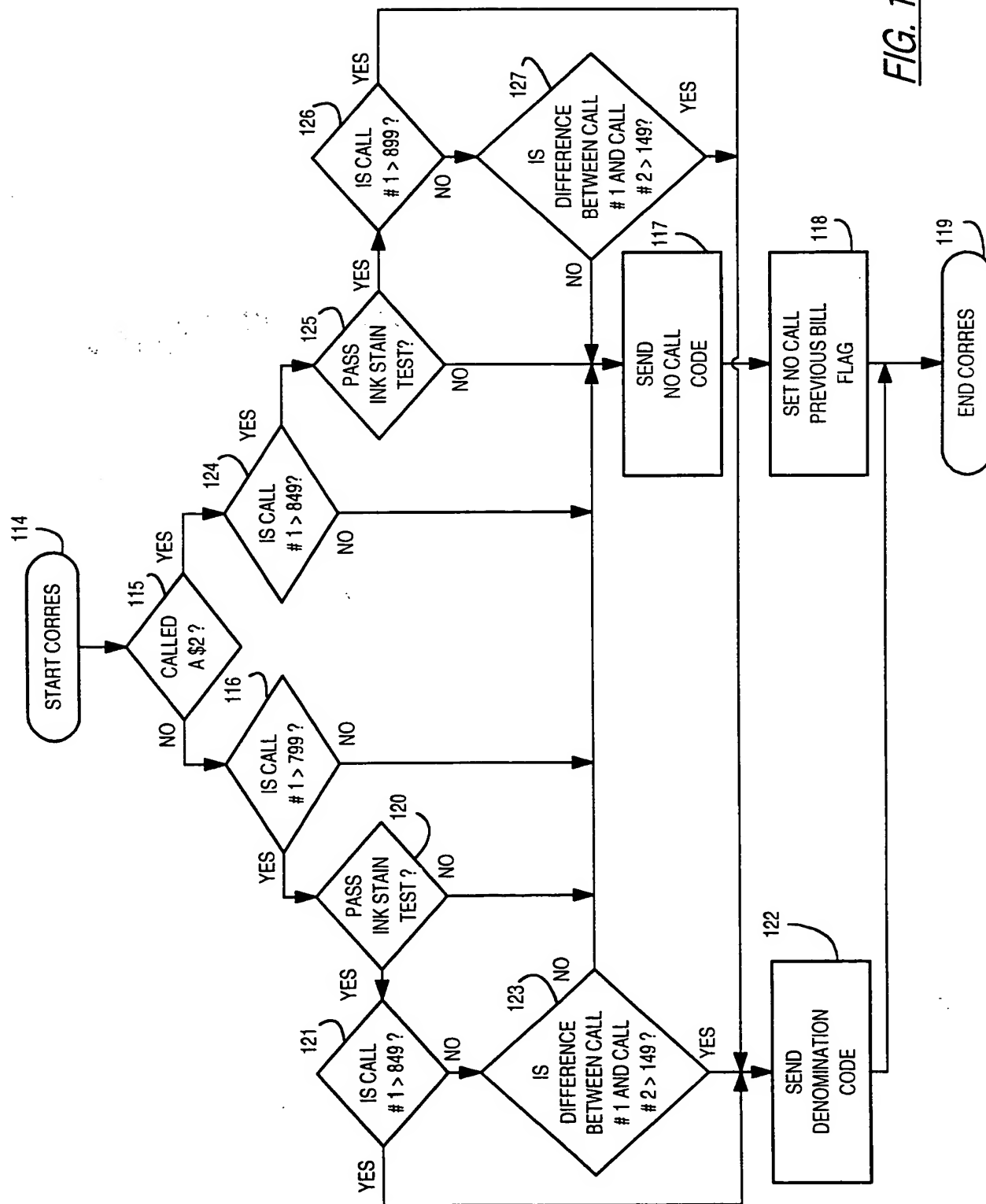
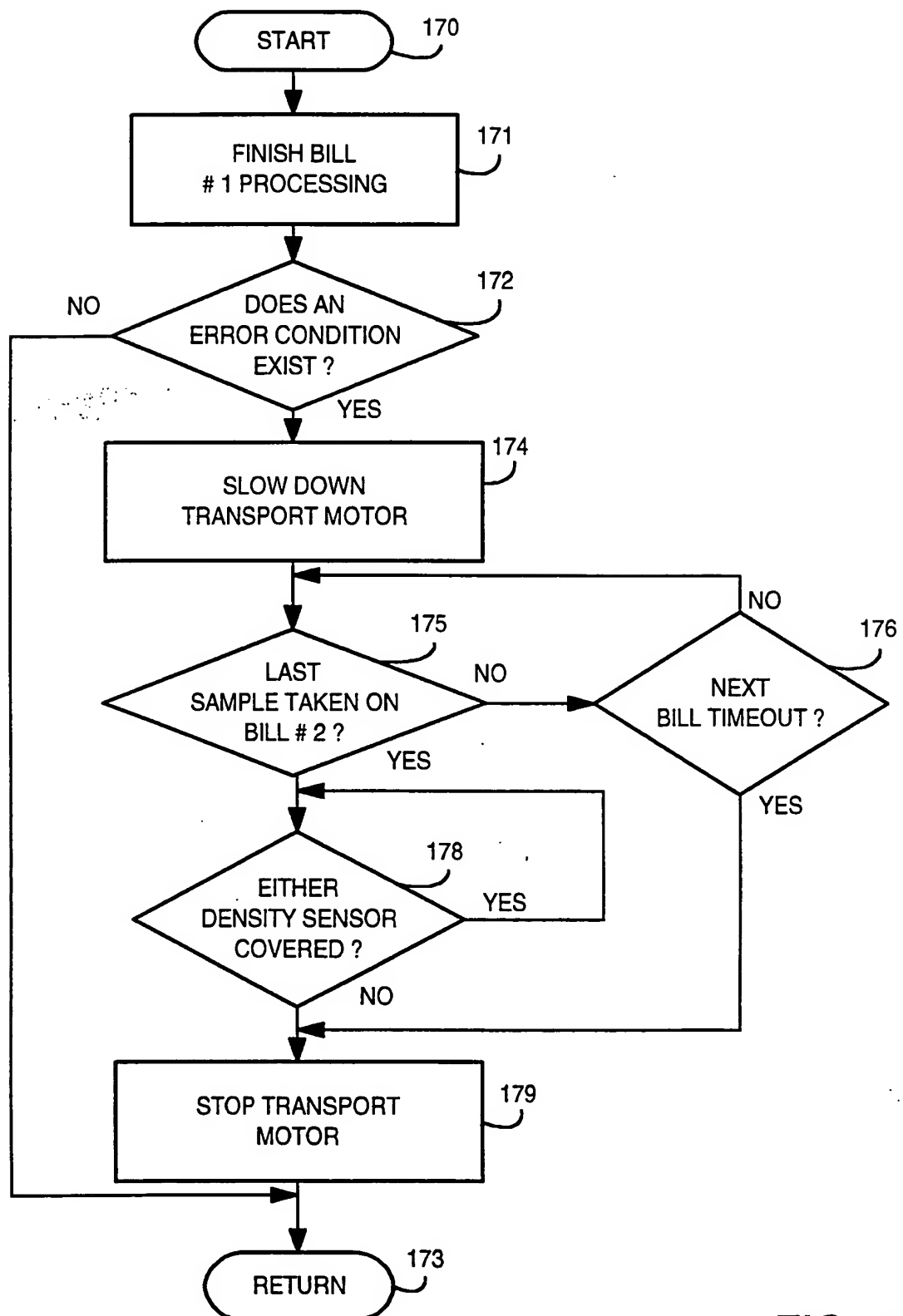


FIG. 13

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

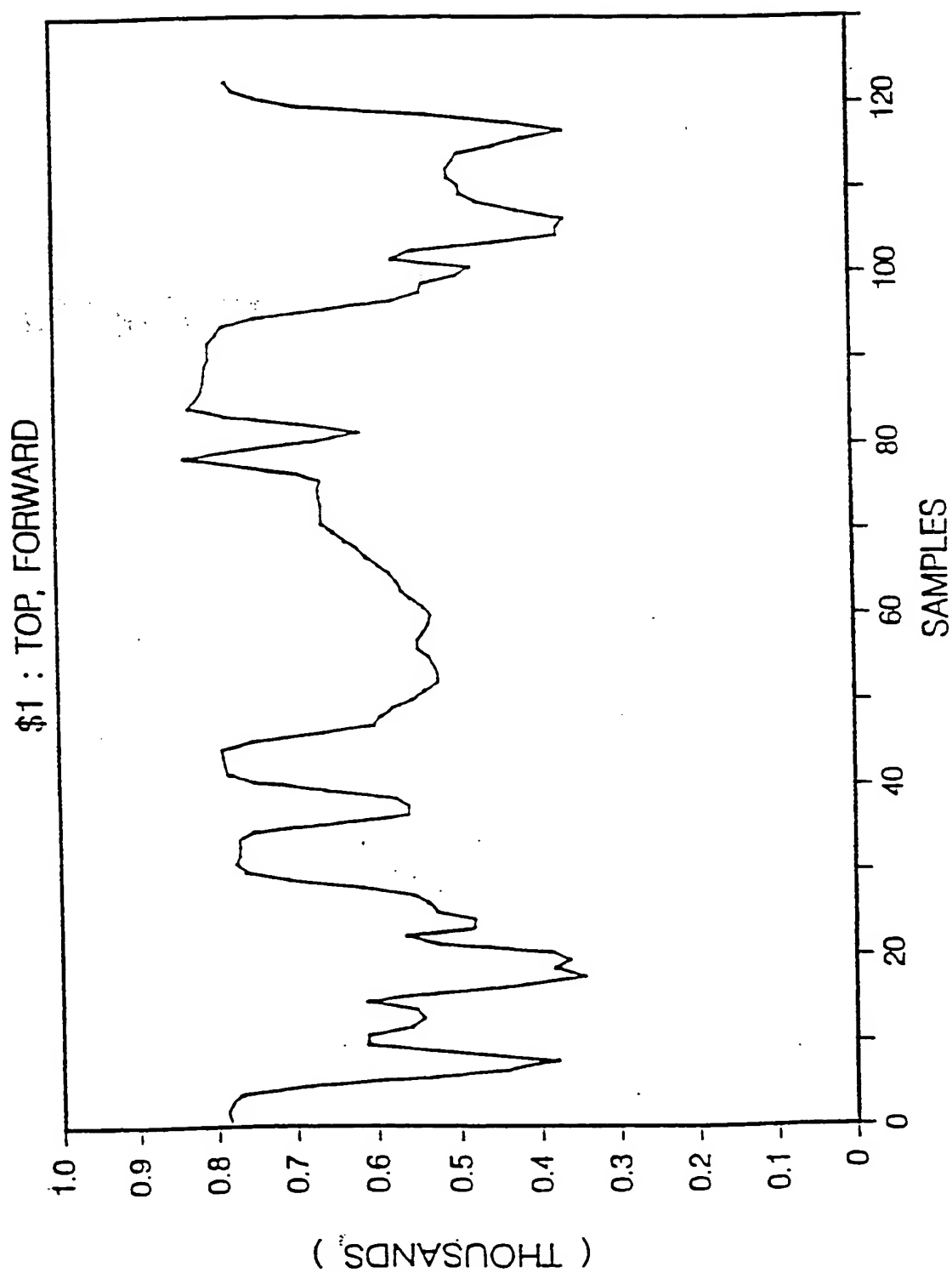
19 / 77

*FIG. 14*

THIS PAGE IS BLANK

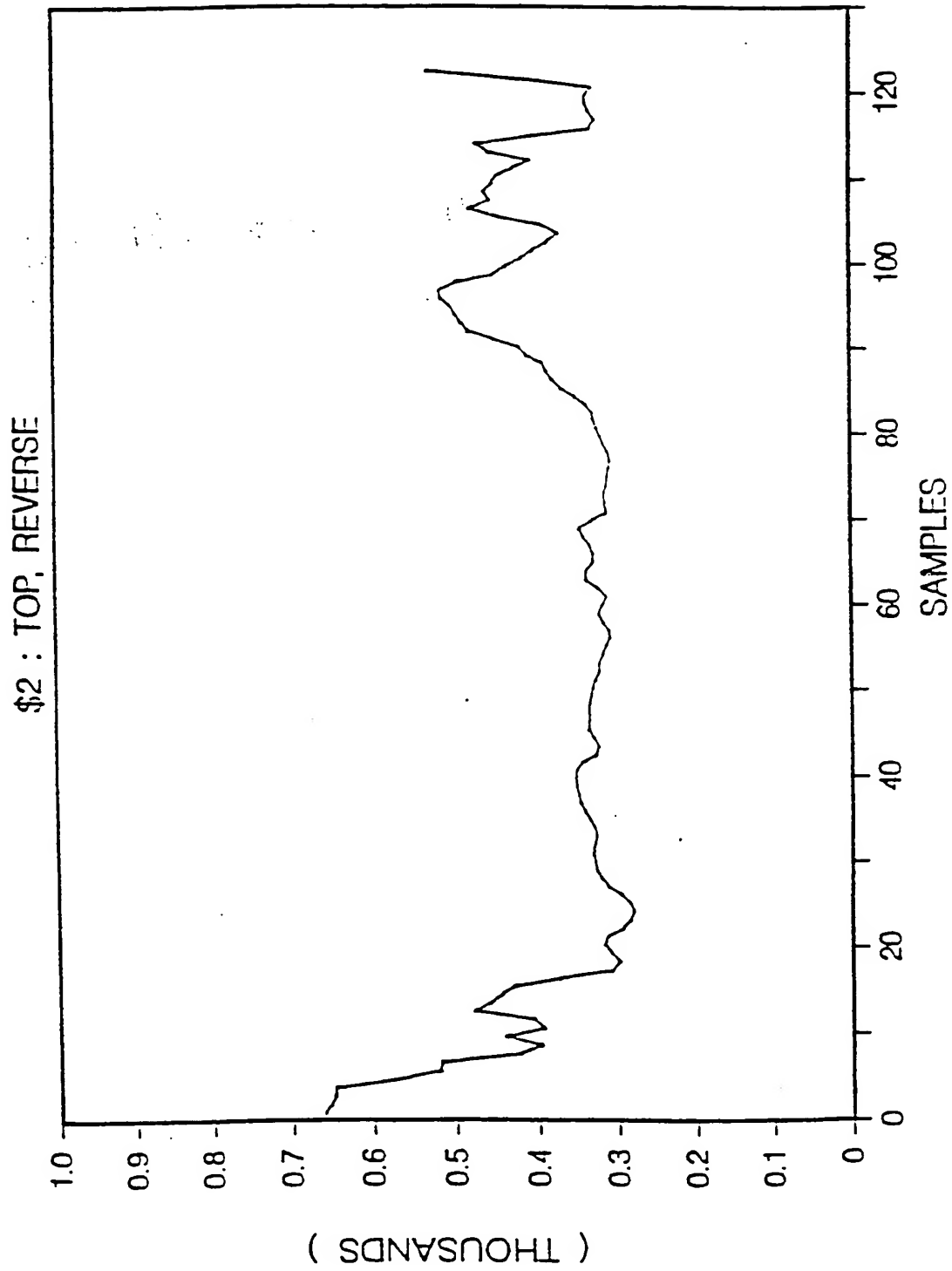


20 / 77

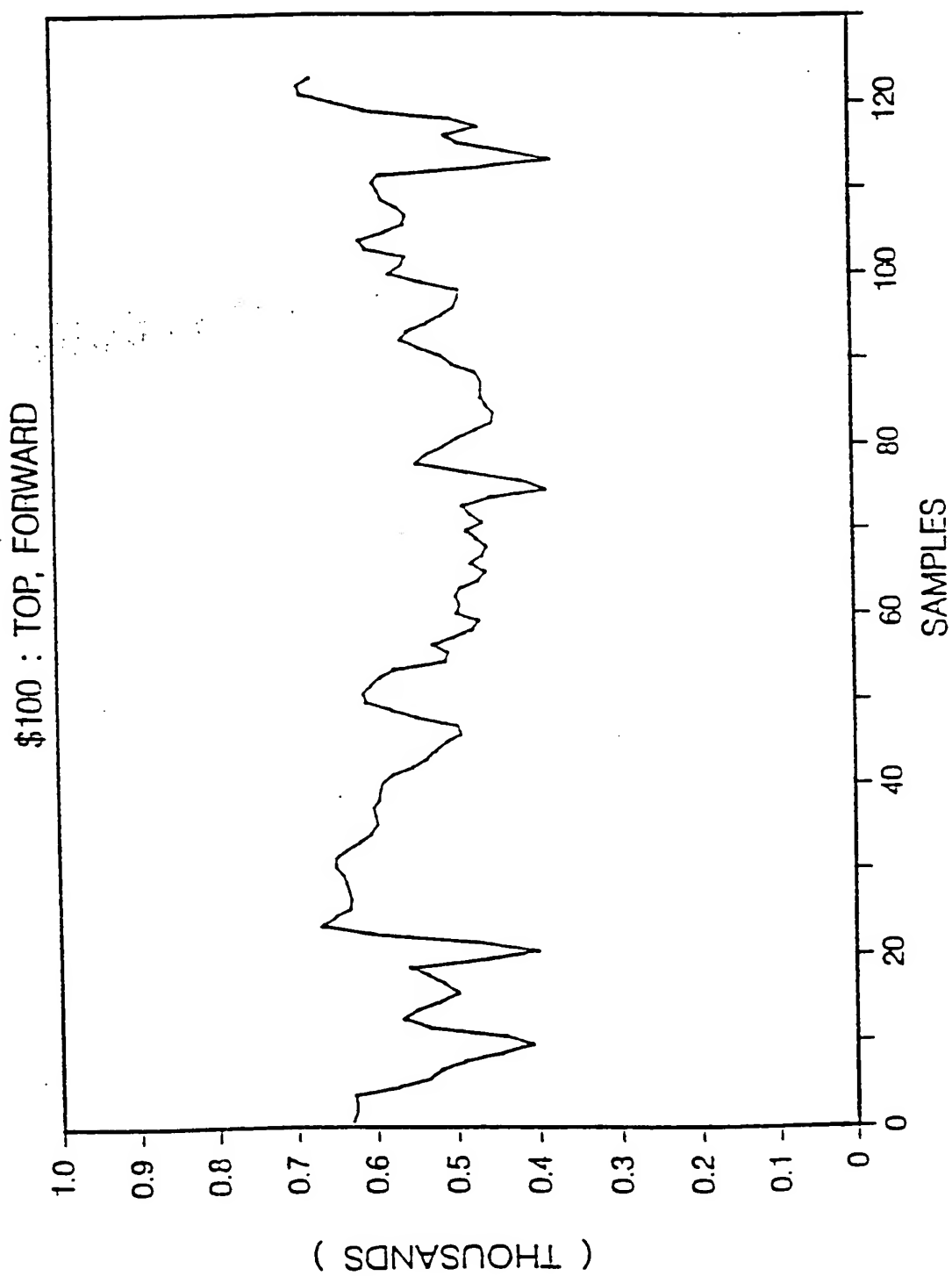
FIG. 15a

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

21 / 77

FIG. 15b

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

FIG. 15c

THIS PAGE IS BLANK

# 20 Dollar Bill

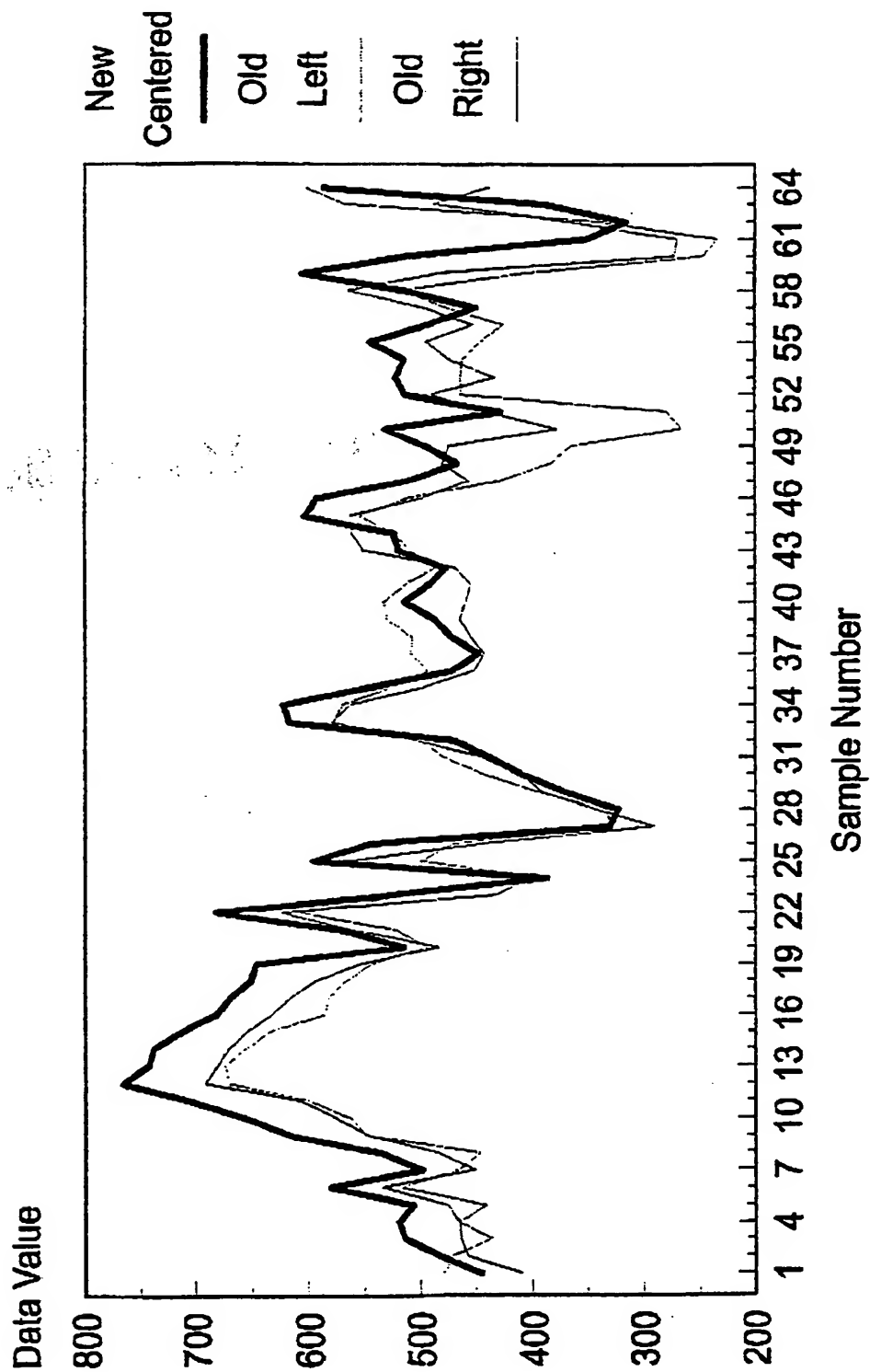
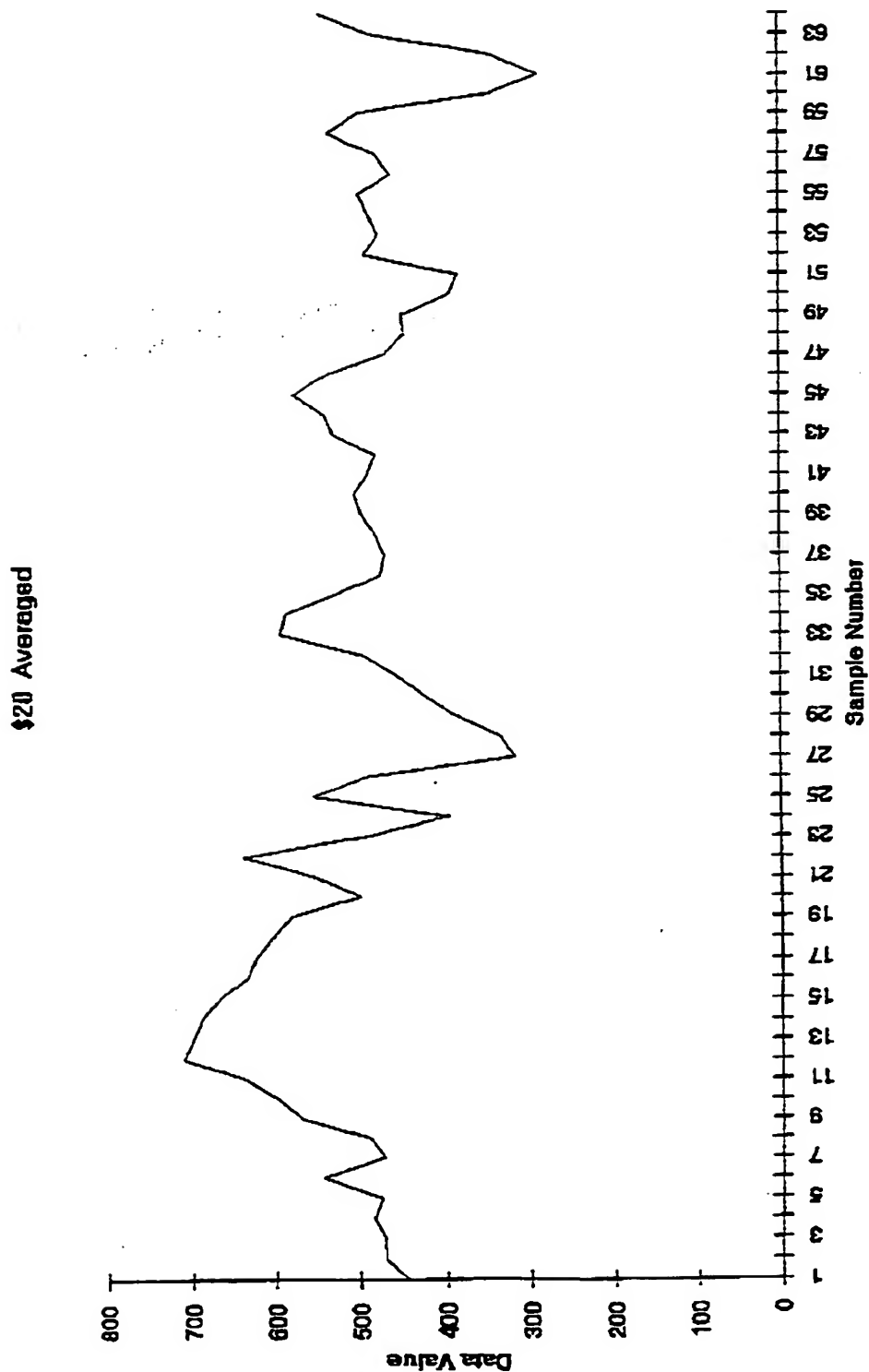


FIG. 15d

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



24 / 77

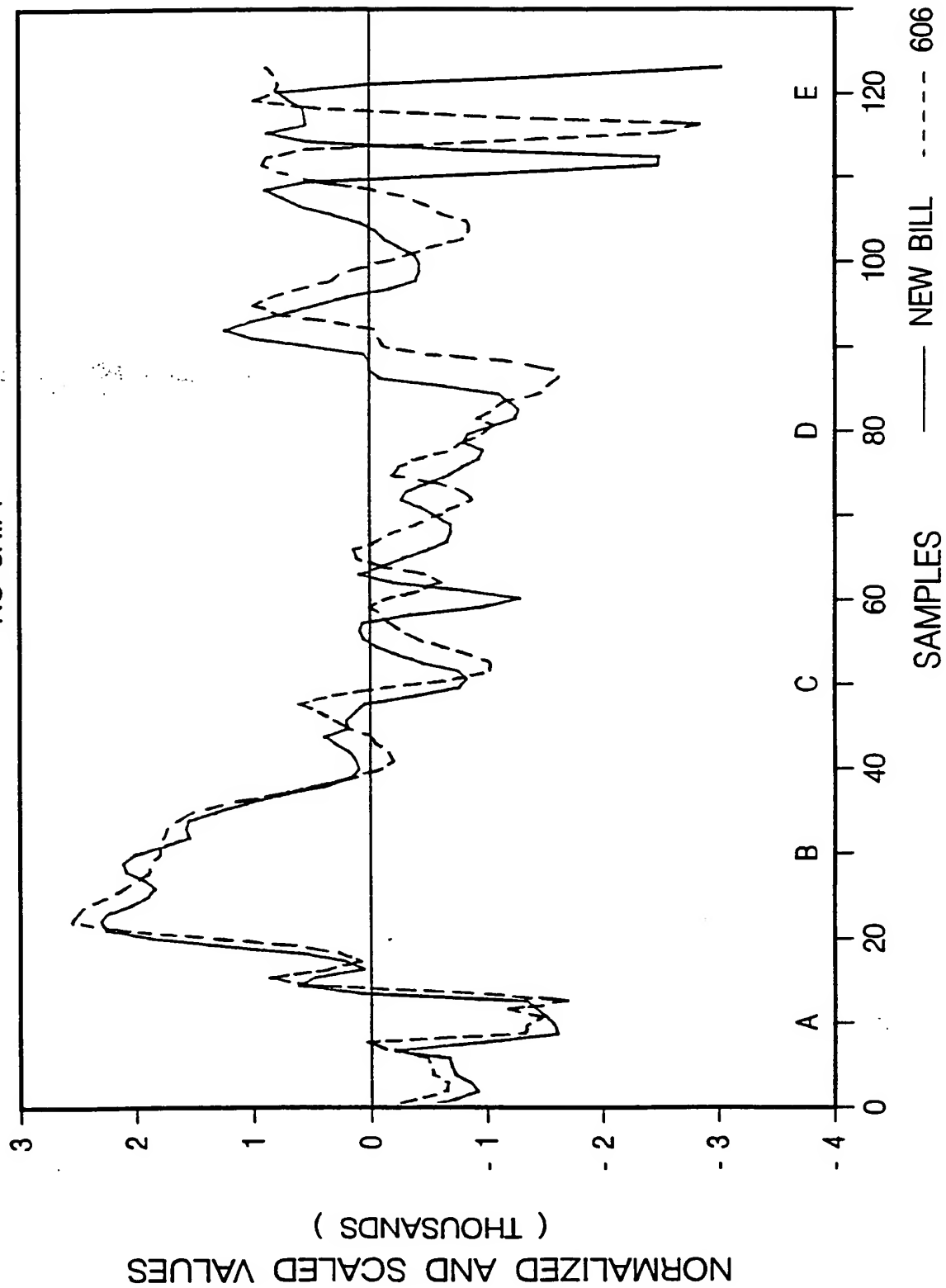


**FIG. 15e**

THIS PAGE IS BLANK

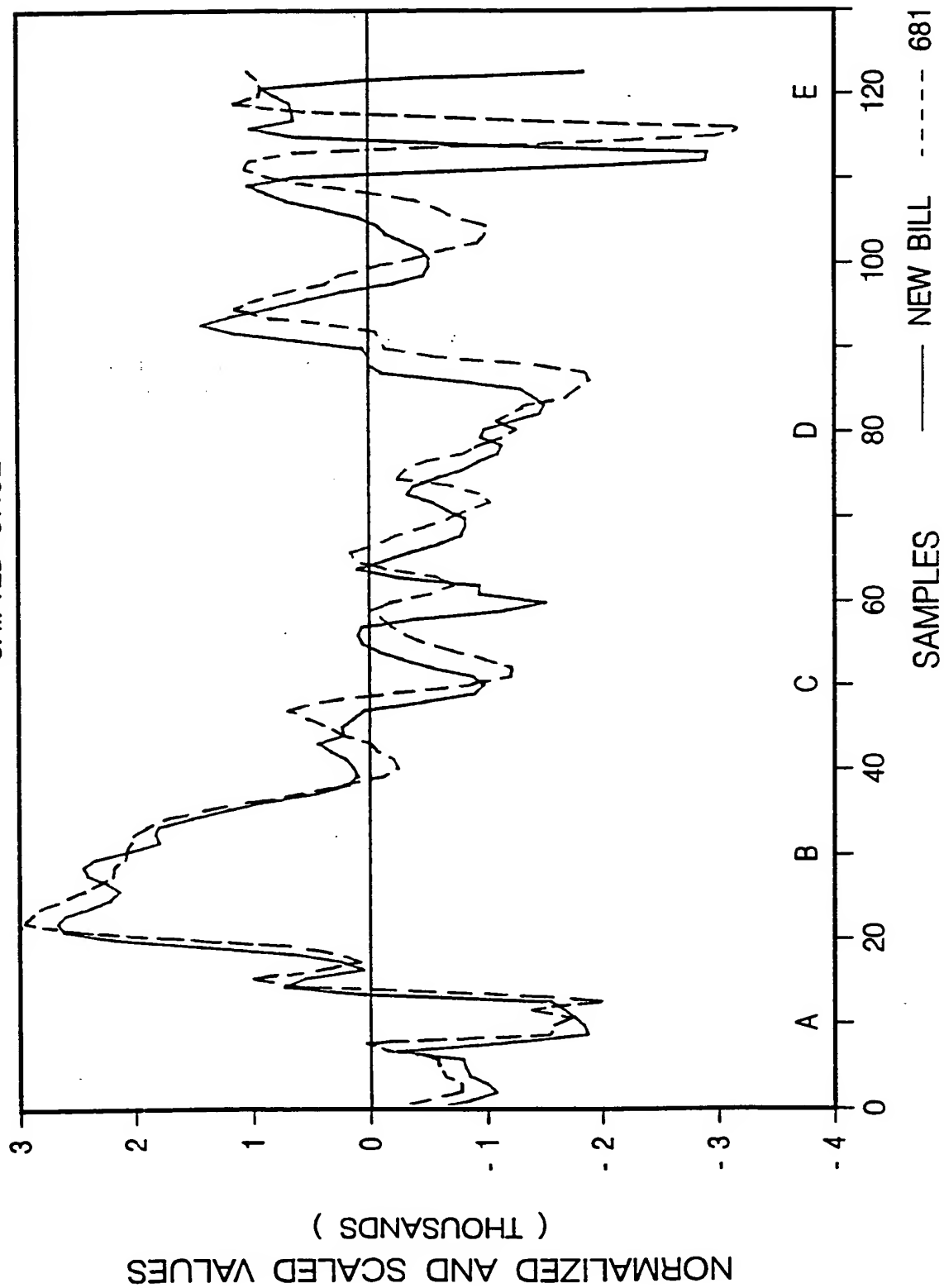
FIG. 16a

PROGRESSIVE SHIFTING  
NO SHIFT



**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

**FIG. 16b**  
**PROGRESSIVE SHIFTING**  
**SHIFTED ONCE**

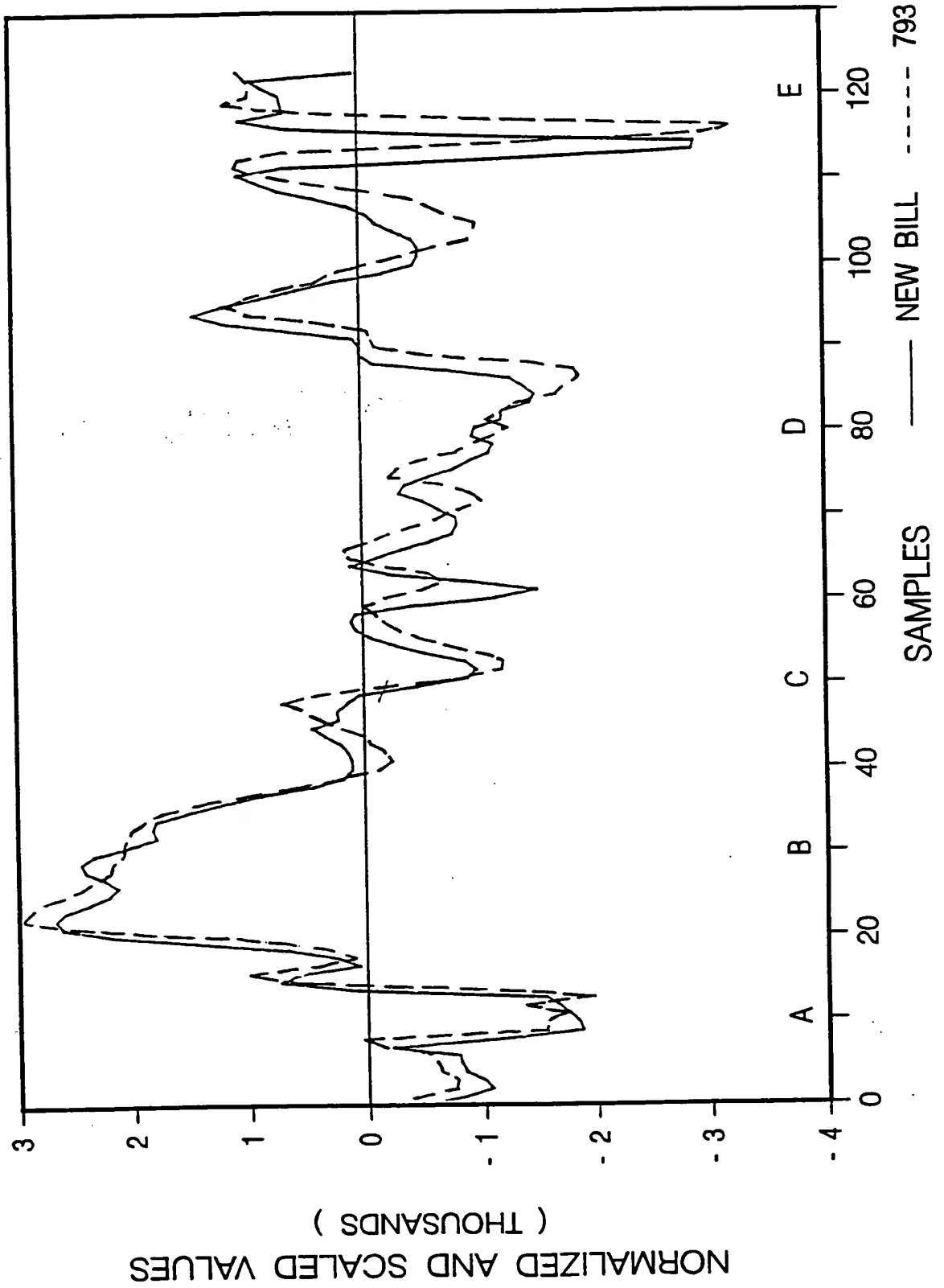


**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

27 / 77

FIG. 16c

PROGRESSIVE SHIFTING  
SHIFTED TWICE

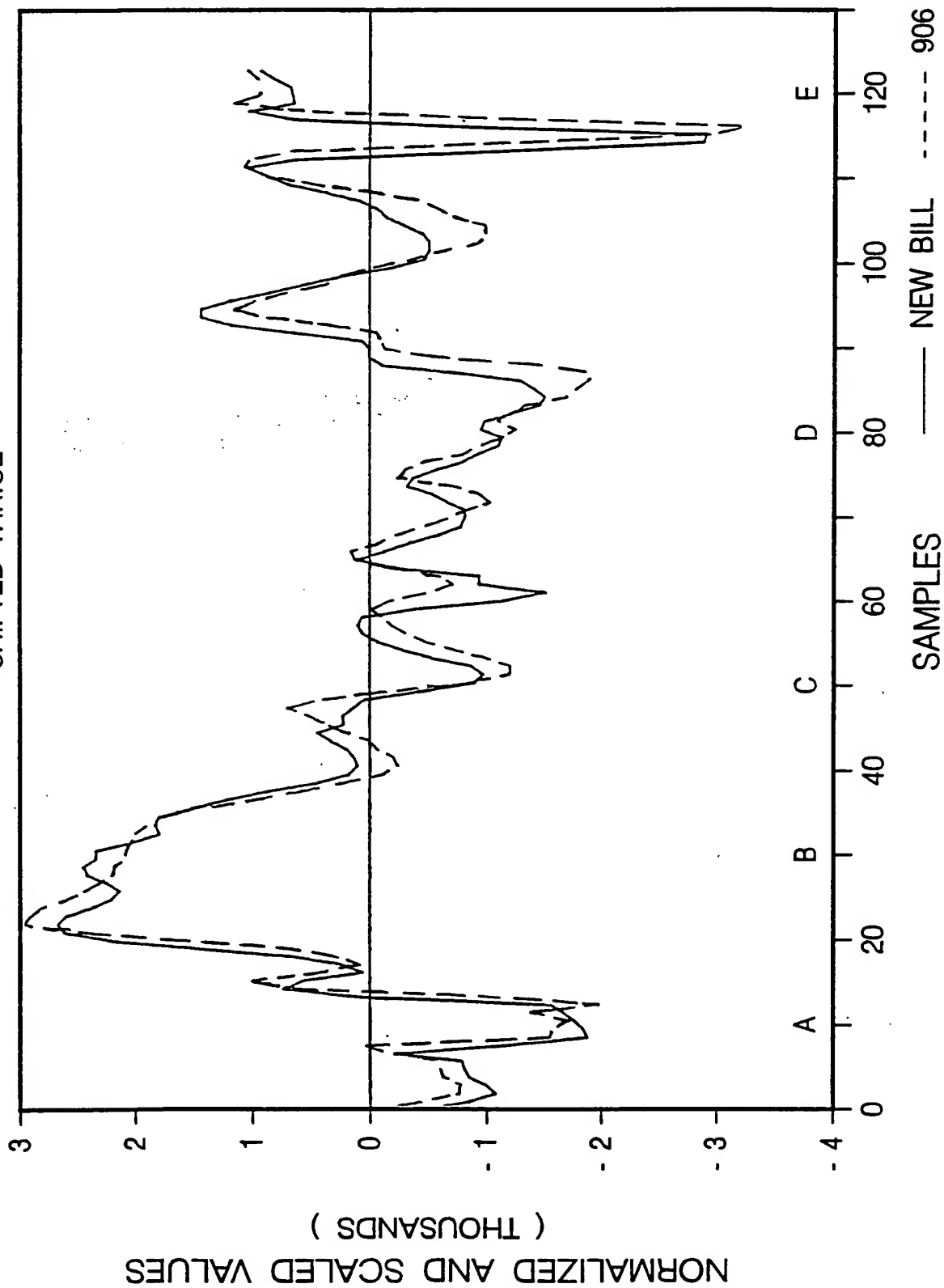


**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



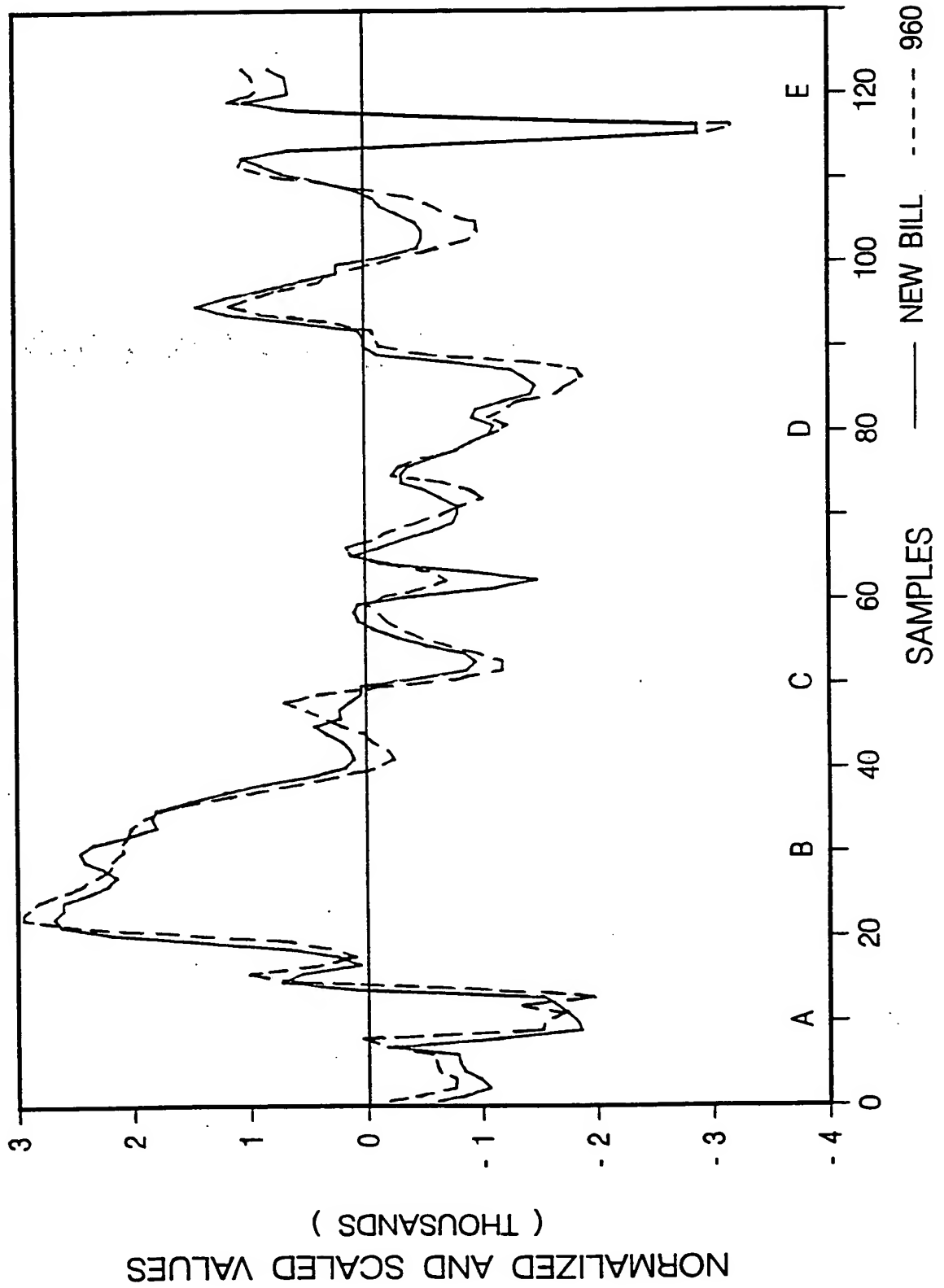
**FIG. 16d**

PROGRESSIVE SHIFTING  
SHIFTED THRICE



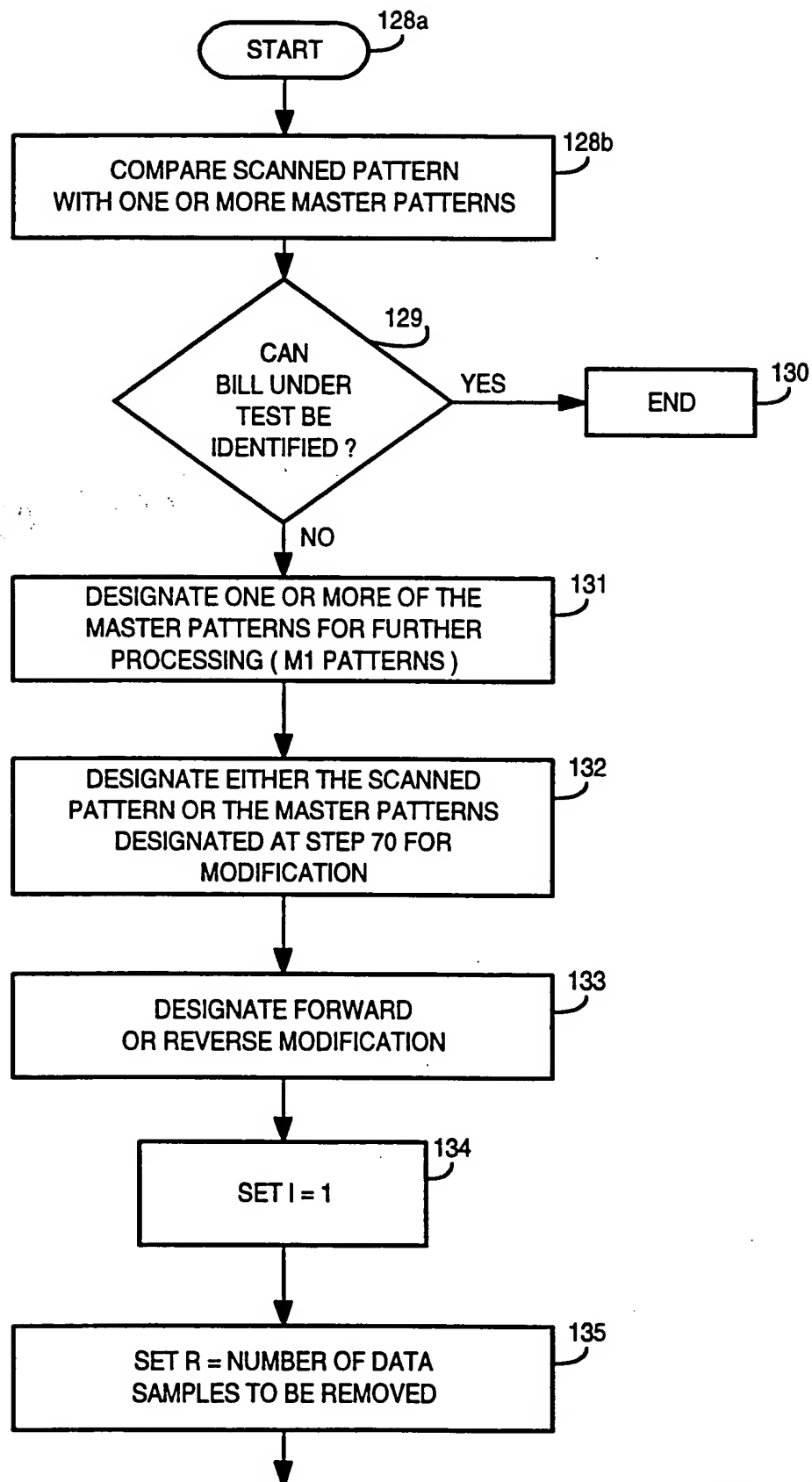
**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

29 / 77

**FIG. 16e****PROGRESSIVE SHIFTING  
SHIFTED FOUR TIMES**

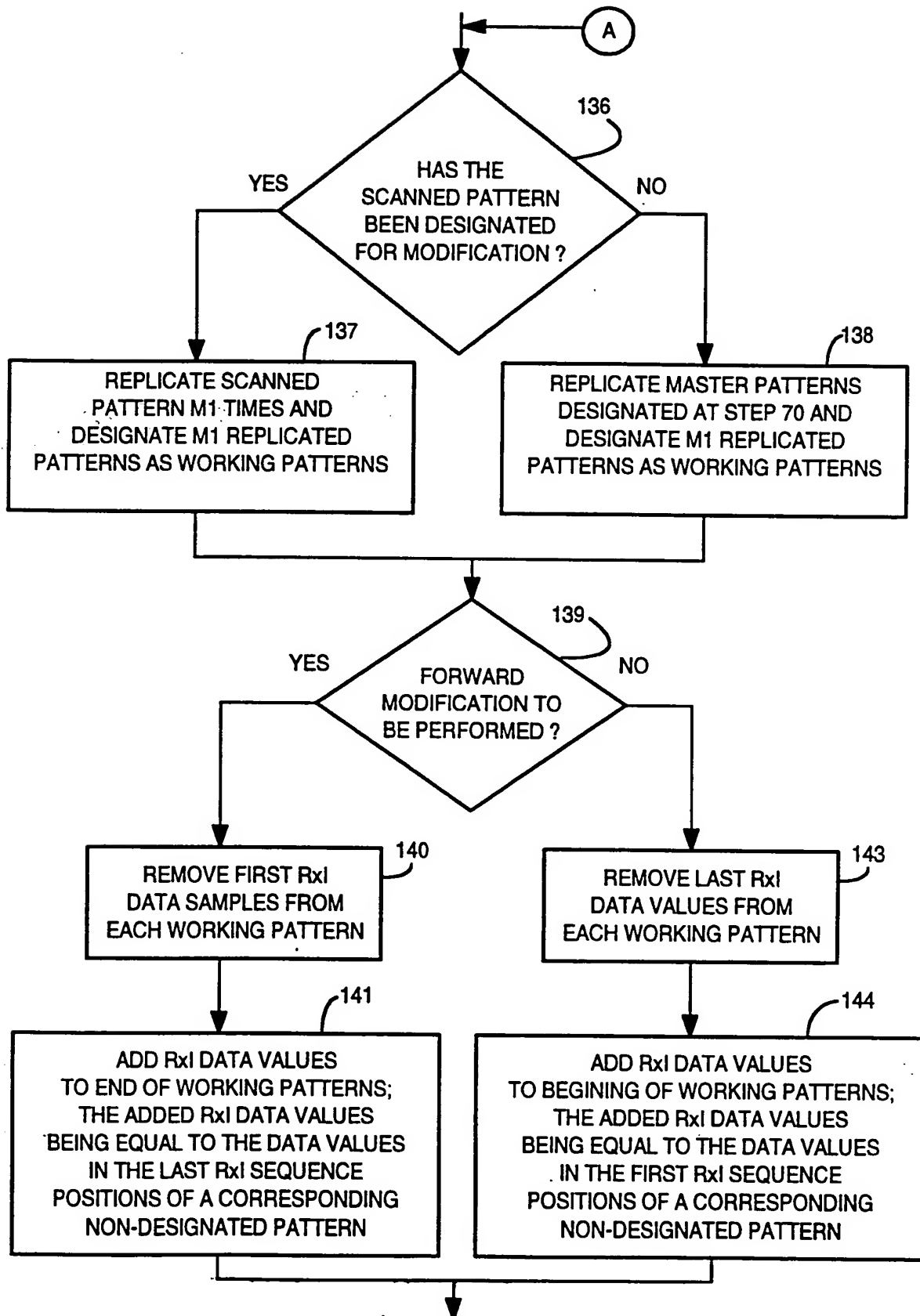
**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

30 / 77

*FIG. 17a*

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

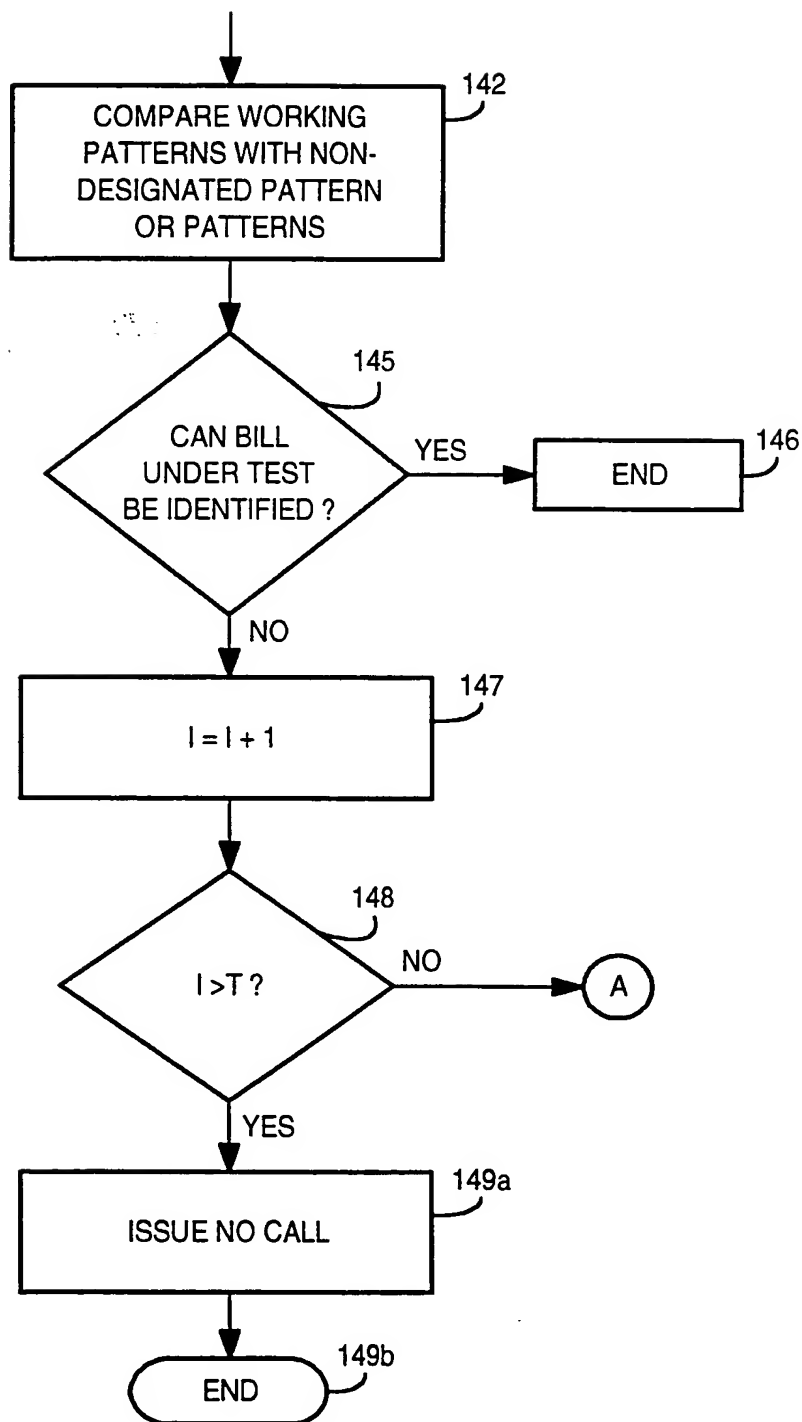
31 / 77

*FIG. 17b*

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



32 / 77

FIG. 17c

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

33 / 77

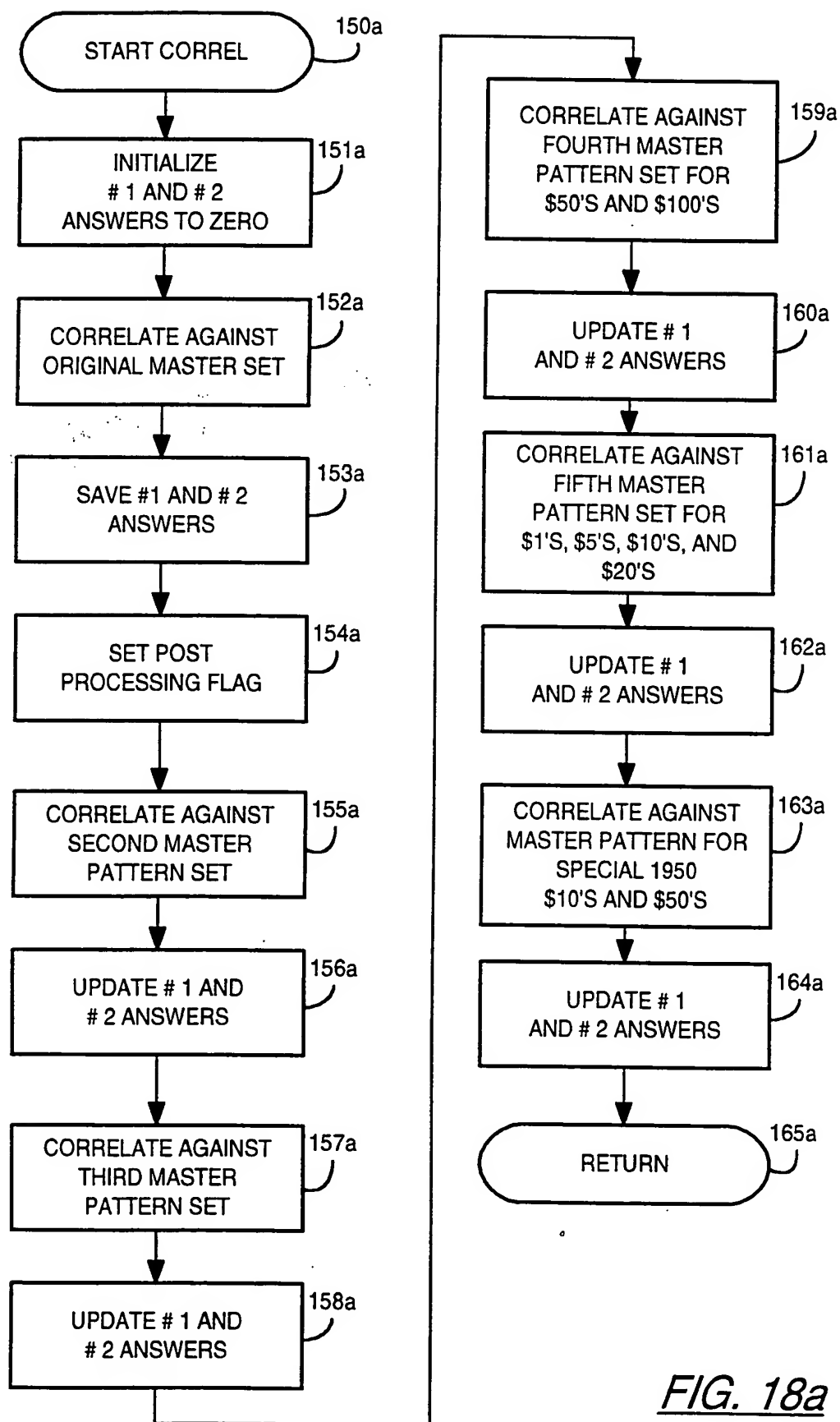
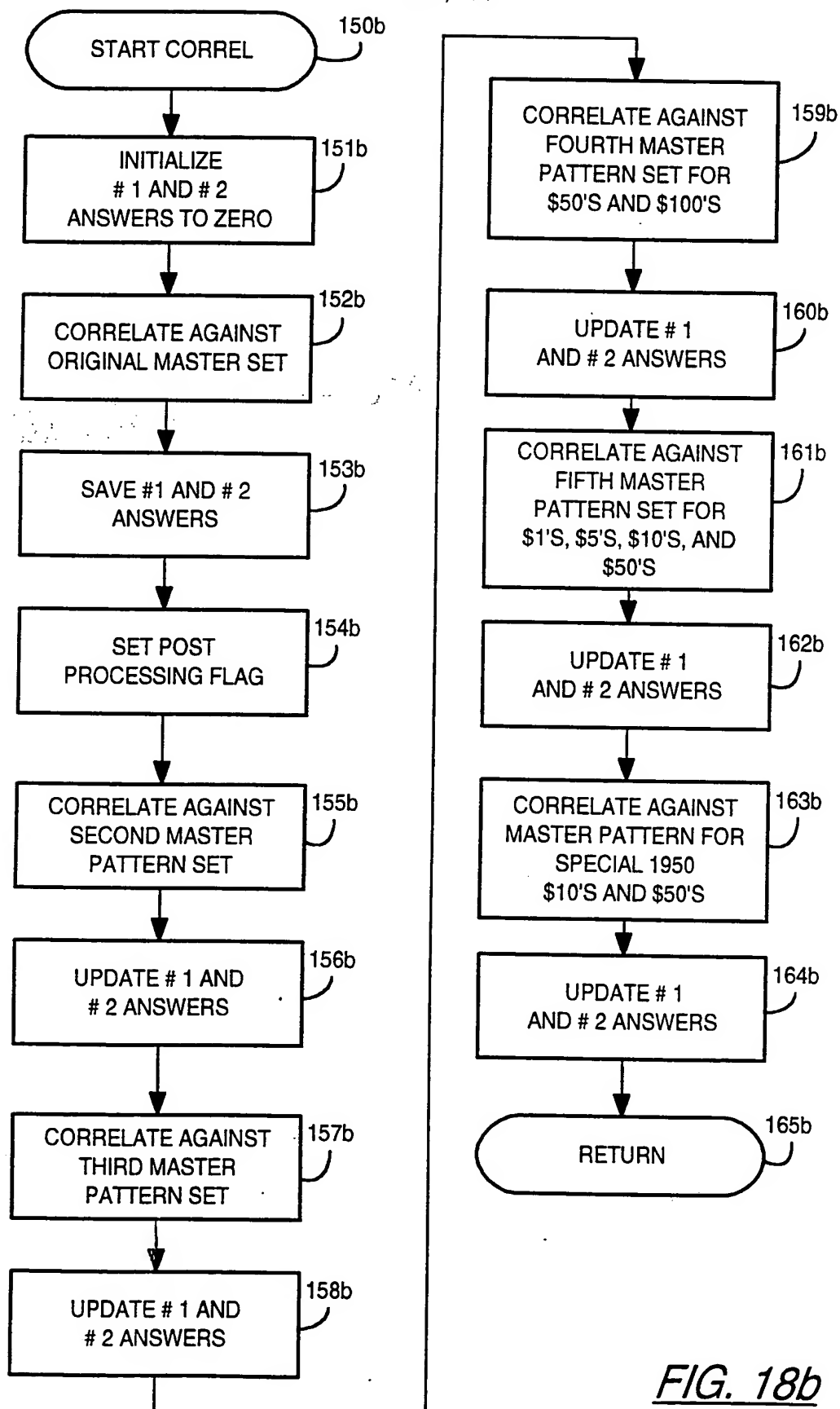


FIG. 18a

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

34 / 77

*FIG. 18b*

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

35 / 77

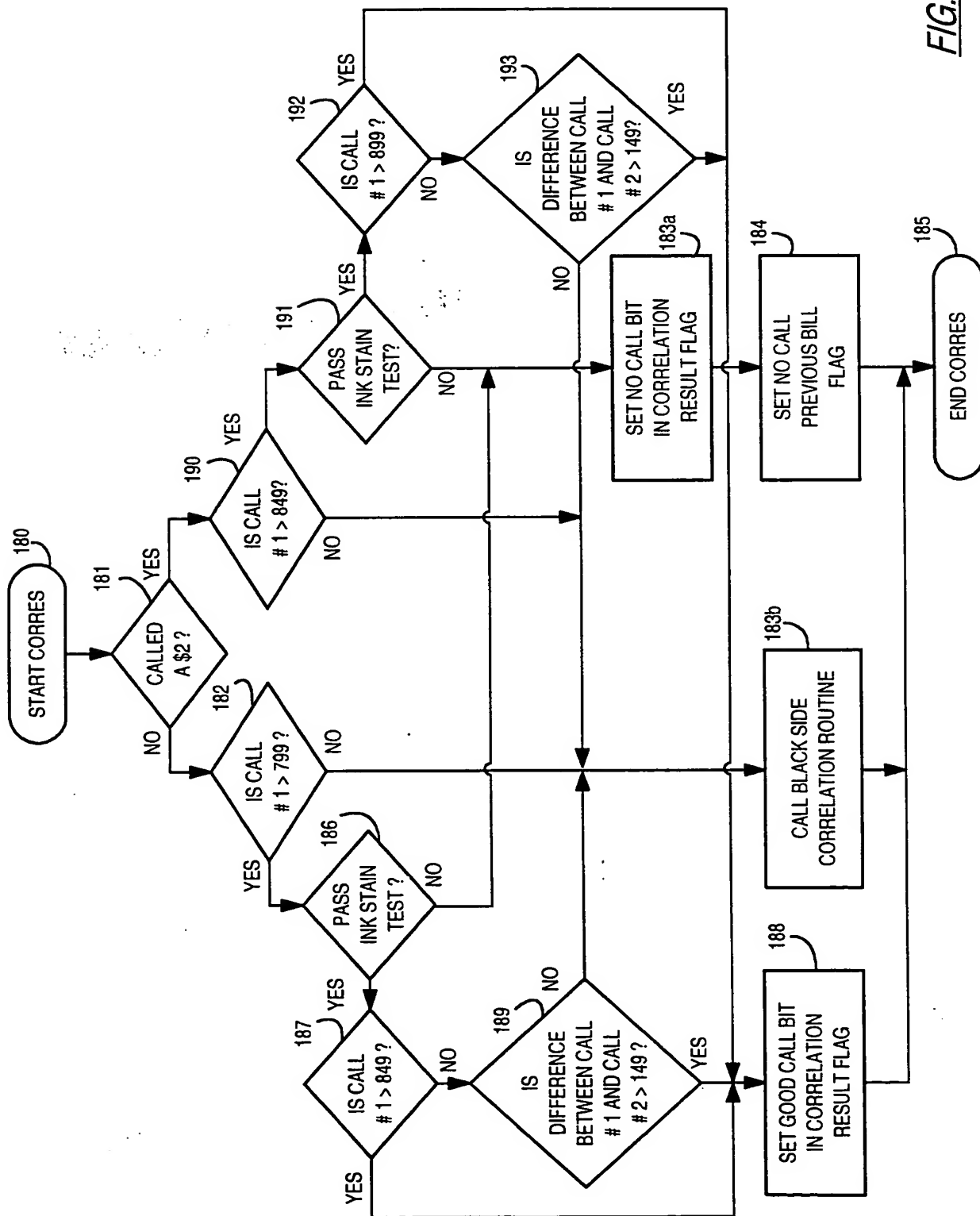


FIG. 19a

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



36 / 77

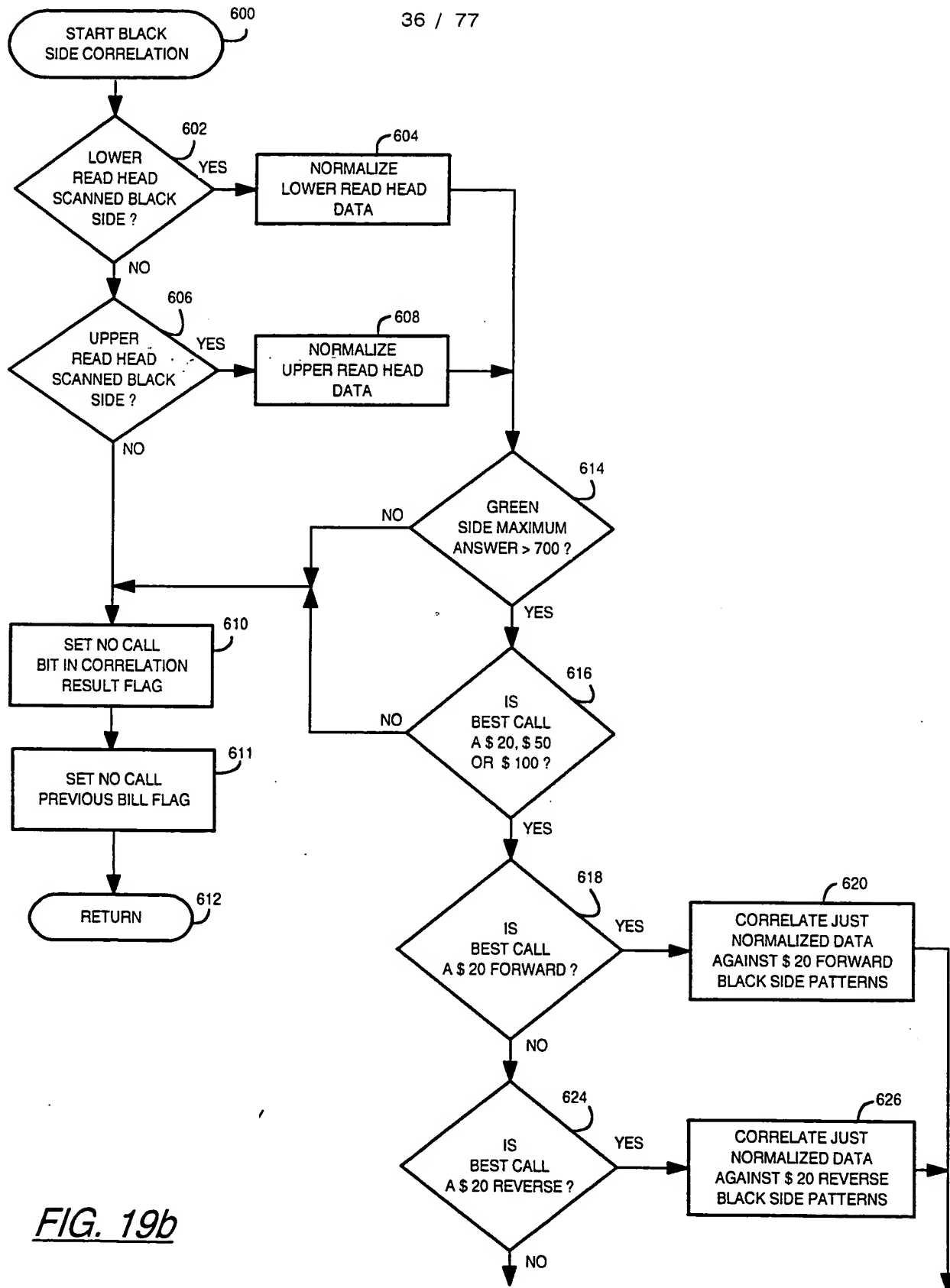


FIG. 19b

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

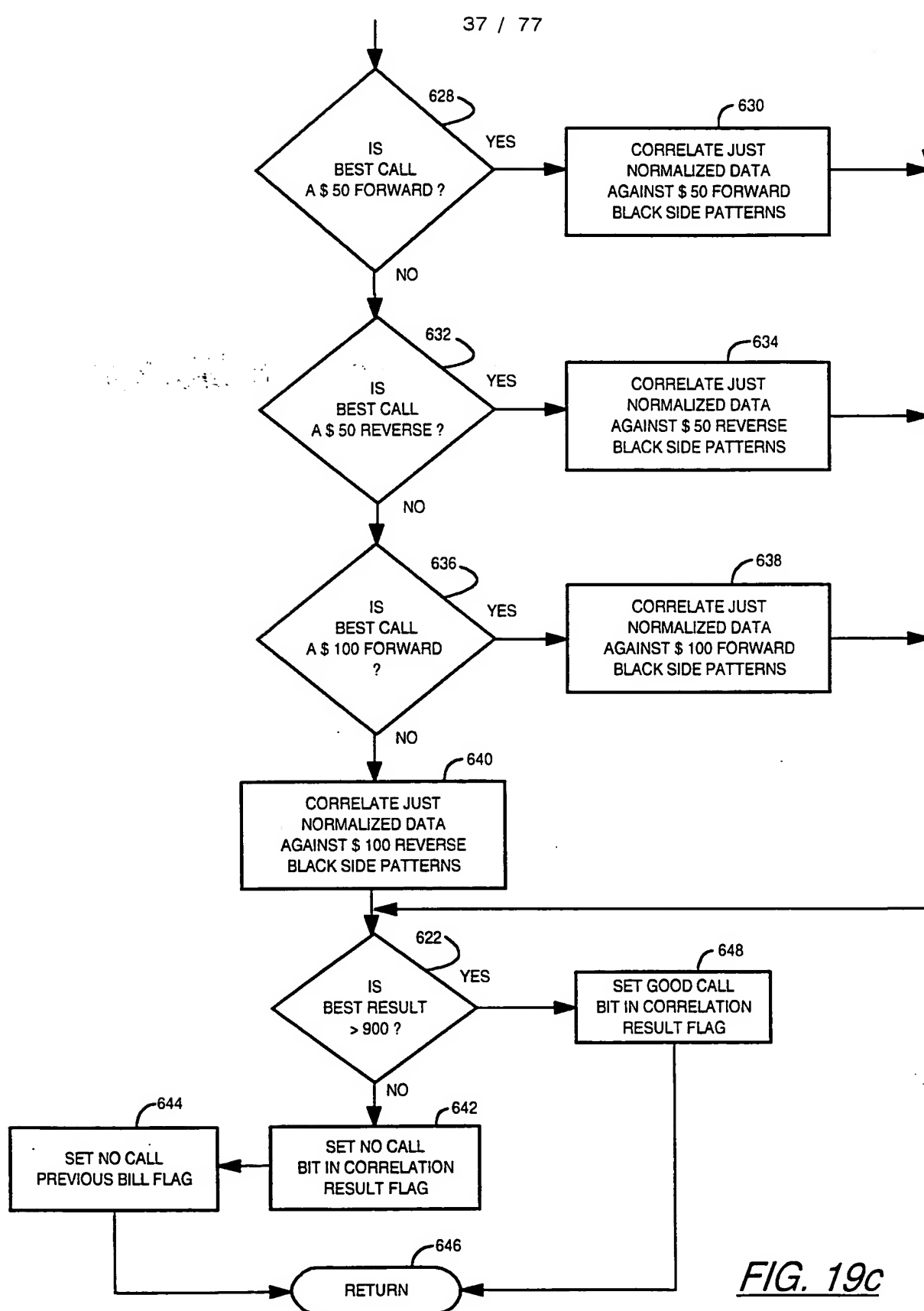
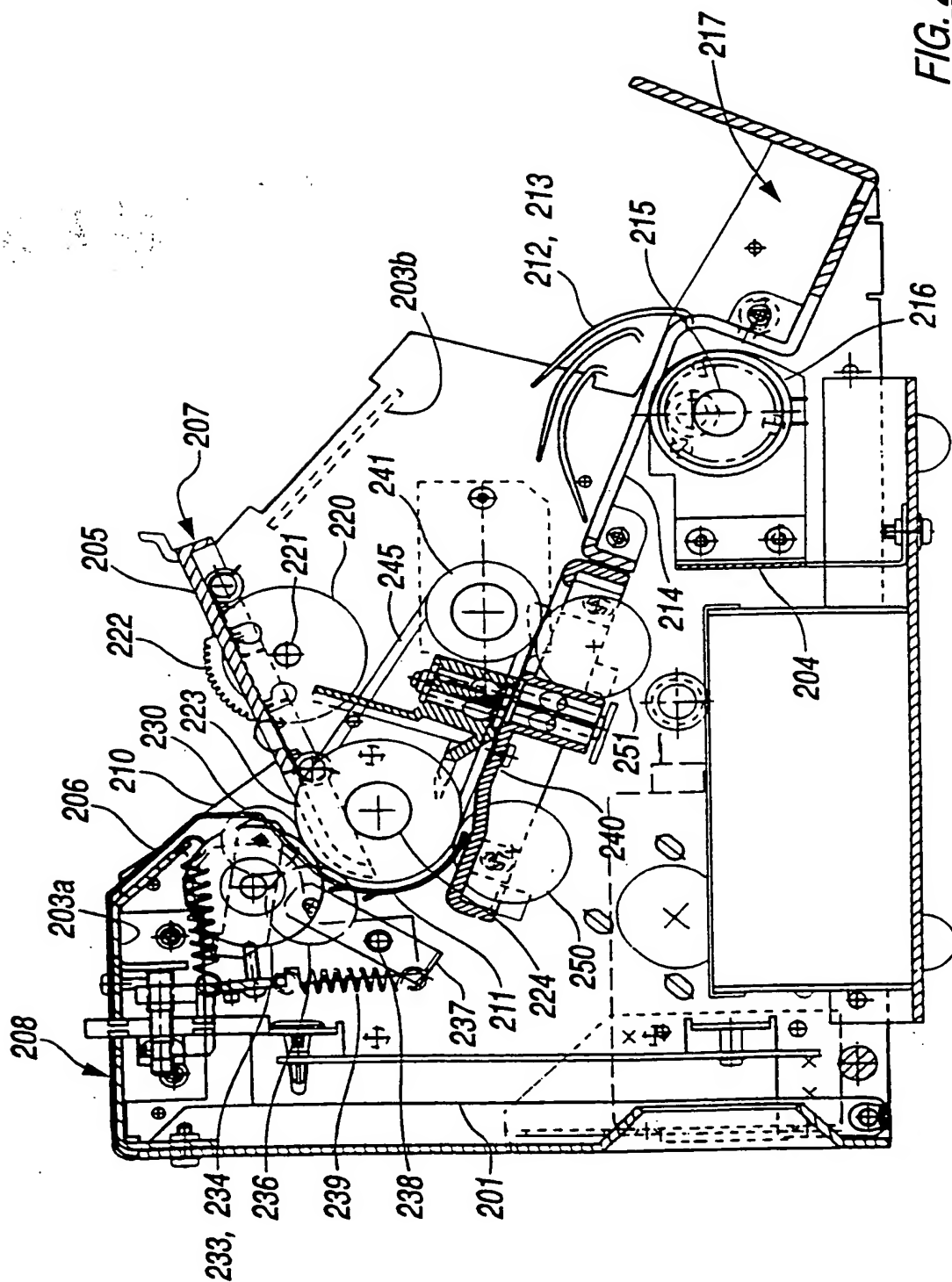


FIG. 19c

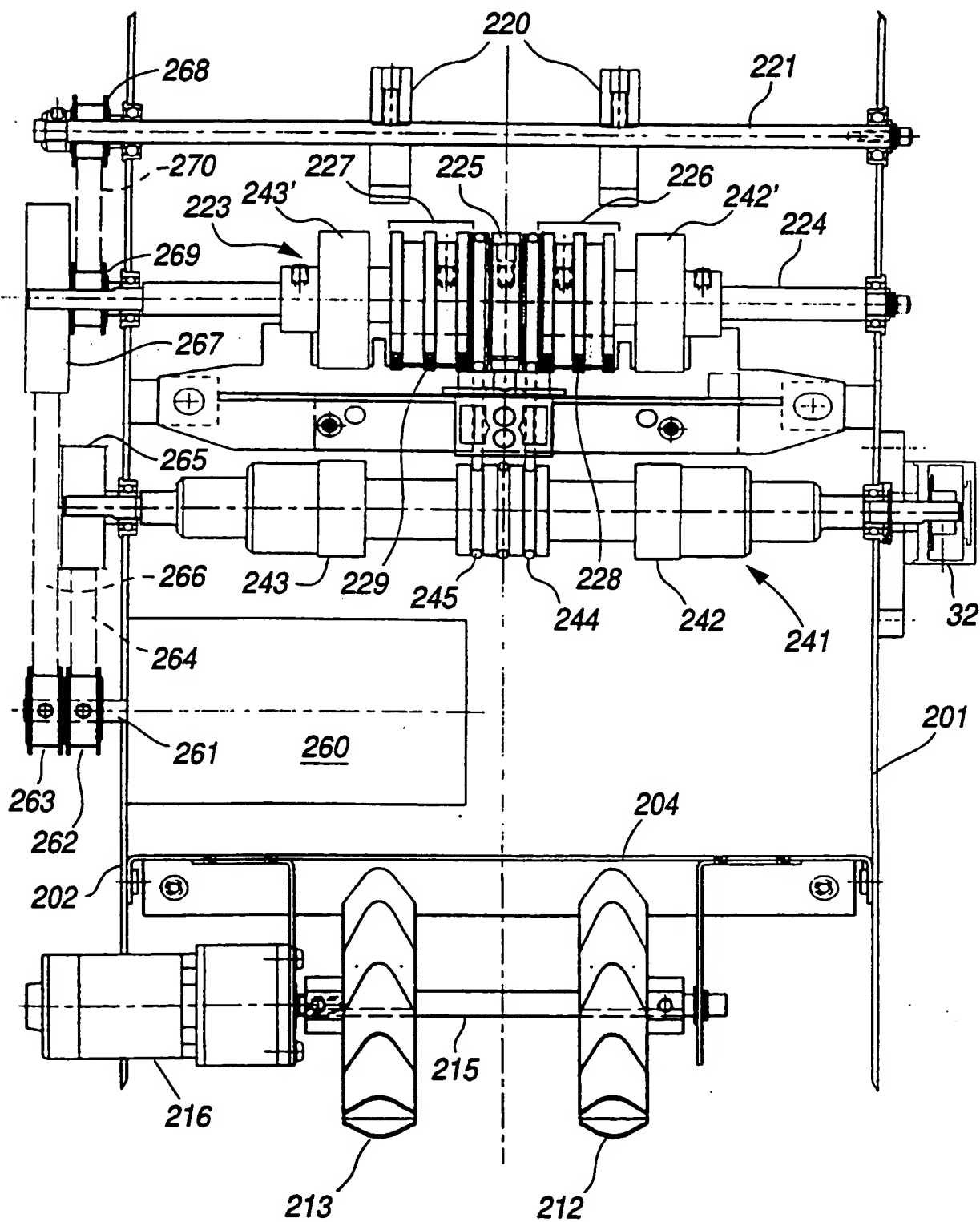
**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



**FIG. 20a**

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

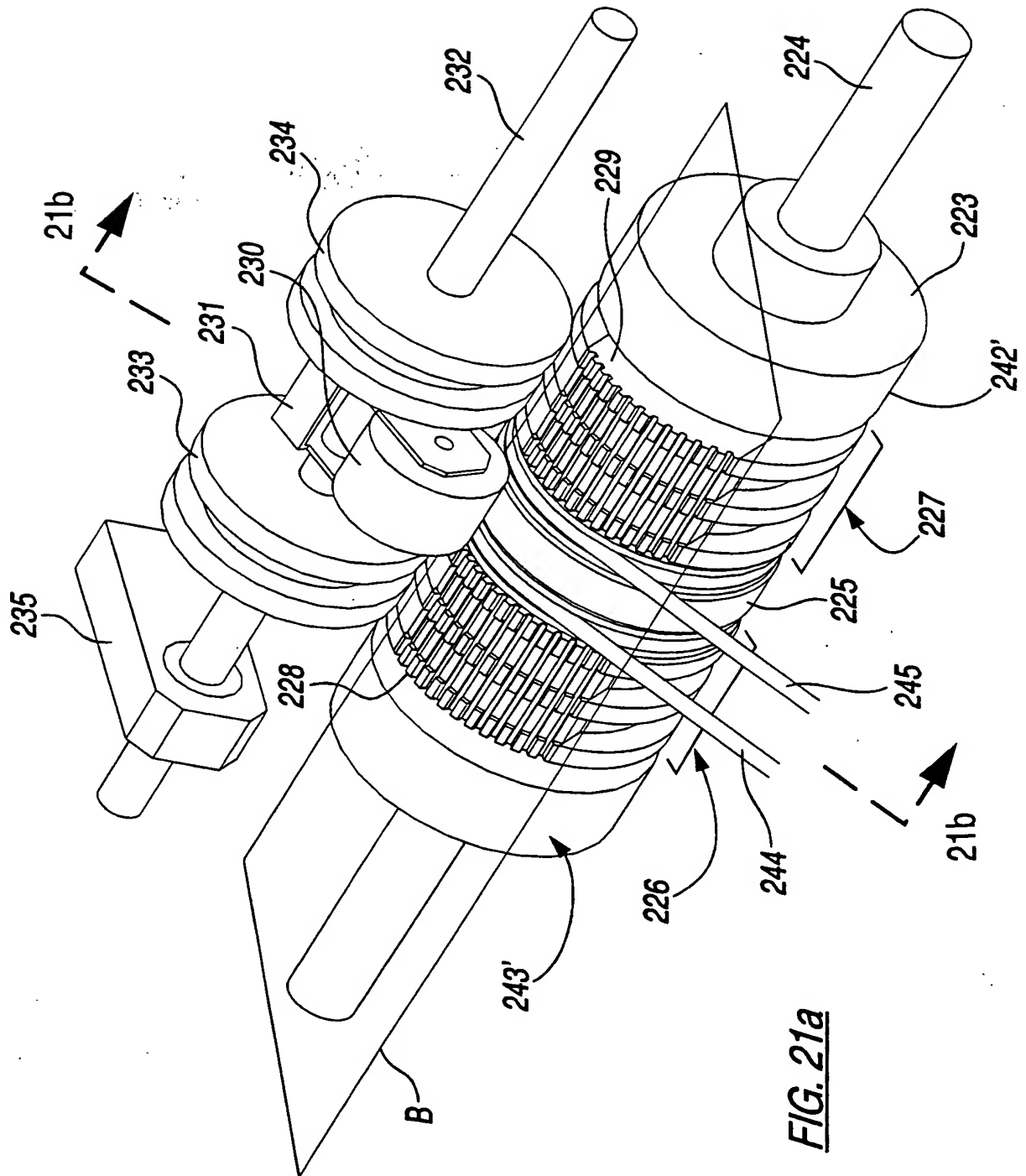
39 / 77

**FIG. 20b**

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

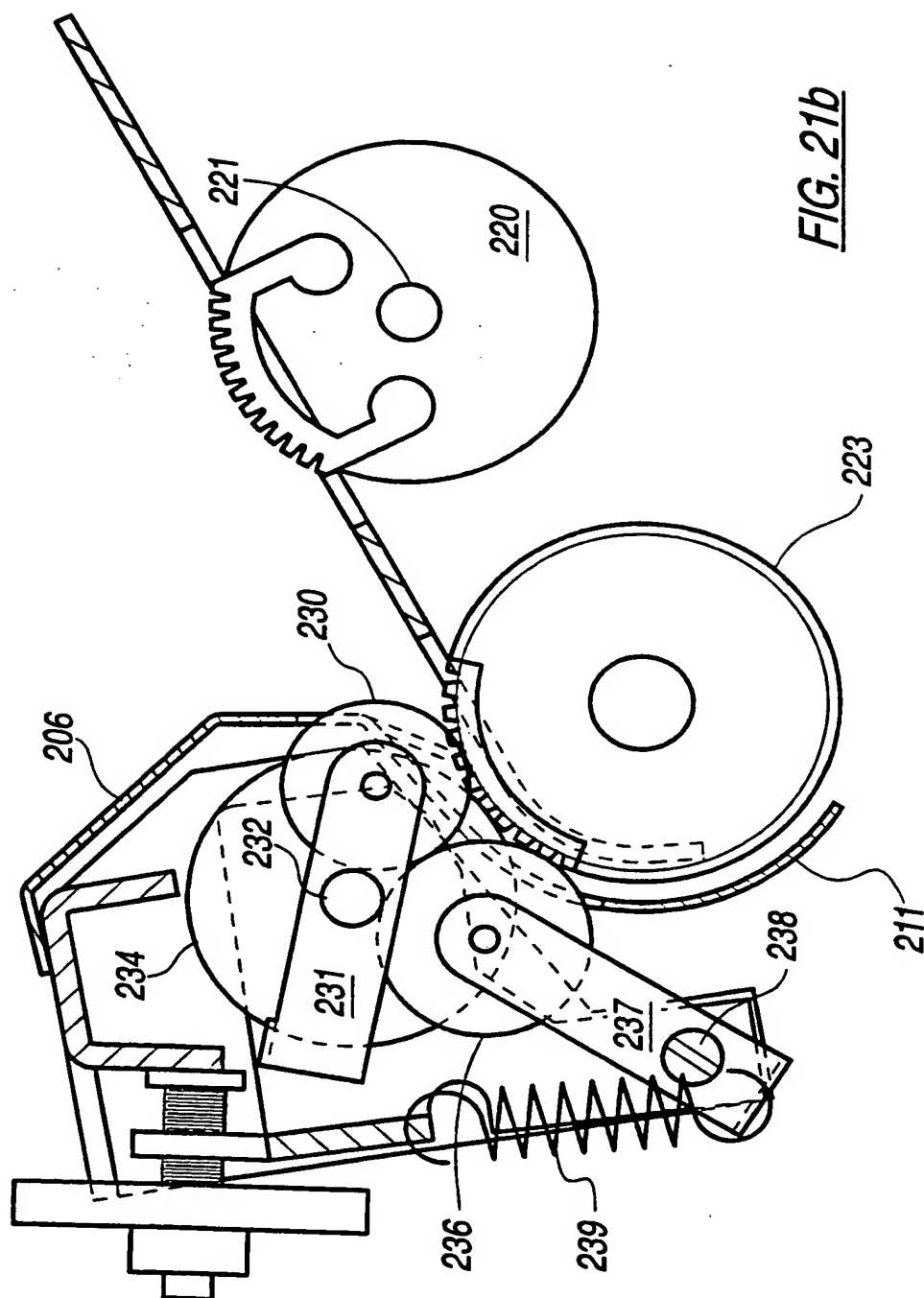


40 / 77

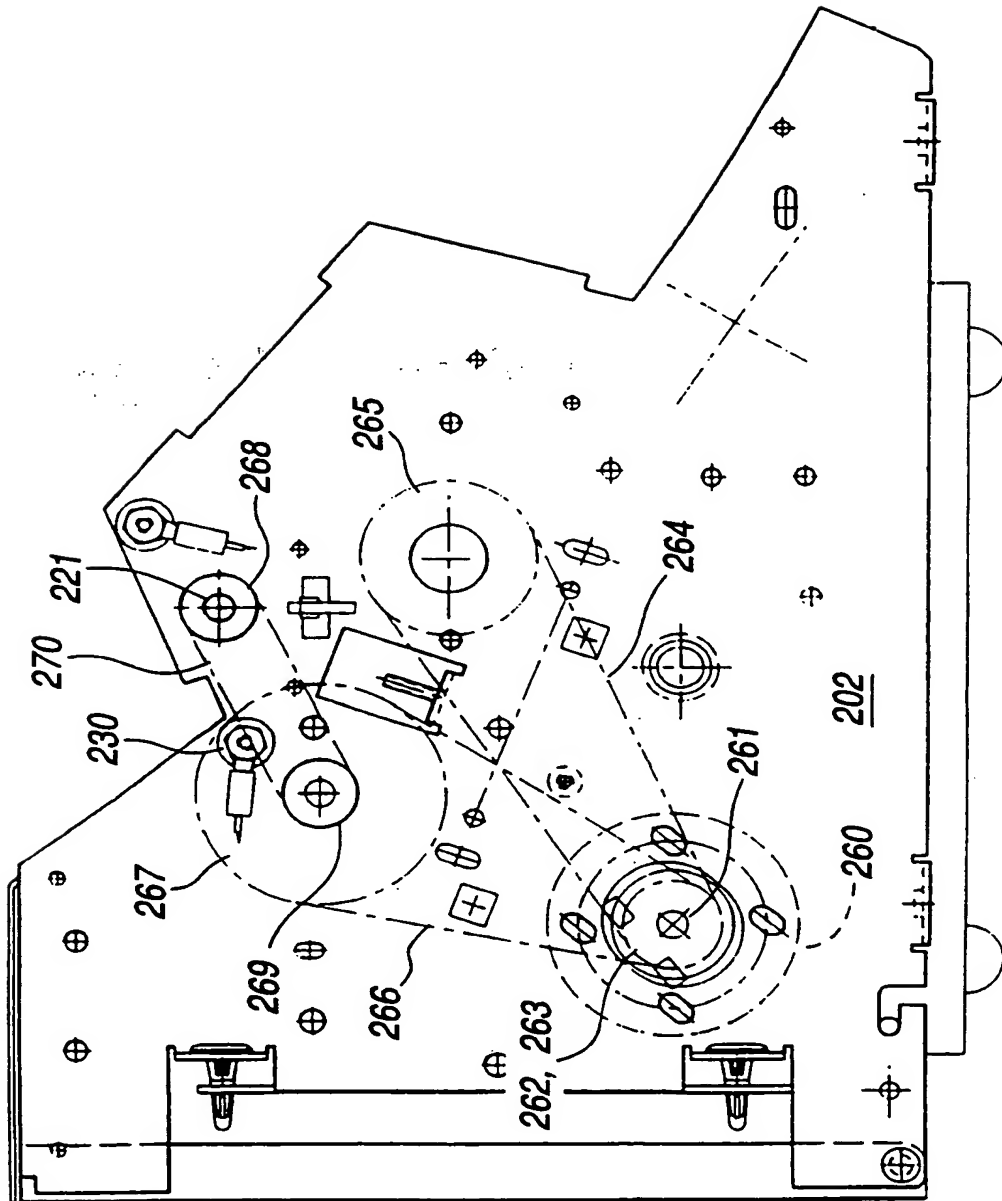


**FIG. 21a**

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



**FIG. 22**

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

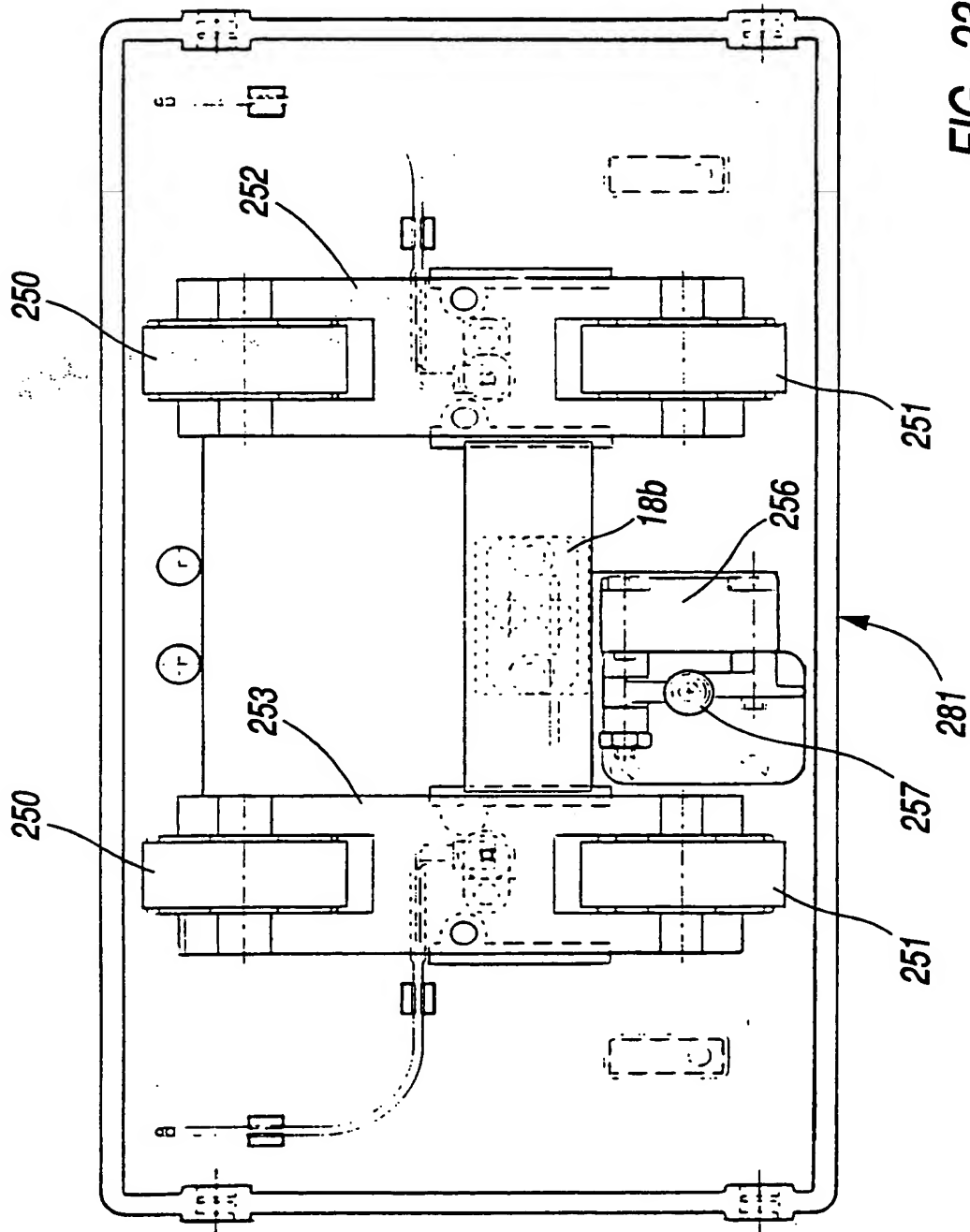


FIG. 23

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



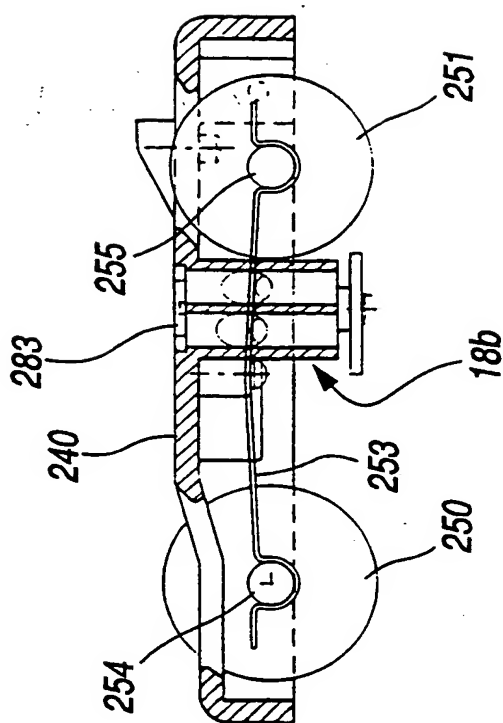
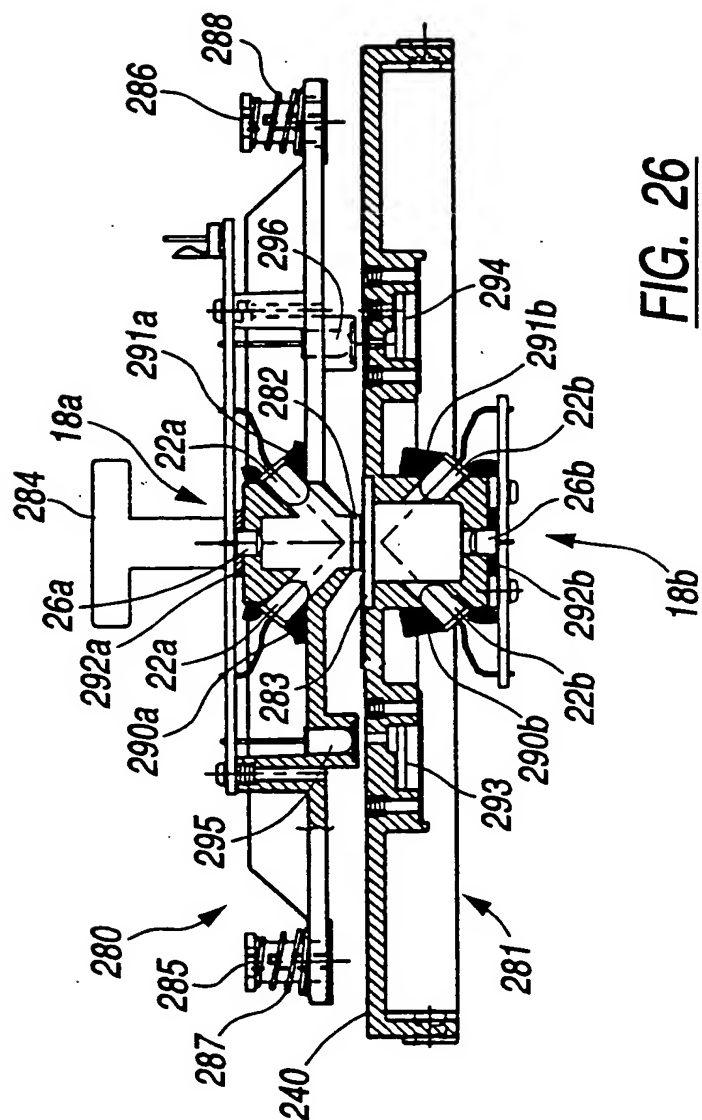


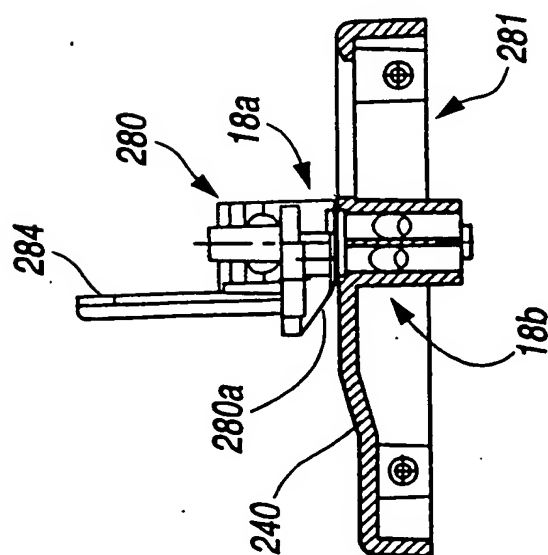
FIG. 24

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



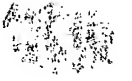


**FIG. 26**



**FIG. 25**

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



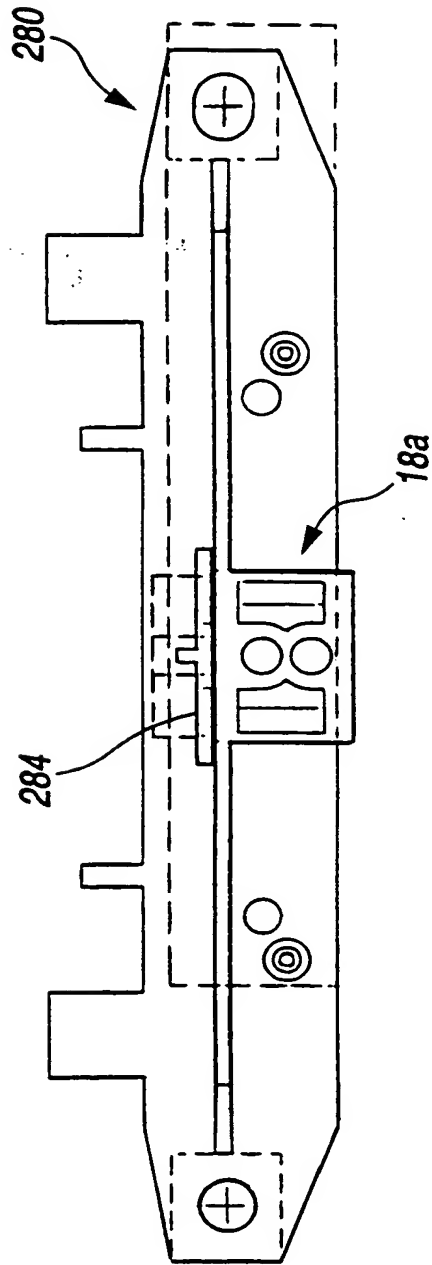


FIG. 27

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

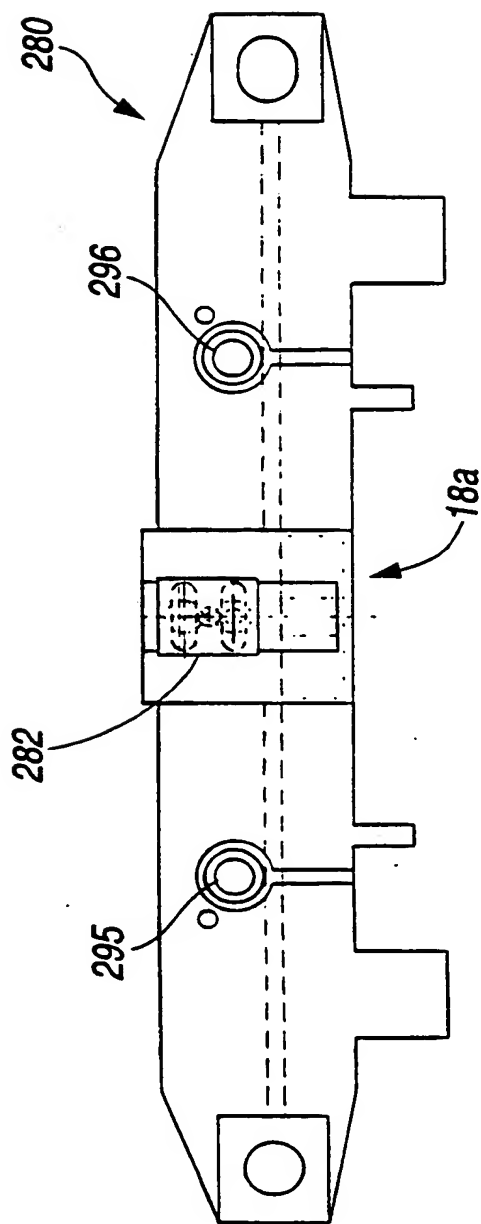


FIG. 28

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



48 / 77

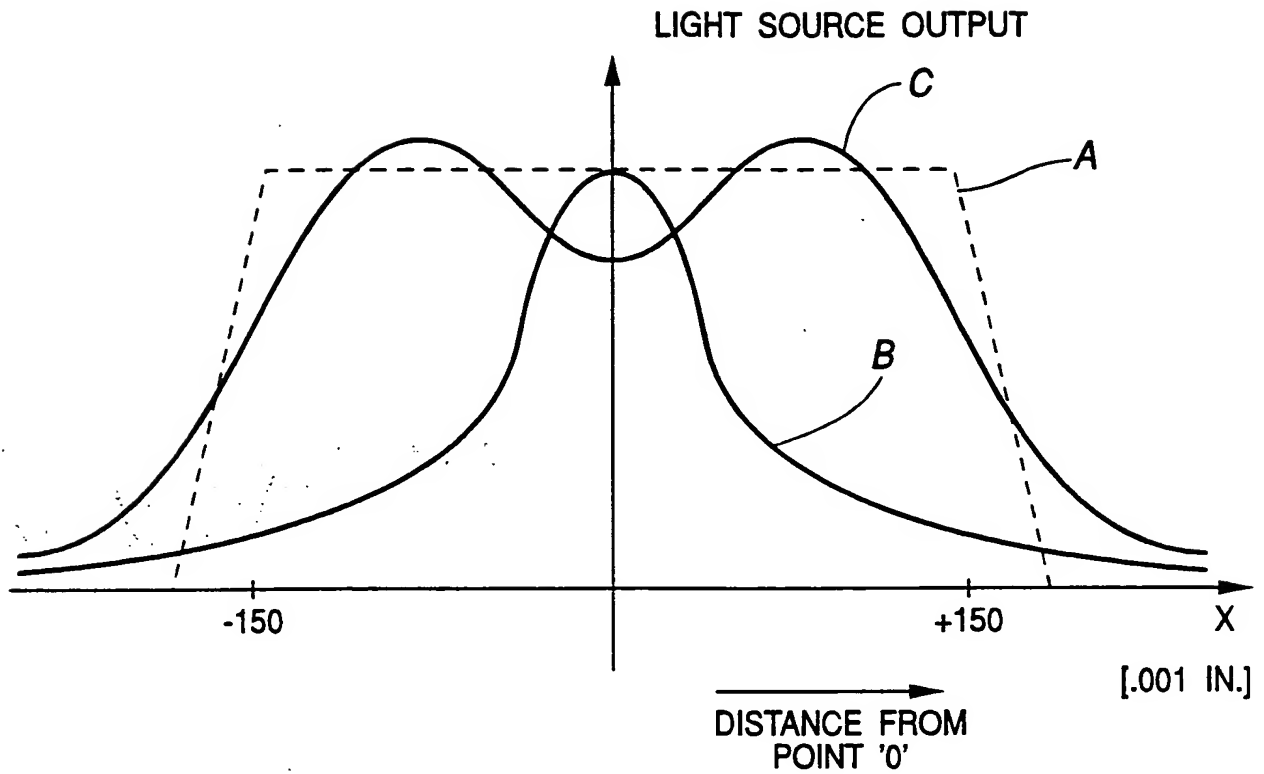


FIG. 29

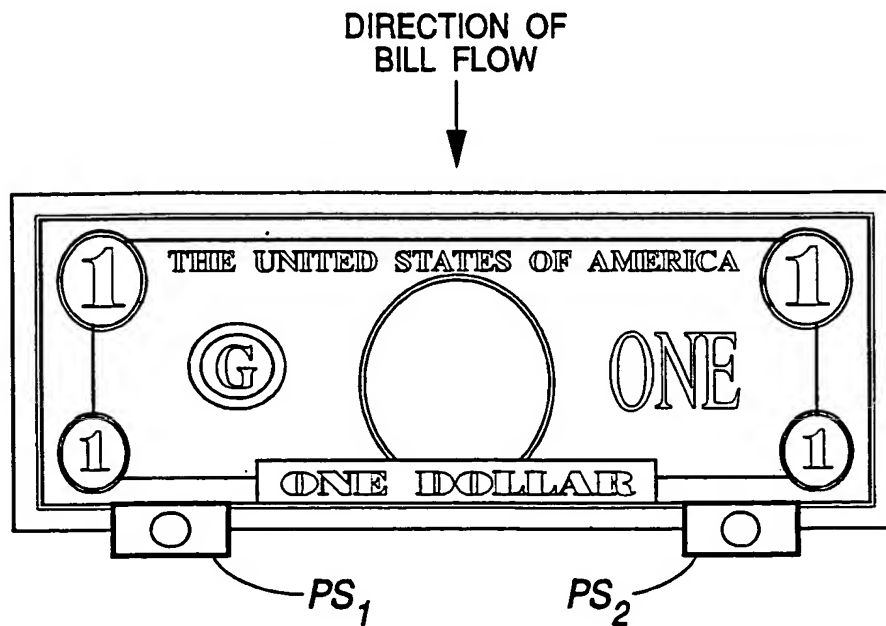


FIG. 30a

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

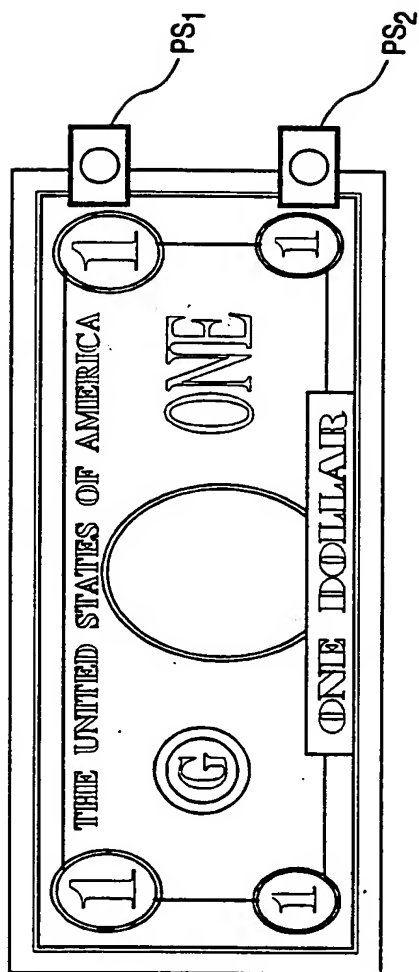


FIG. 30b

DIRECTION OF  
BILL FLOW  
→

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

50 / 77

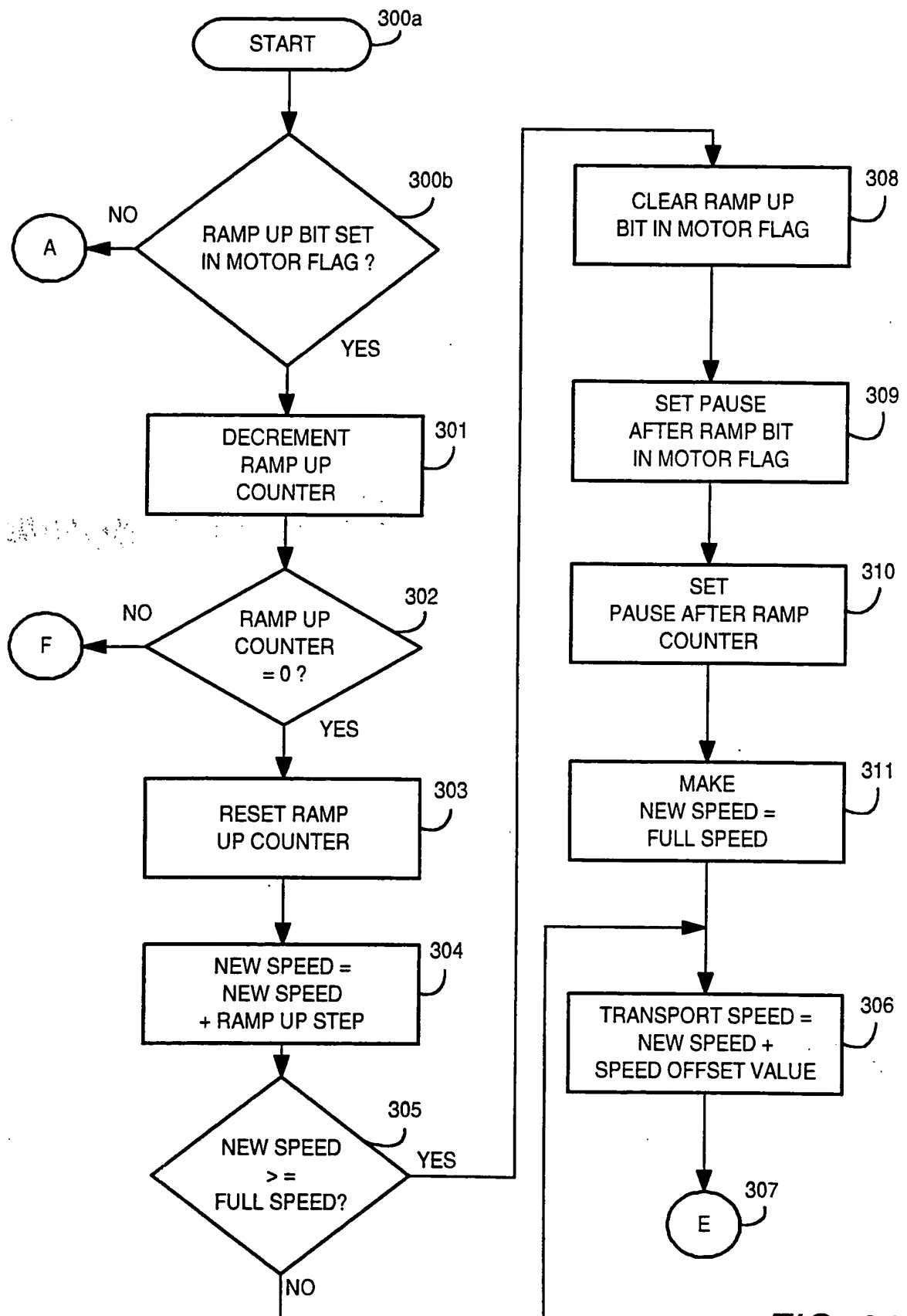
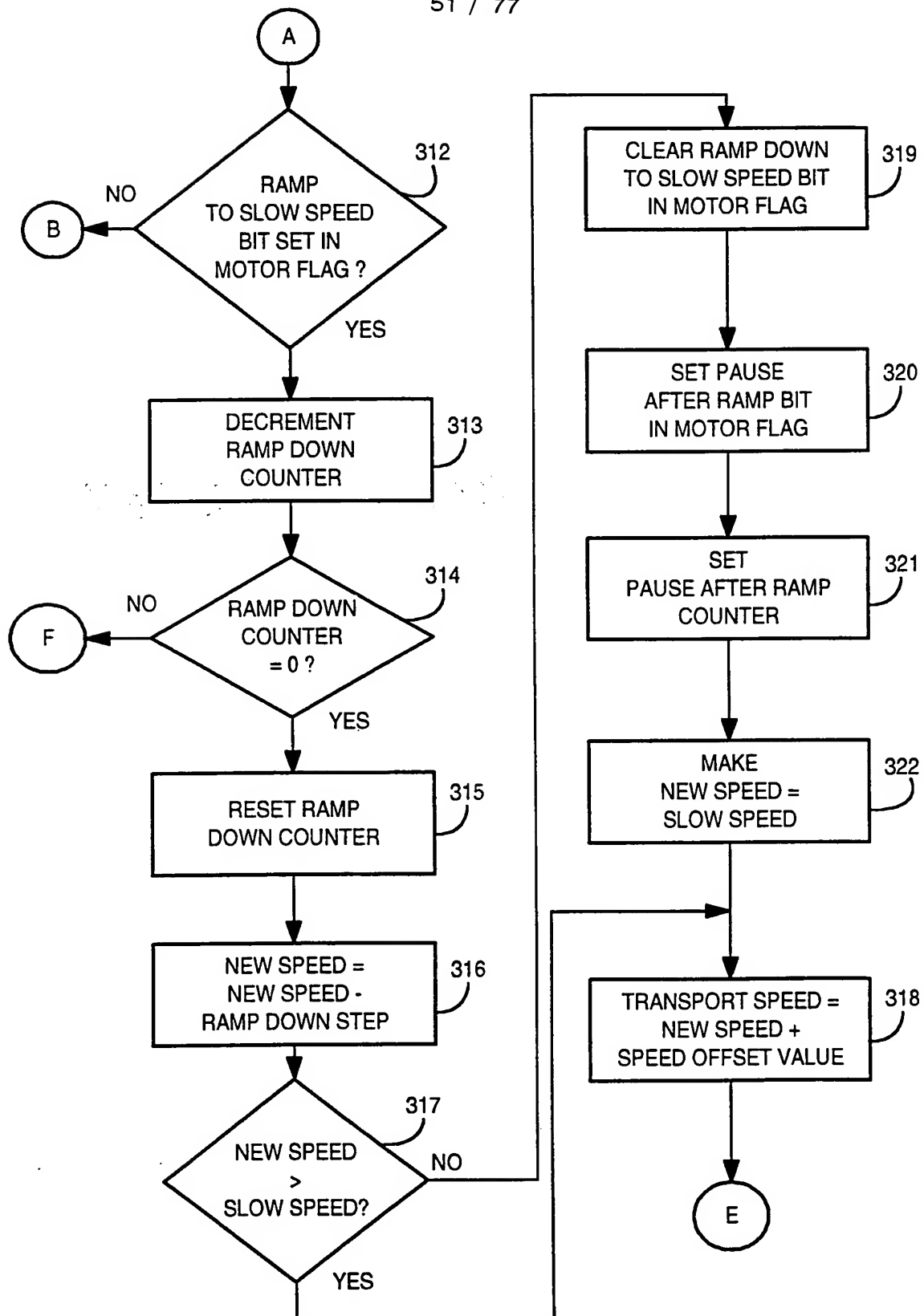


FIG. 31

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

51 / 77

*FIG. 32*

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



52 / 77

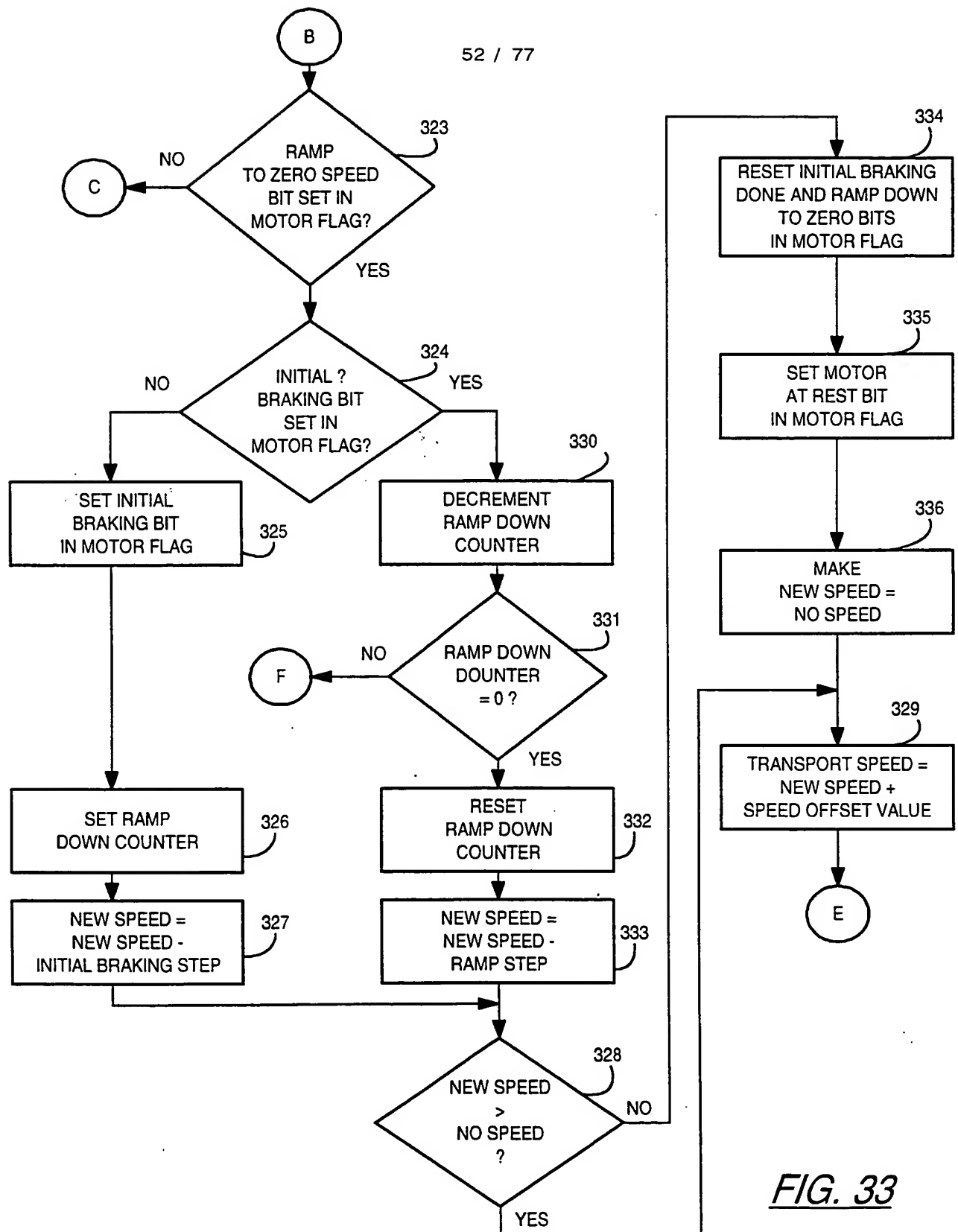
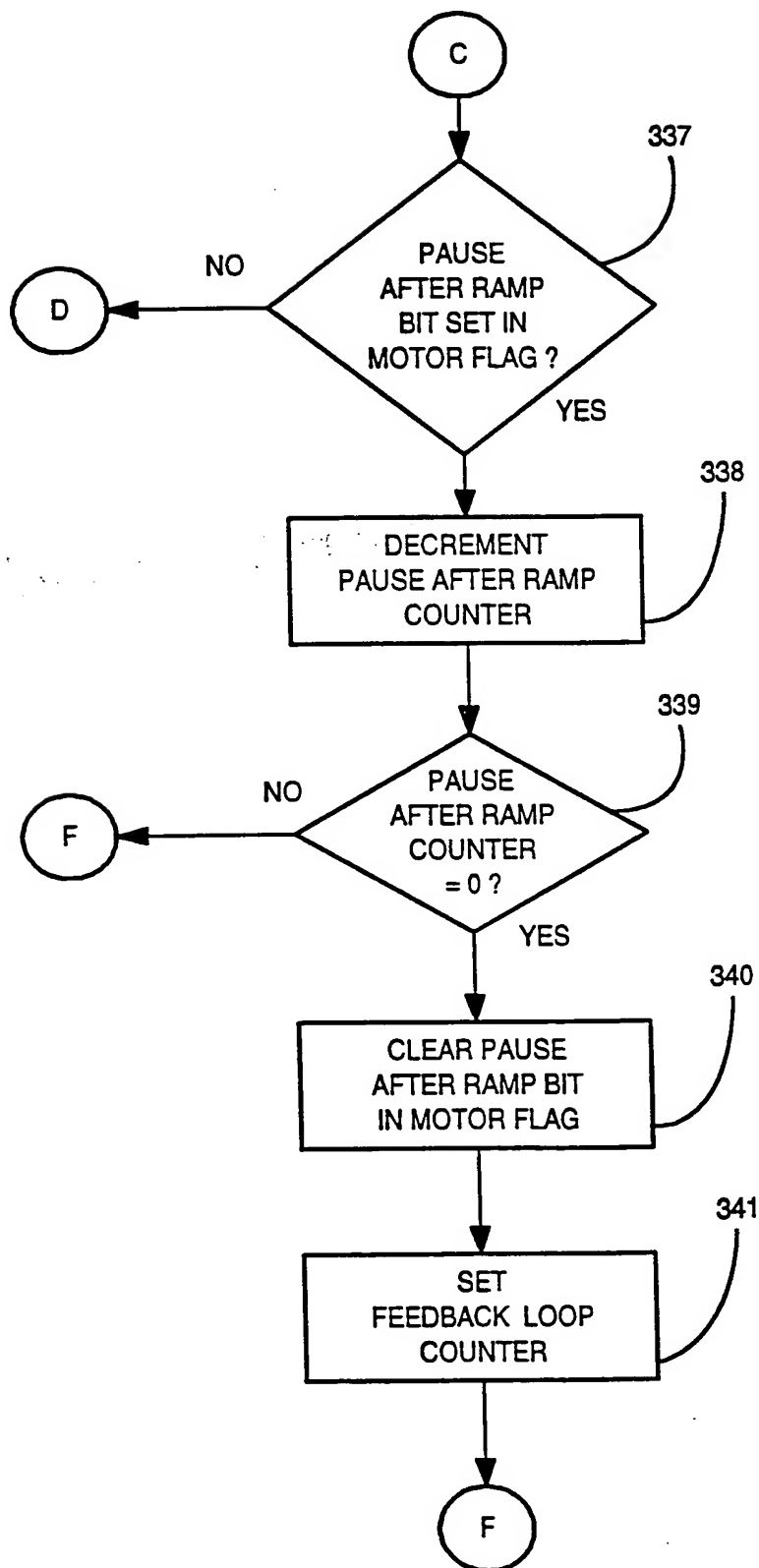


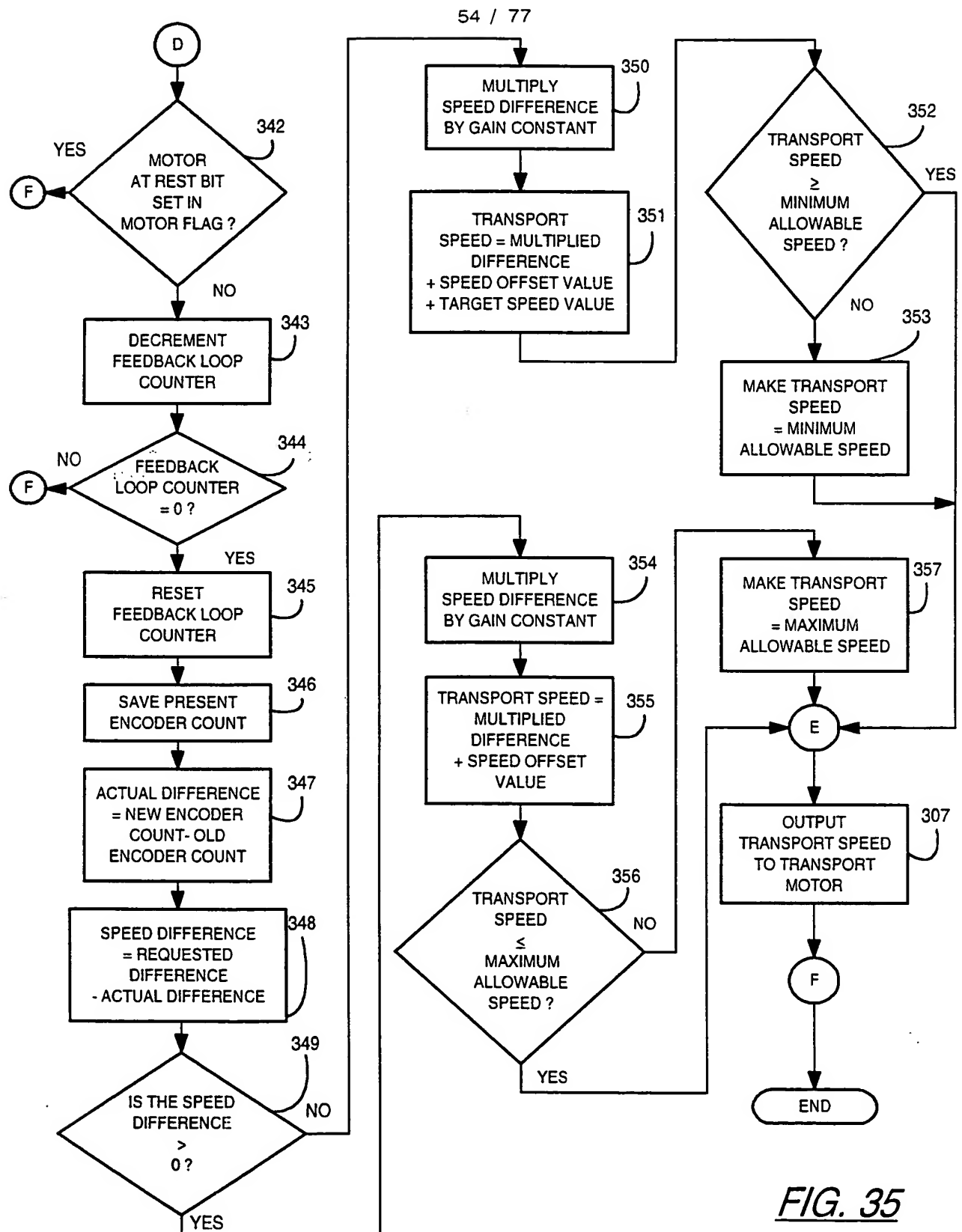
FIG. 33

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

53 / 77

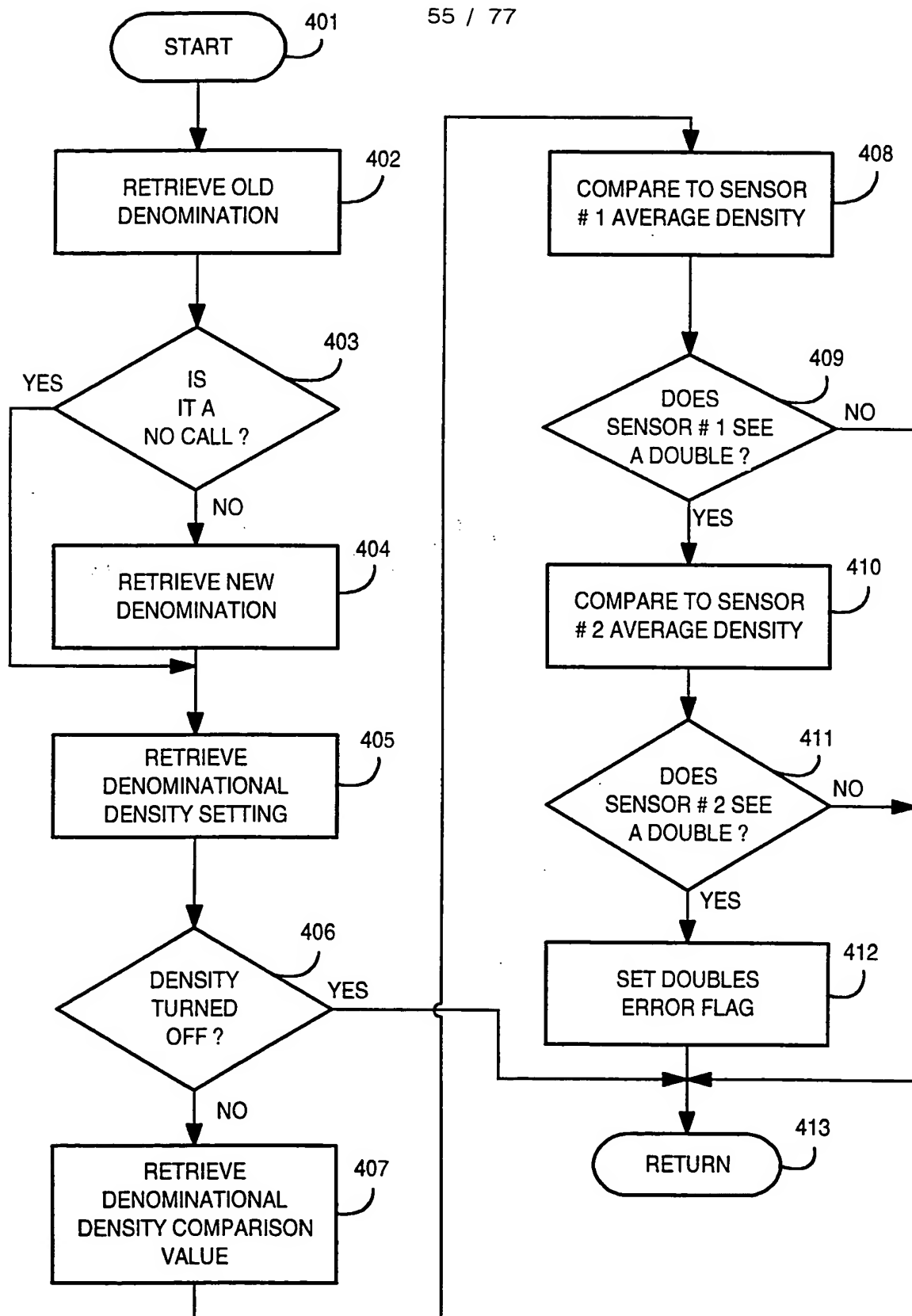
FIG. 34

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

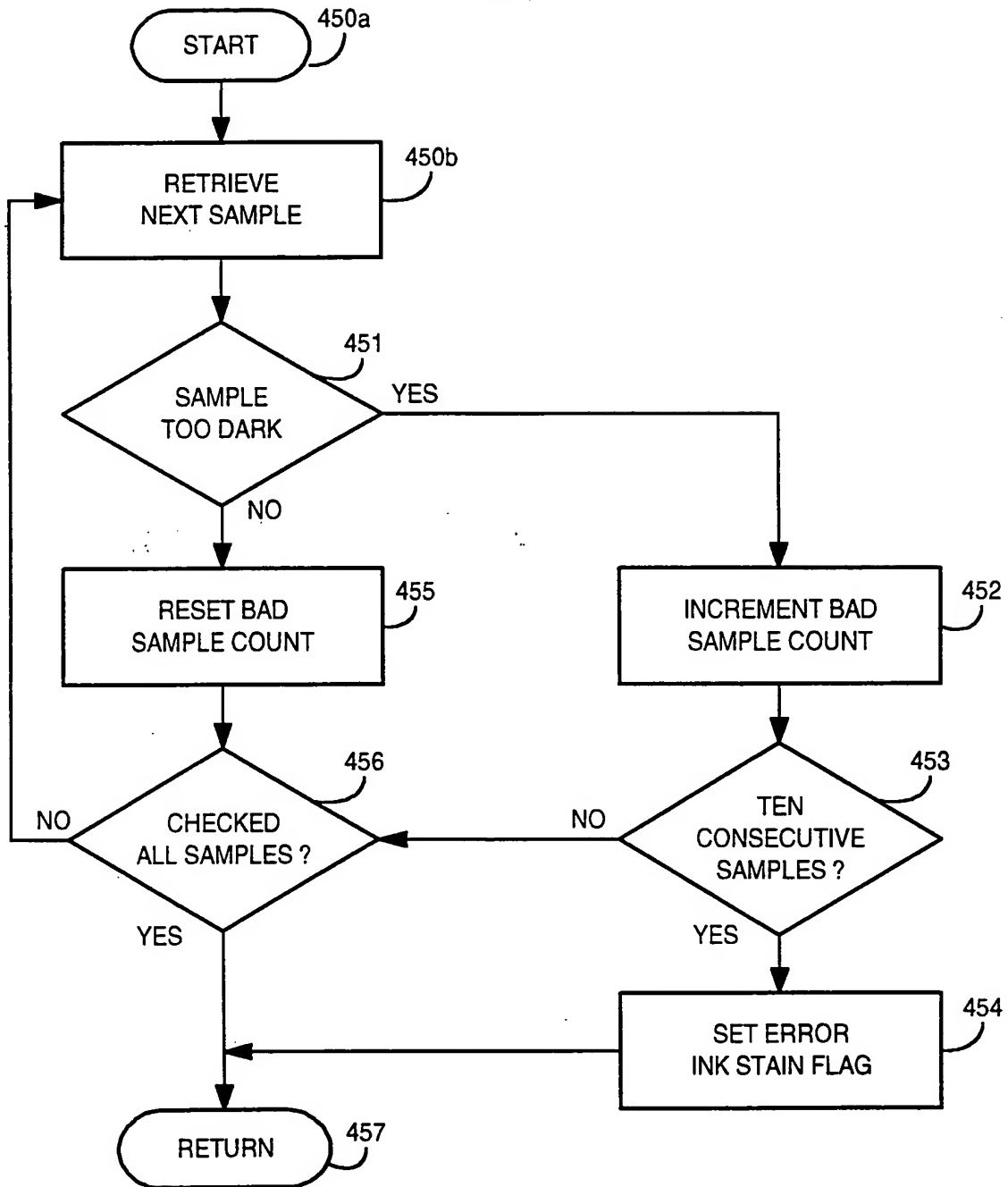
55 / 77

*FIG. 36*

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

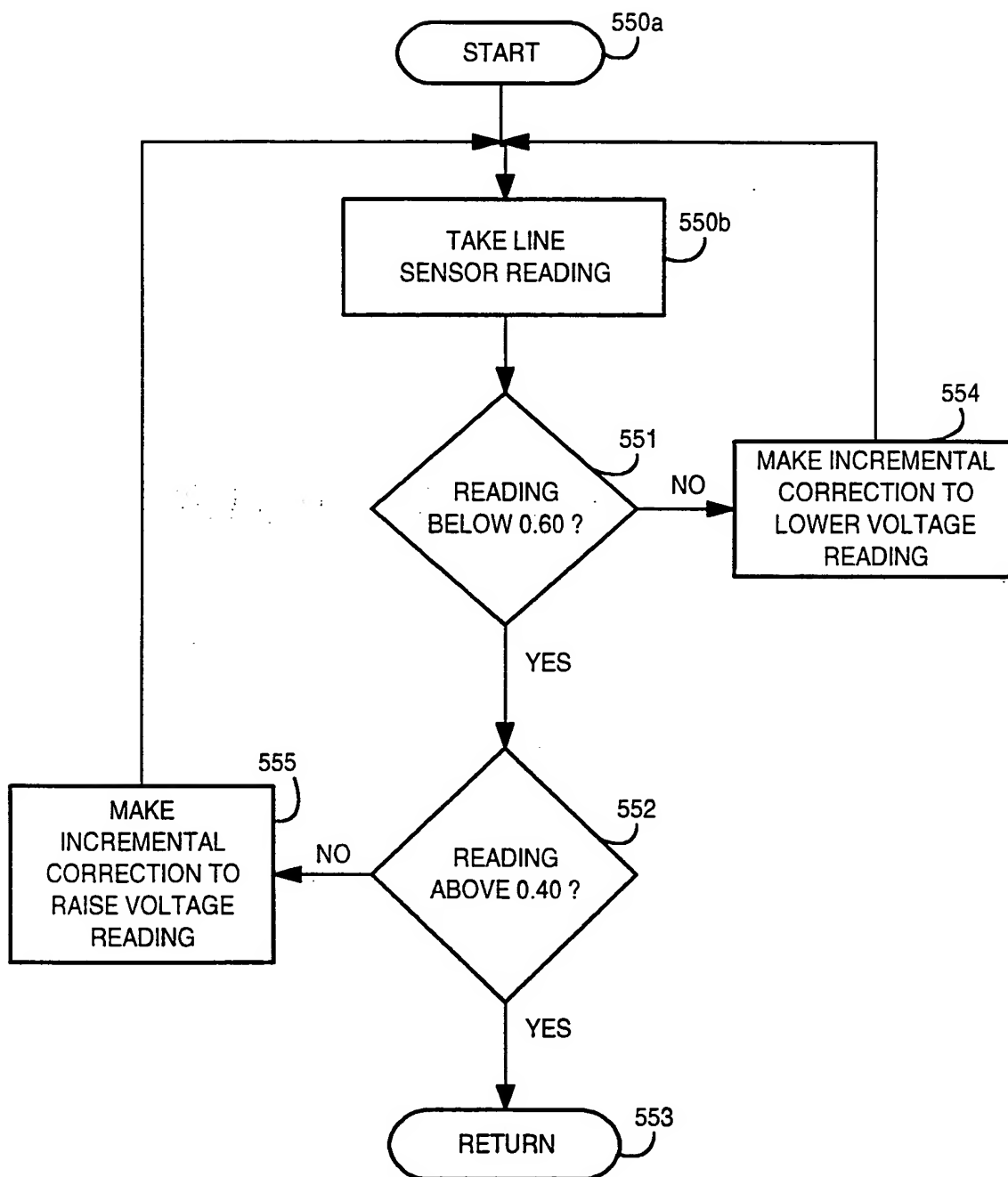


56 / 77

FIG. 37

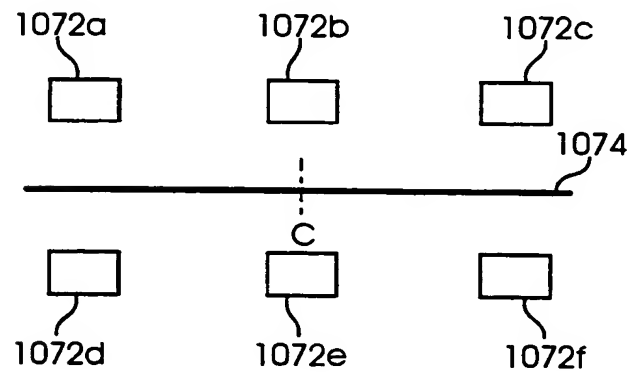
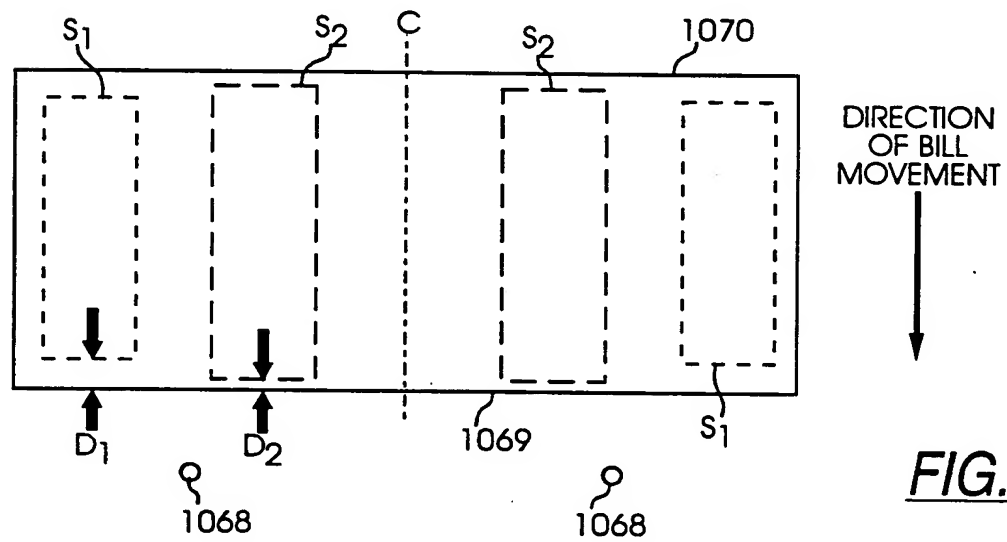
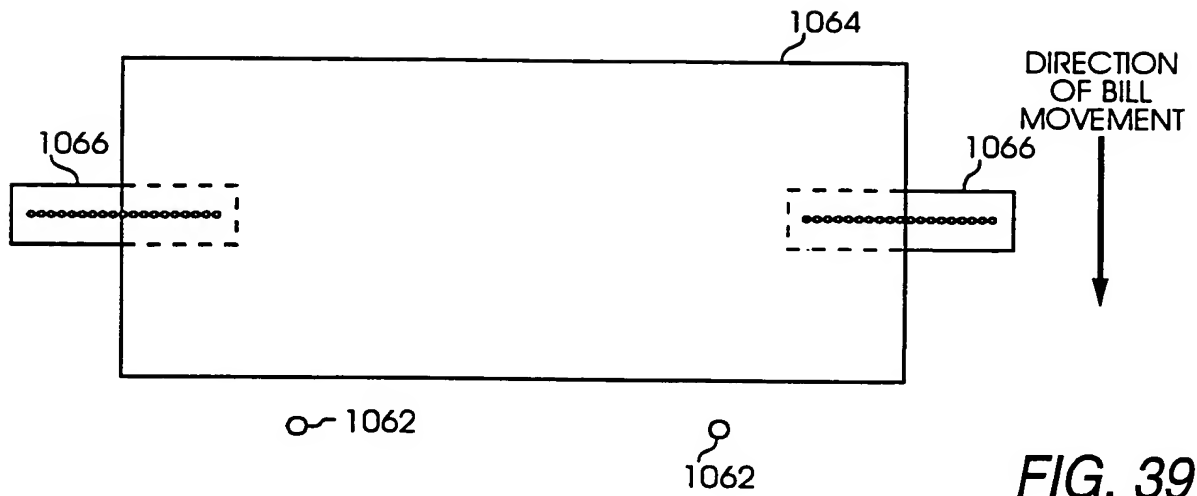
**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

57 / 77

***FIG.38***

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

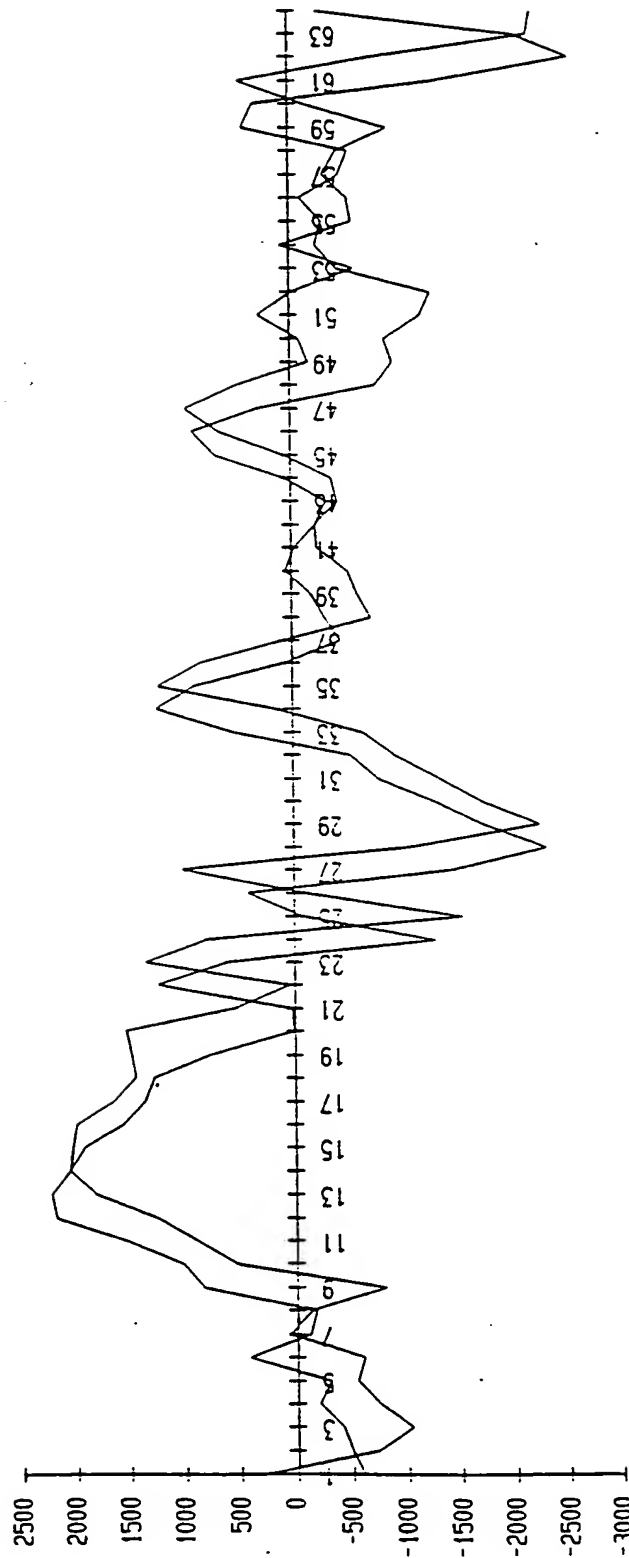
58 / 77



**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

59 / 77

\$20 Before Shifting : Corr = 644



**FIG. 41a**

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



\$20 After Shifting : Corr = 966

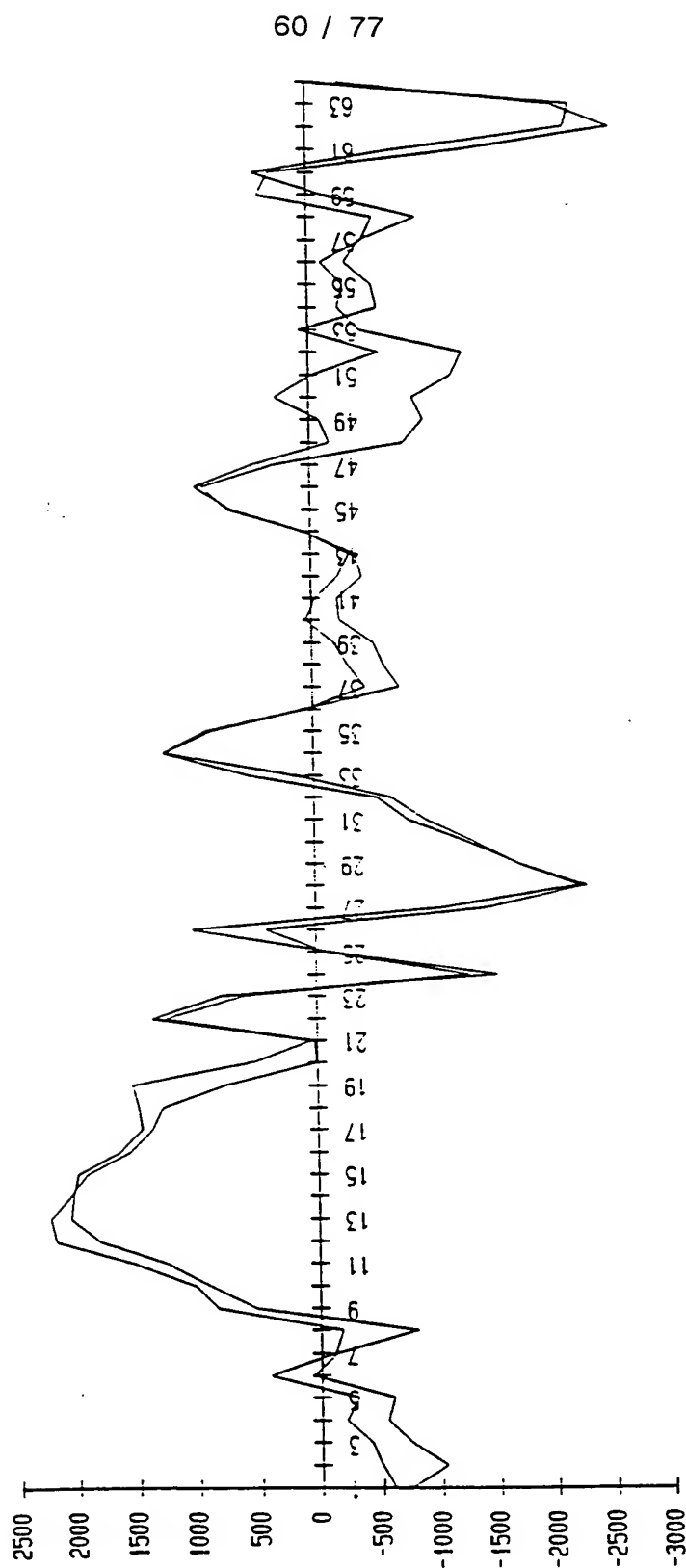
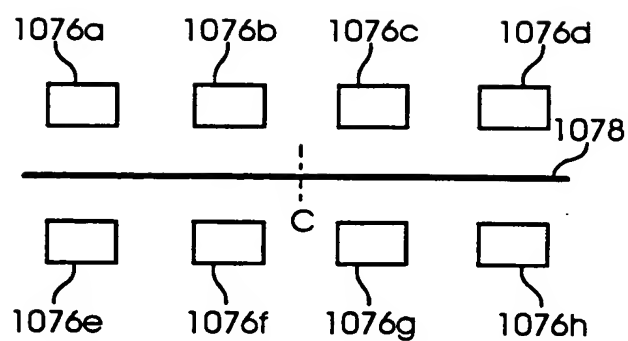
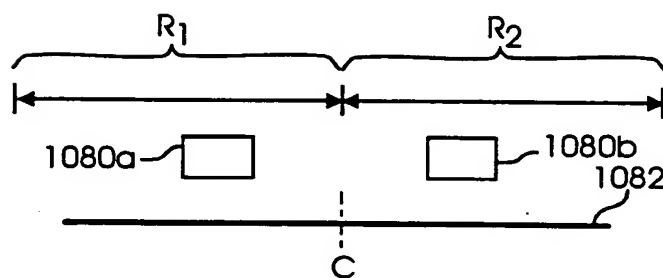
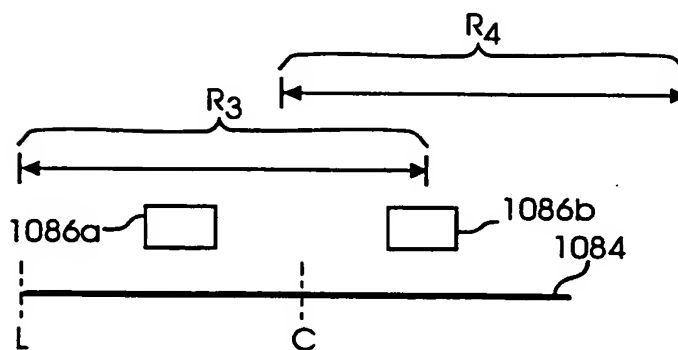


FIG. 41b

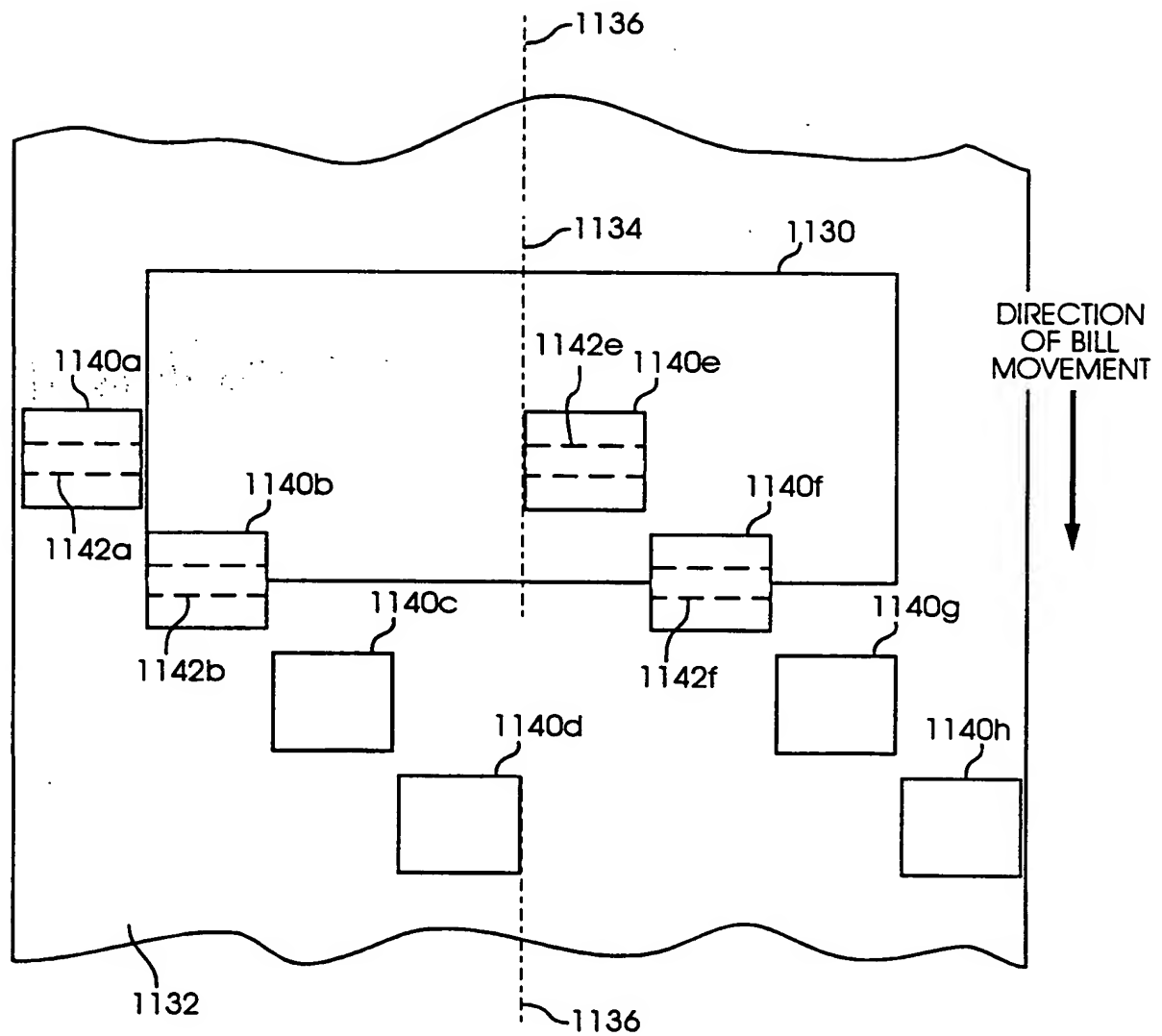
**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

61 / 77

FIG. 43FIG. 44FIG. 45

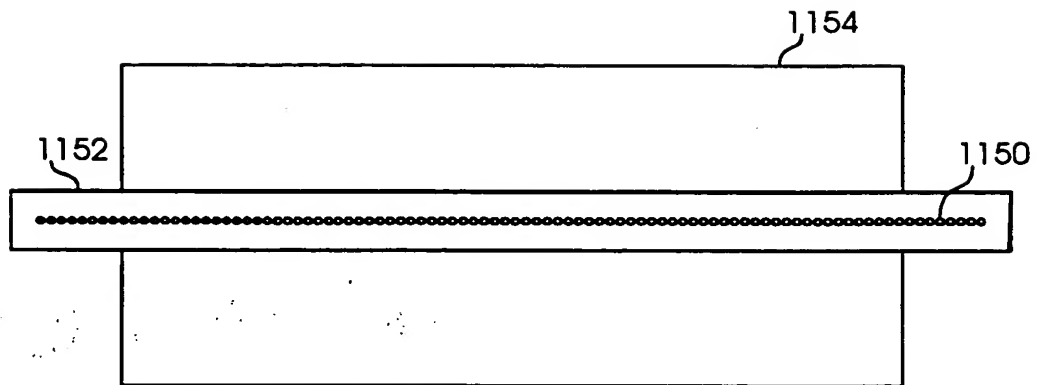
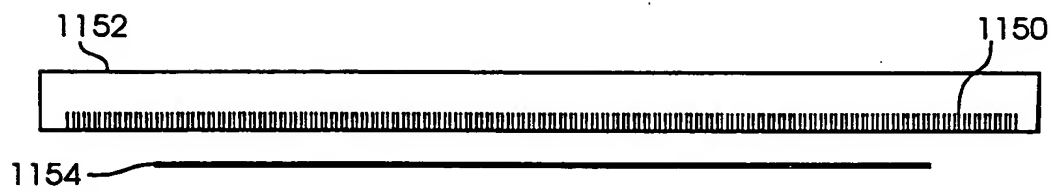
THIS PAGE IS BLANK

62 / 77

**FIG. 46**

THIS PAGE IS BLANK

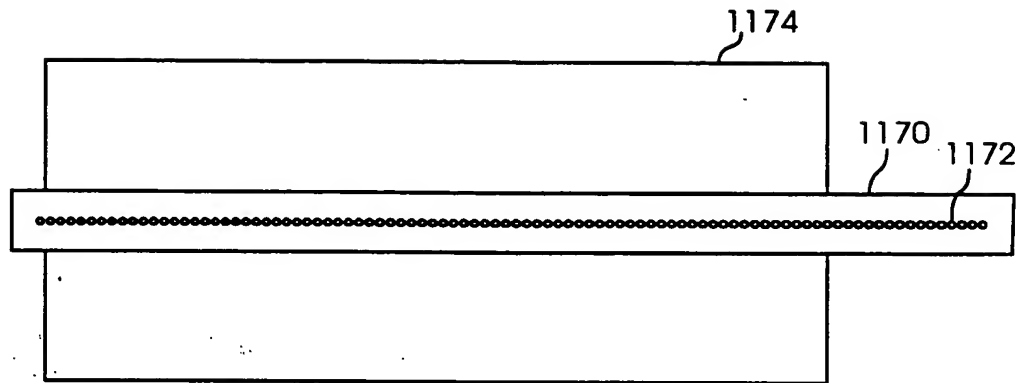
63 / 77

*FIG. 47a**FIG. 47b*

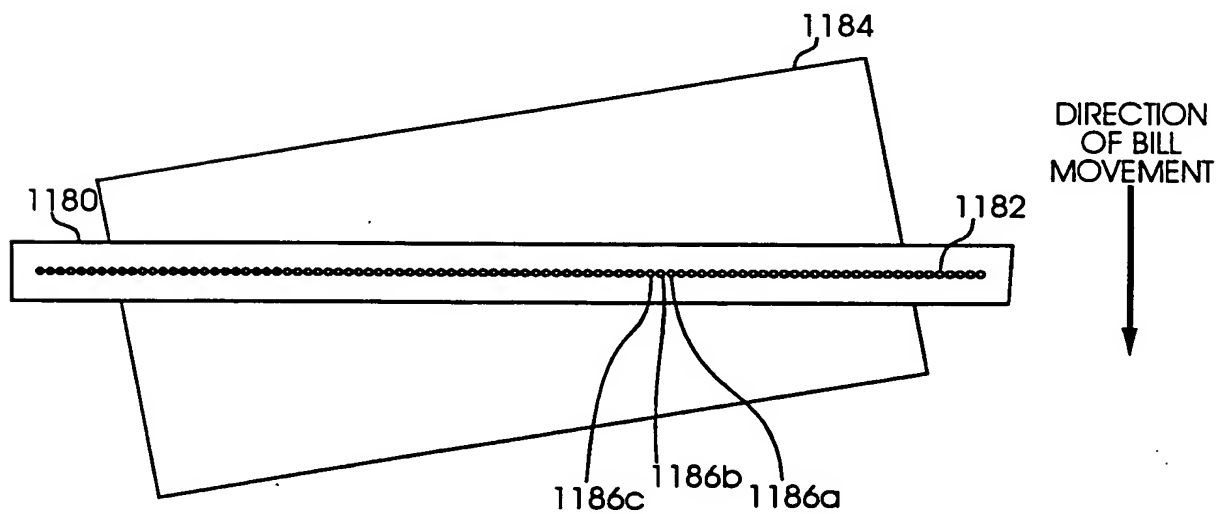
**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**



64 / 77



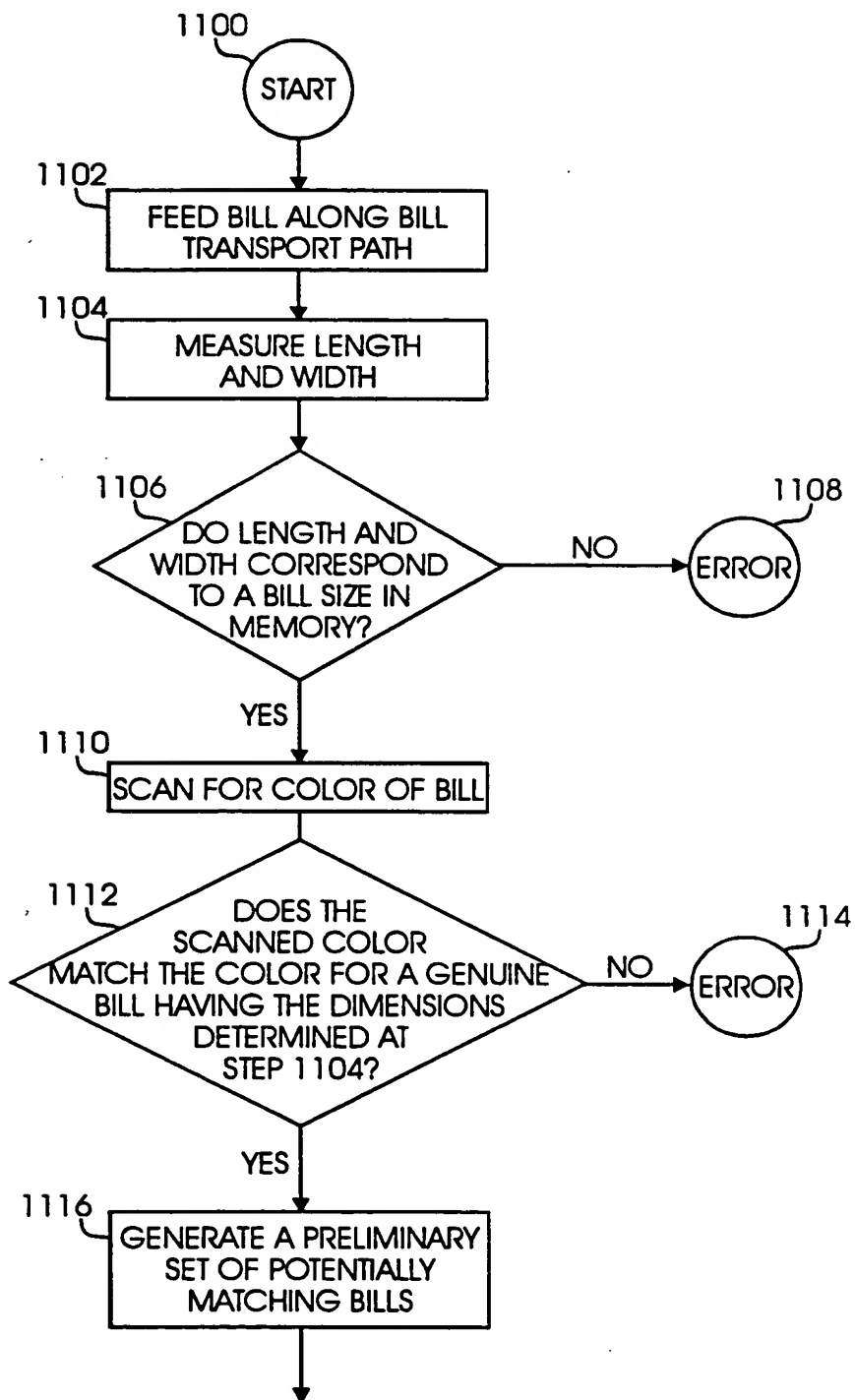
**FIG. 48**



**FIG. 49**

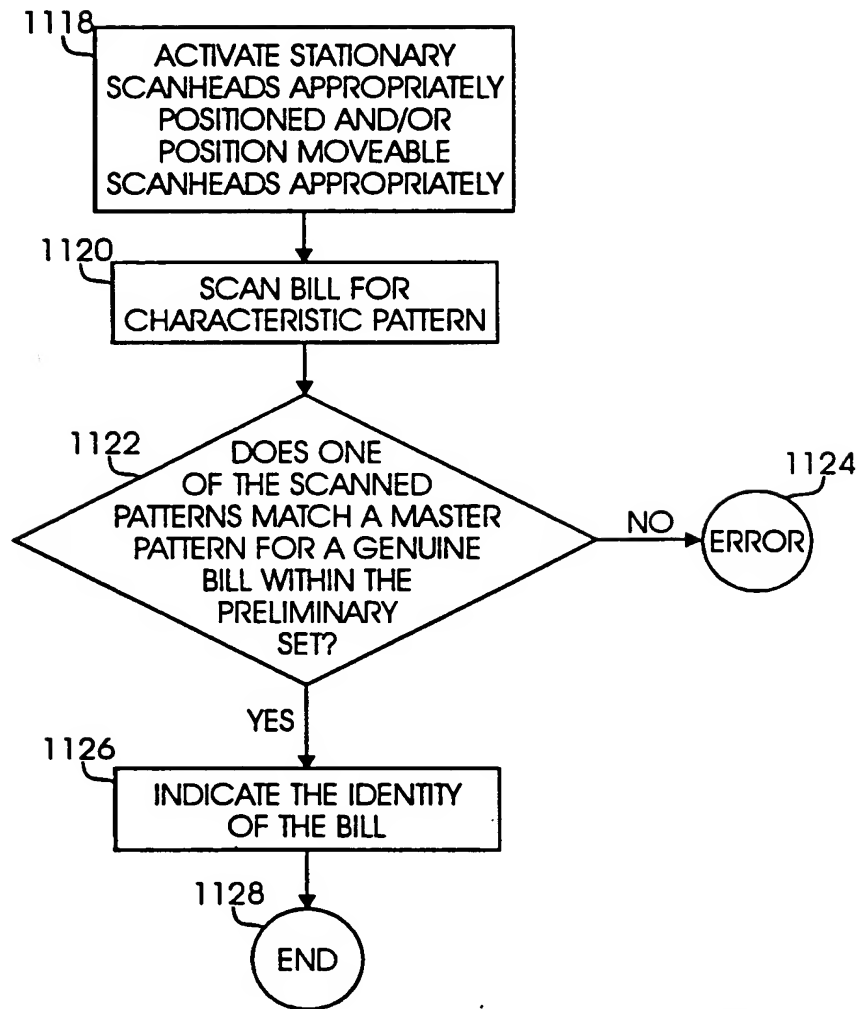
**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

65 / 77

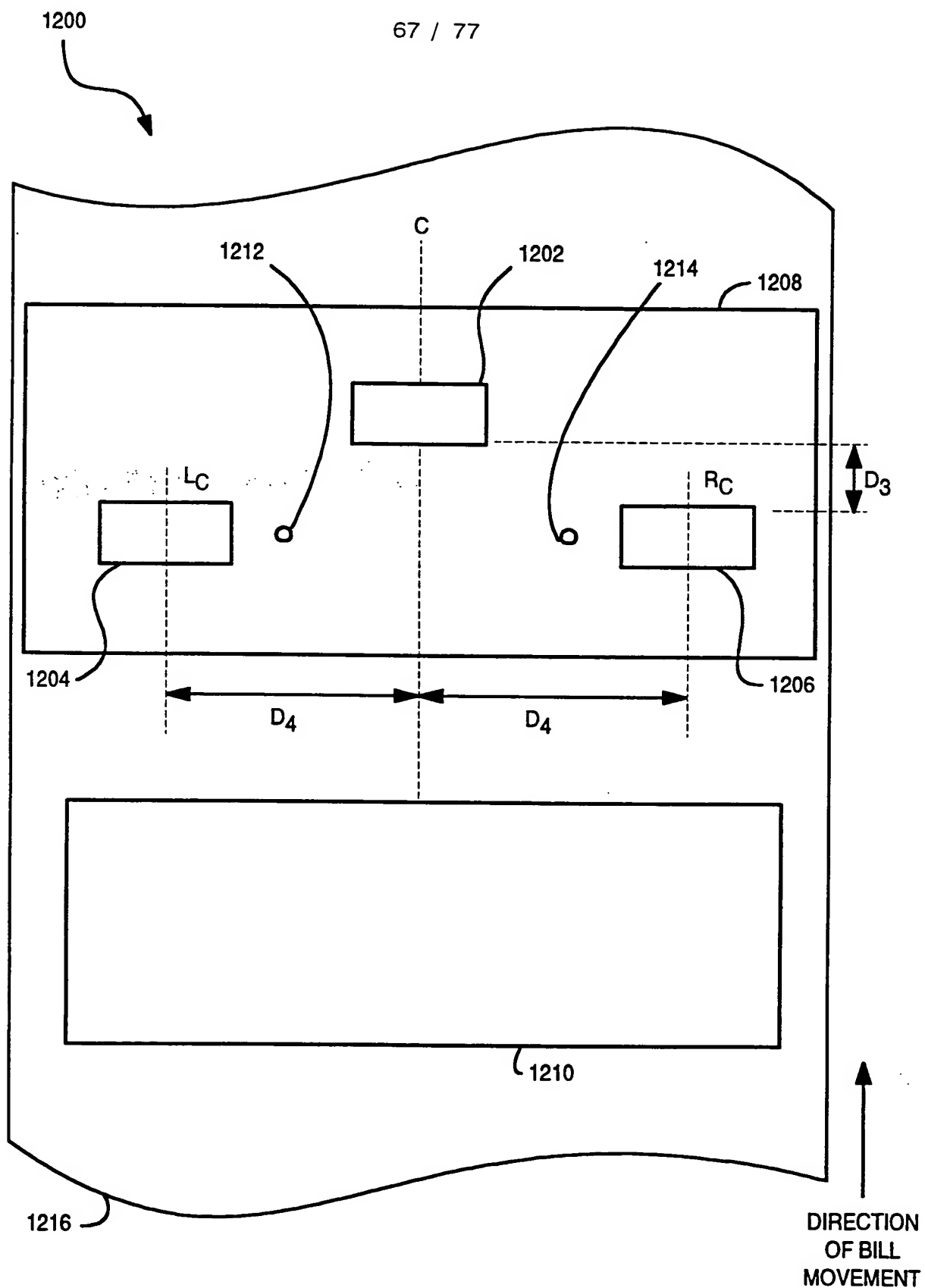
**FIG. 50a**

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK.**

66 / 77

FIG. 50b

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

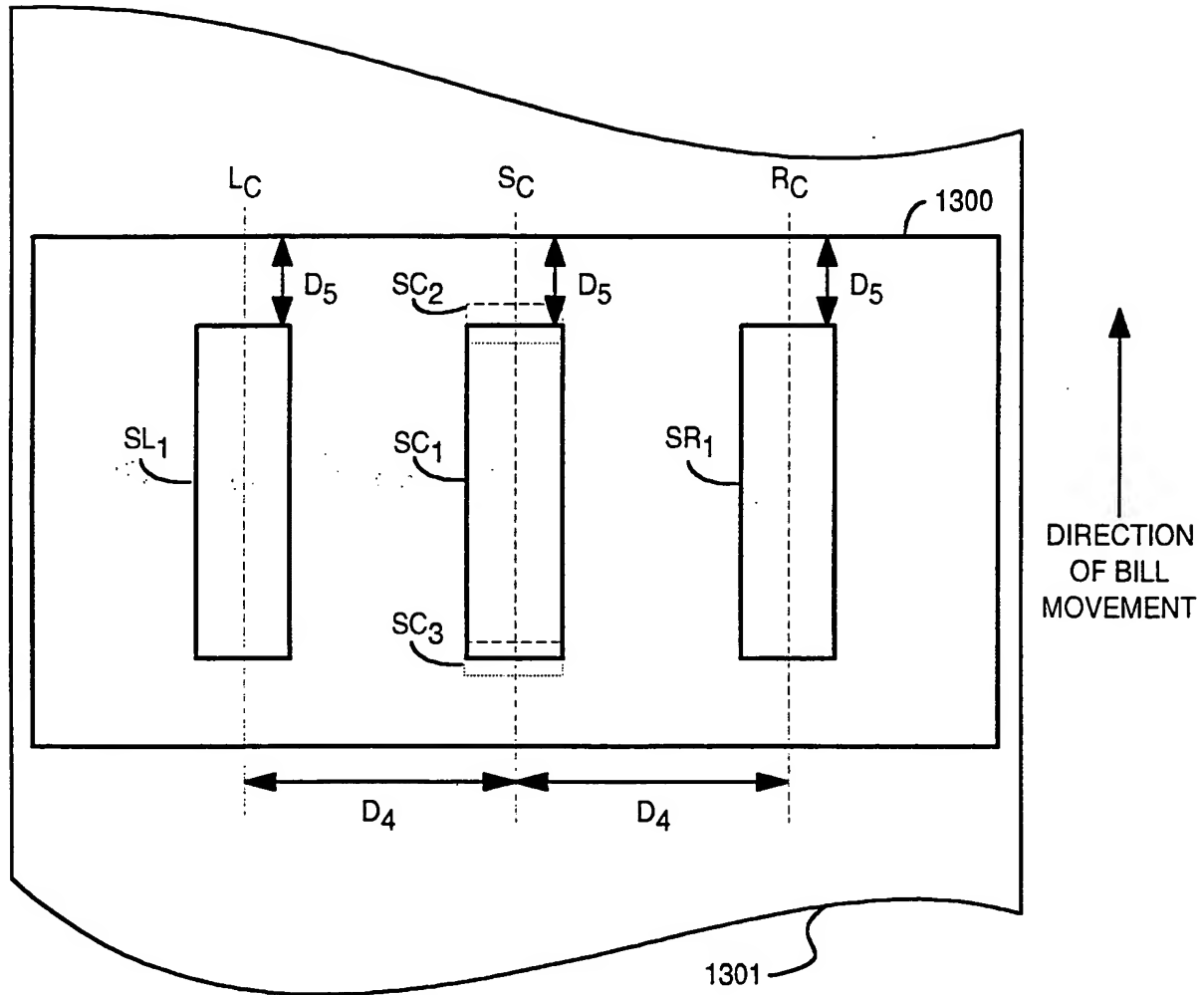


**FIG. 51**

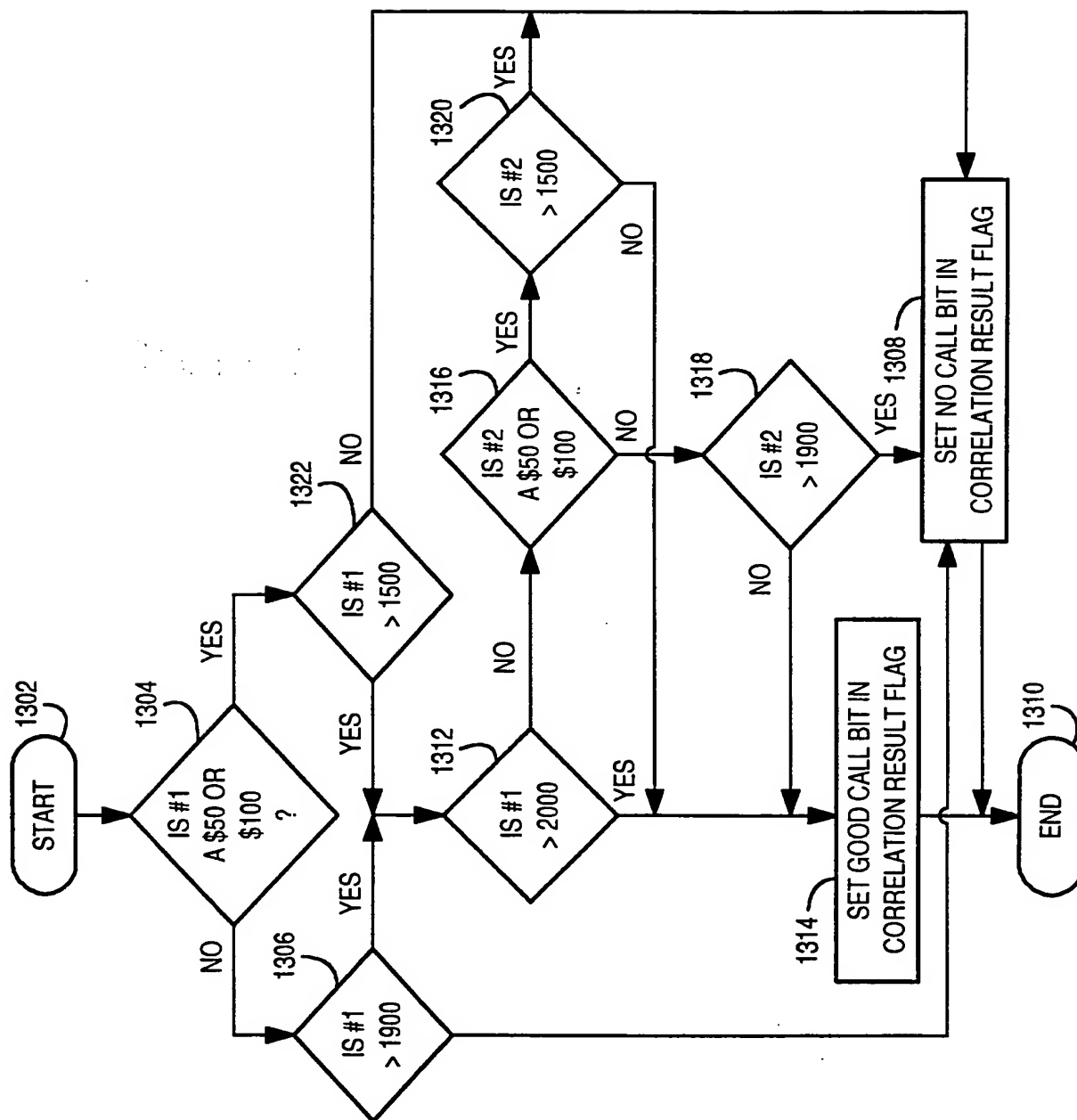
THIS PAGE IS BLANK



68 / 77

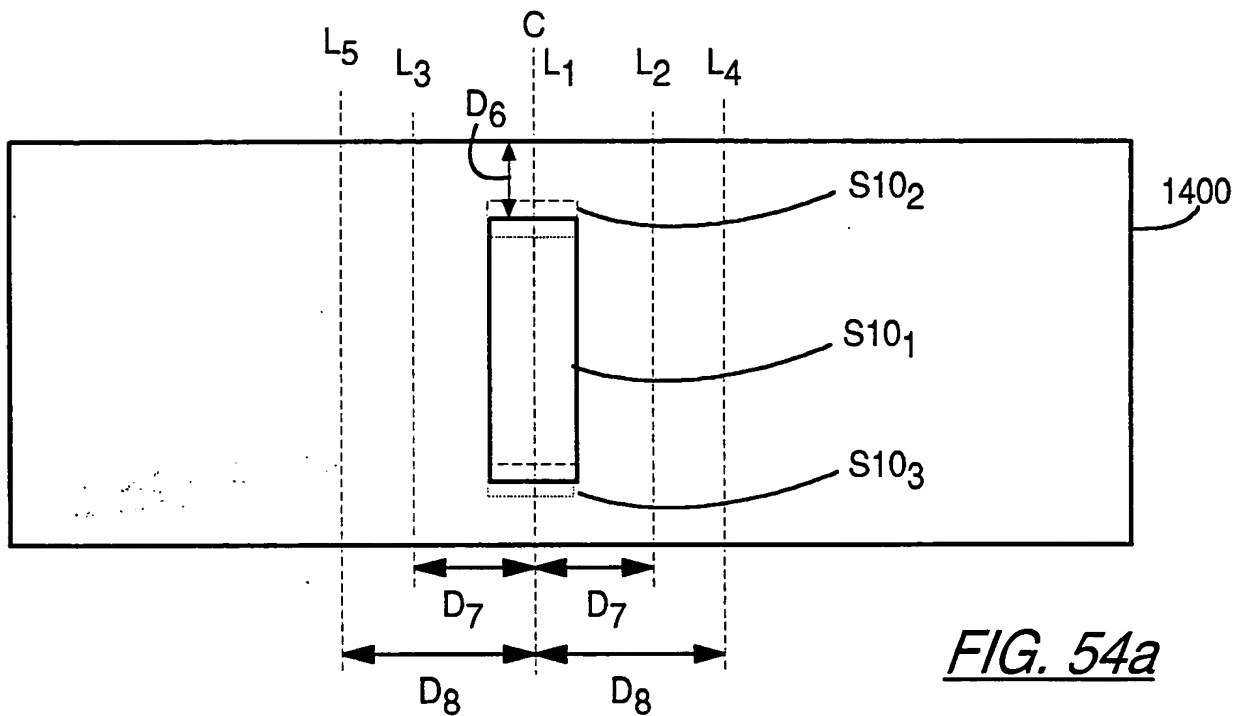
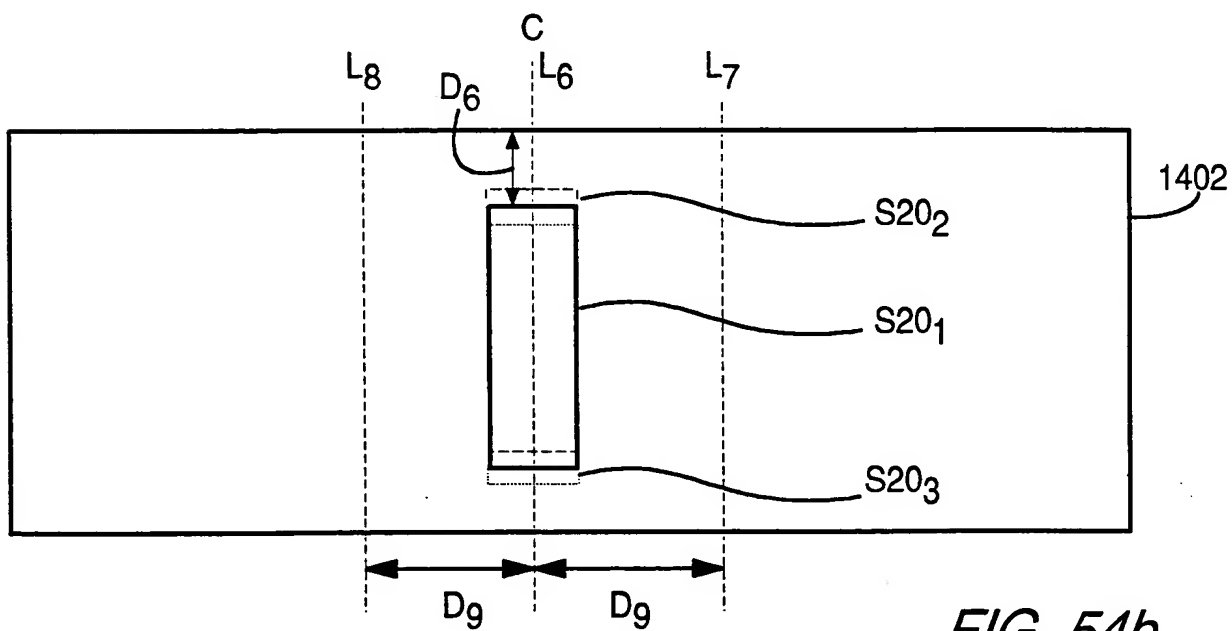
*FIG. 52*

THIS PAGE IS BLANK

FIG. 53

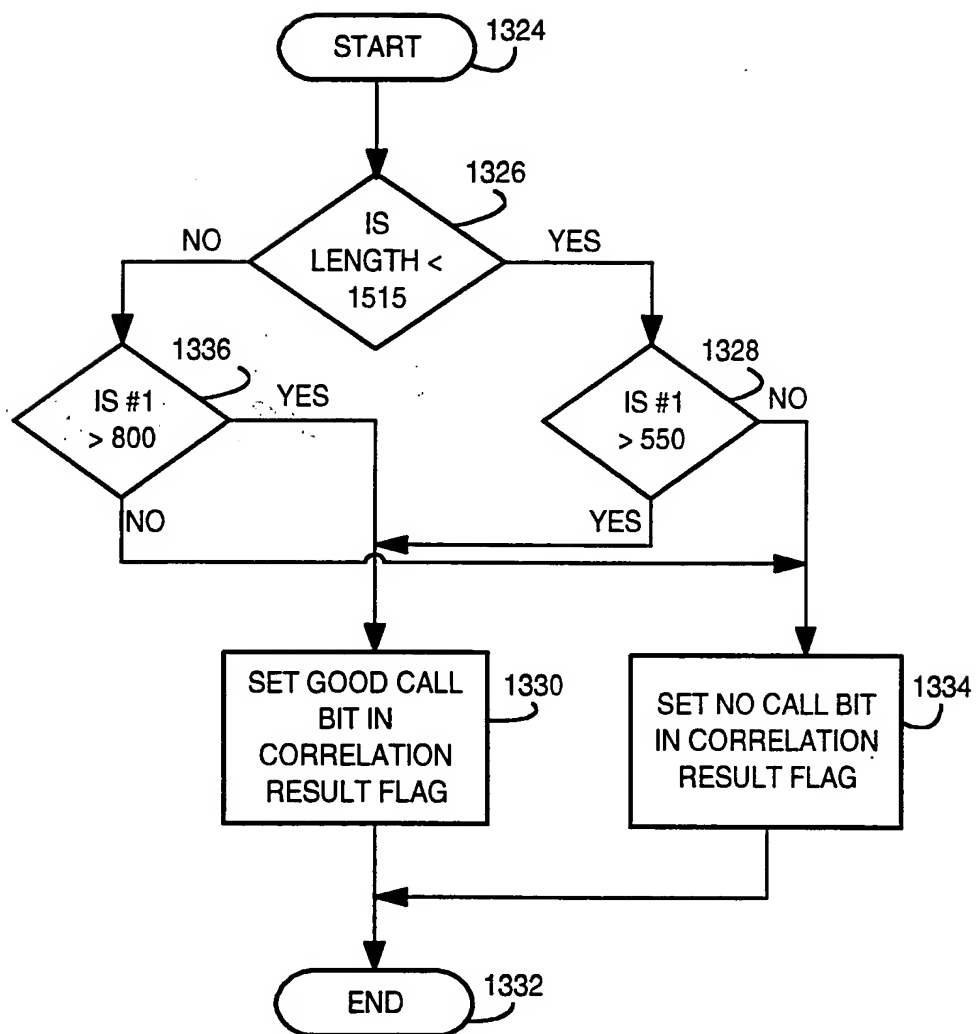
**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

70 / 77

*FIG. 54a**FIG. 54b*

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

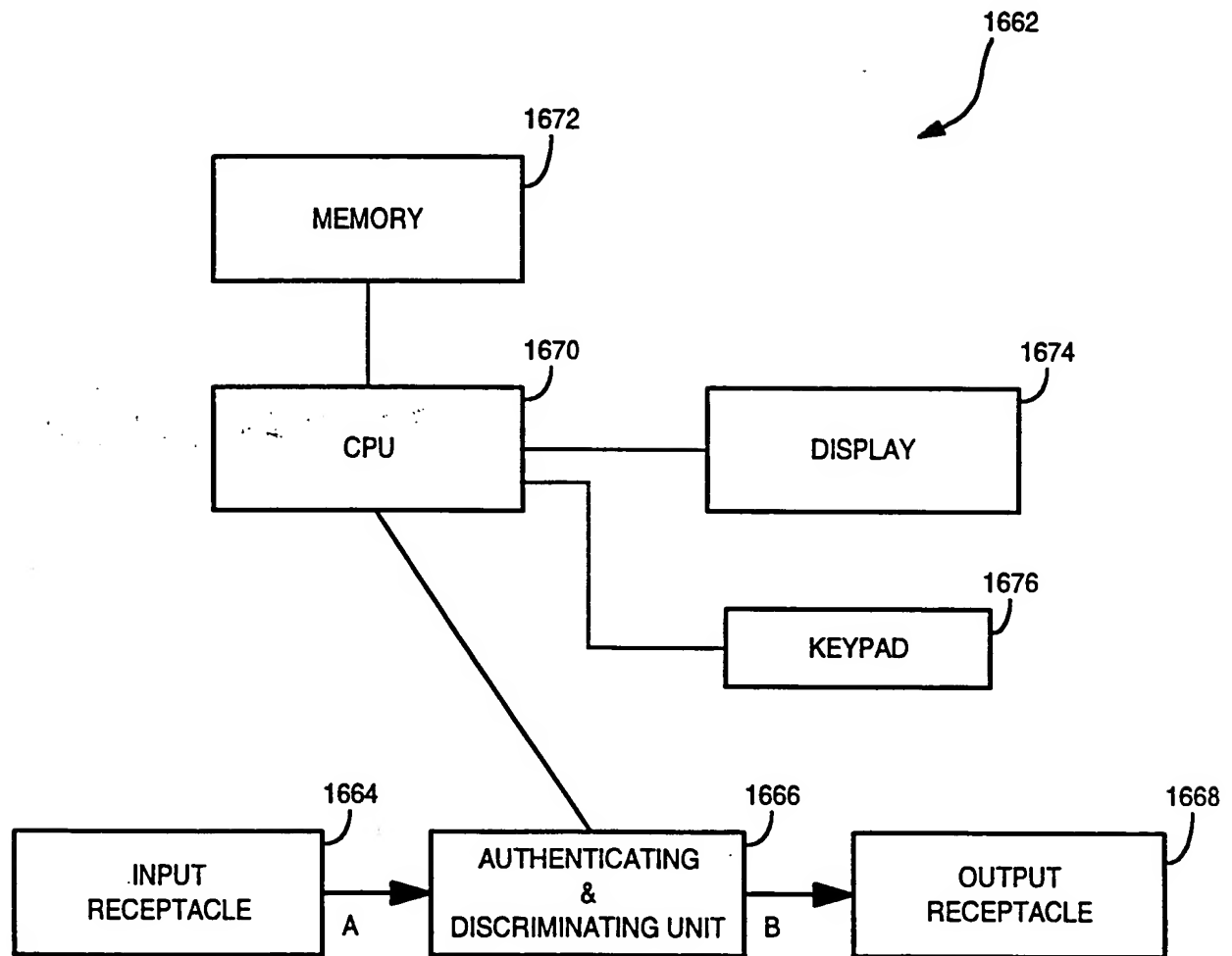
71 / 77

FIG. 55

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

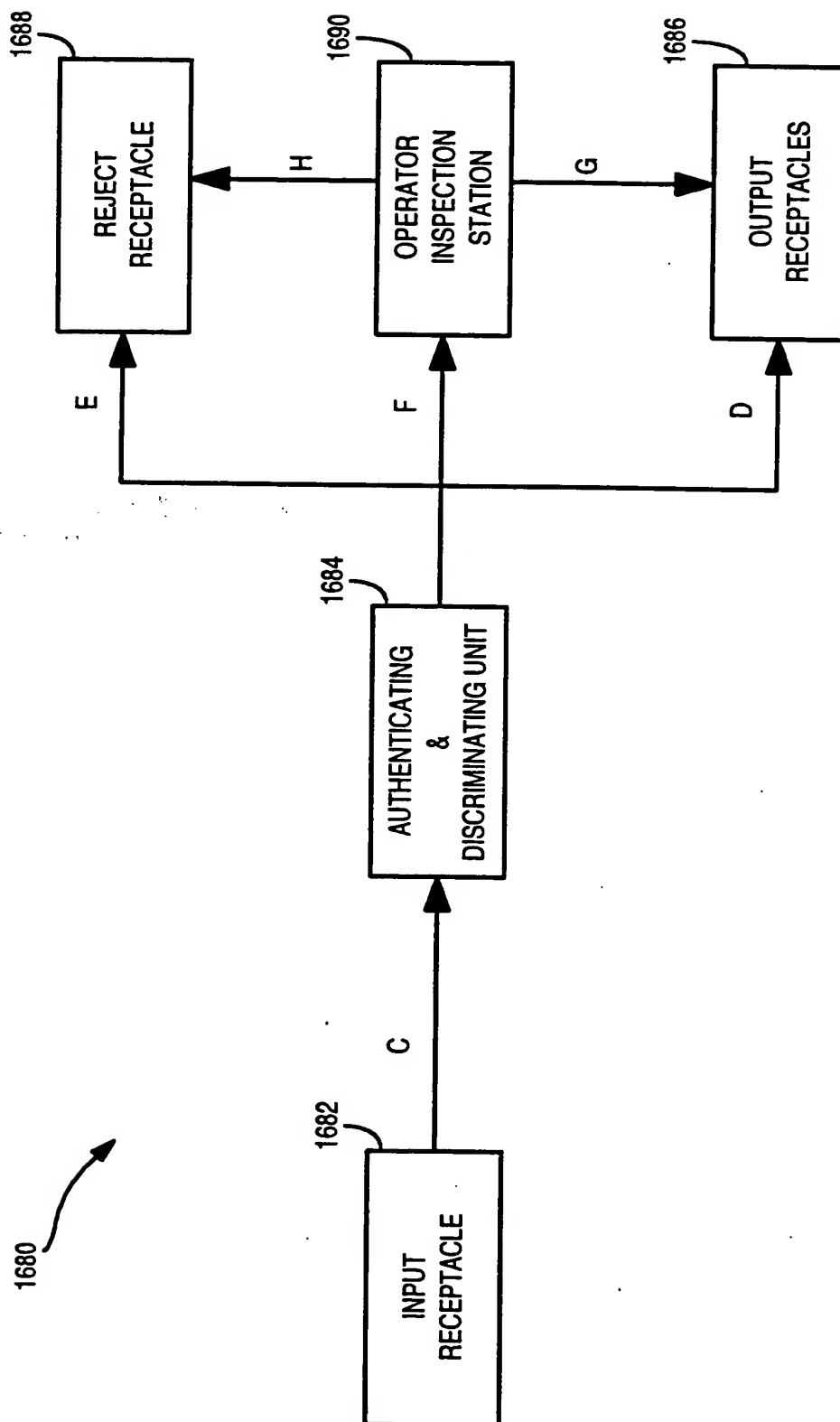


72 / 77

***FIG. 56***

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

73 / 77

FIG. 57

THIS PAGE IS BLANK

1692

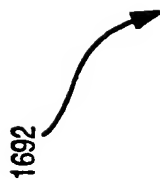
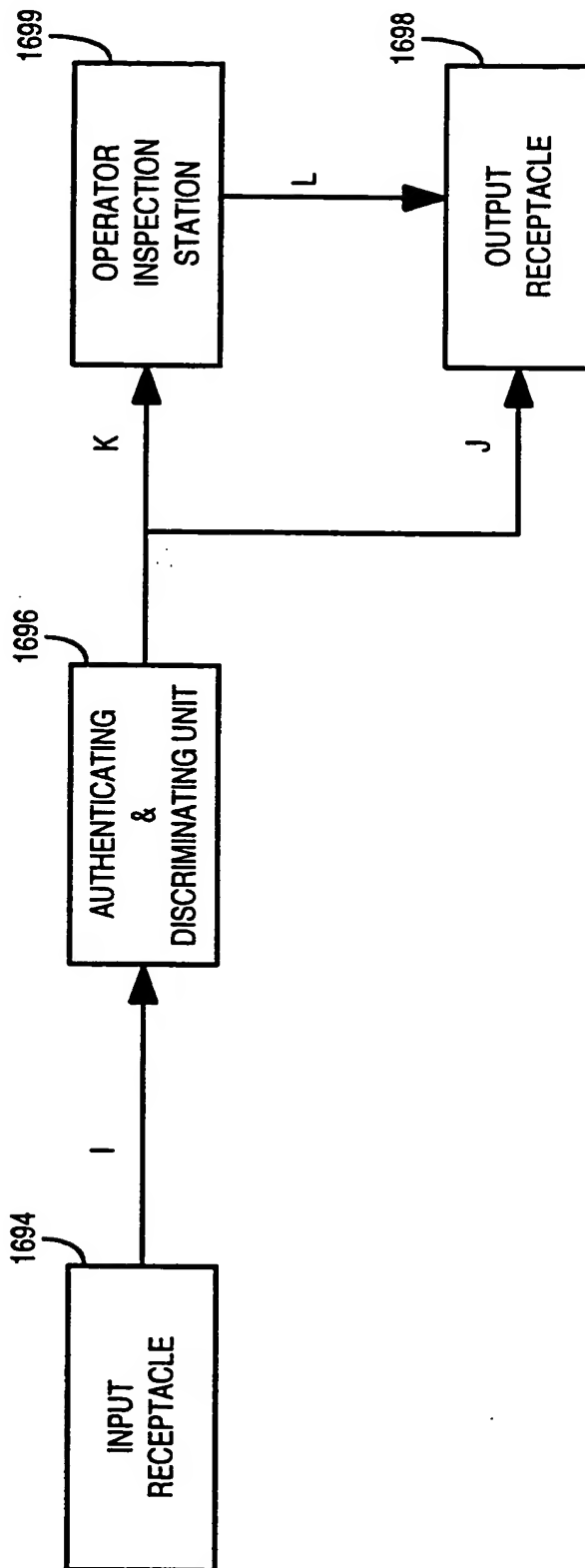



FIG. 58

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

61

62

63

64a

64b

64c

64d

64e

64f

64g

65

66

Denom

Sub Bat

Count

Mode

Limit

Batch

Unit

Verify

SD

Density

Add

Clear

Day

Strap

All Strip

Cont

Sub Bat

End

Denom

\$ 1

\$ 5

\$ 10

\$ 20

\$ 50

\$ 100

\$ 2

FIG. 59

THIS PAGE IS BLANK



76 / 77

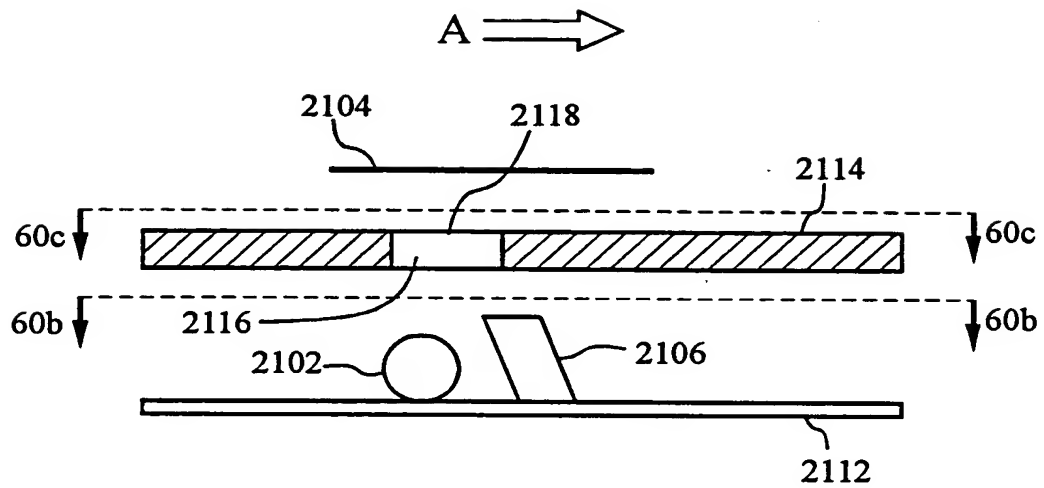


FIG. 60a

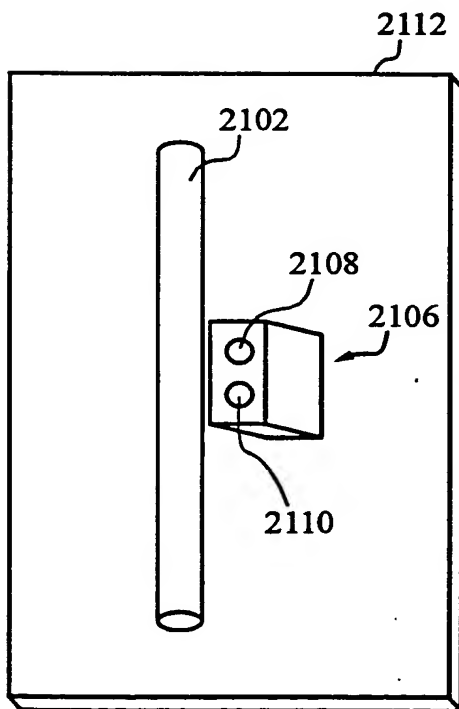


FIG. 60b

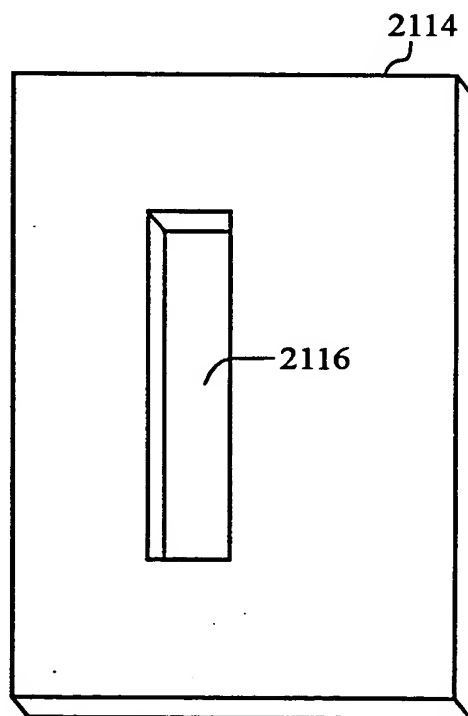
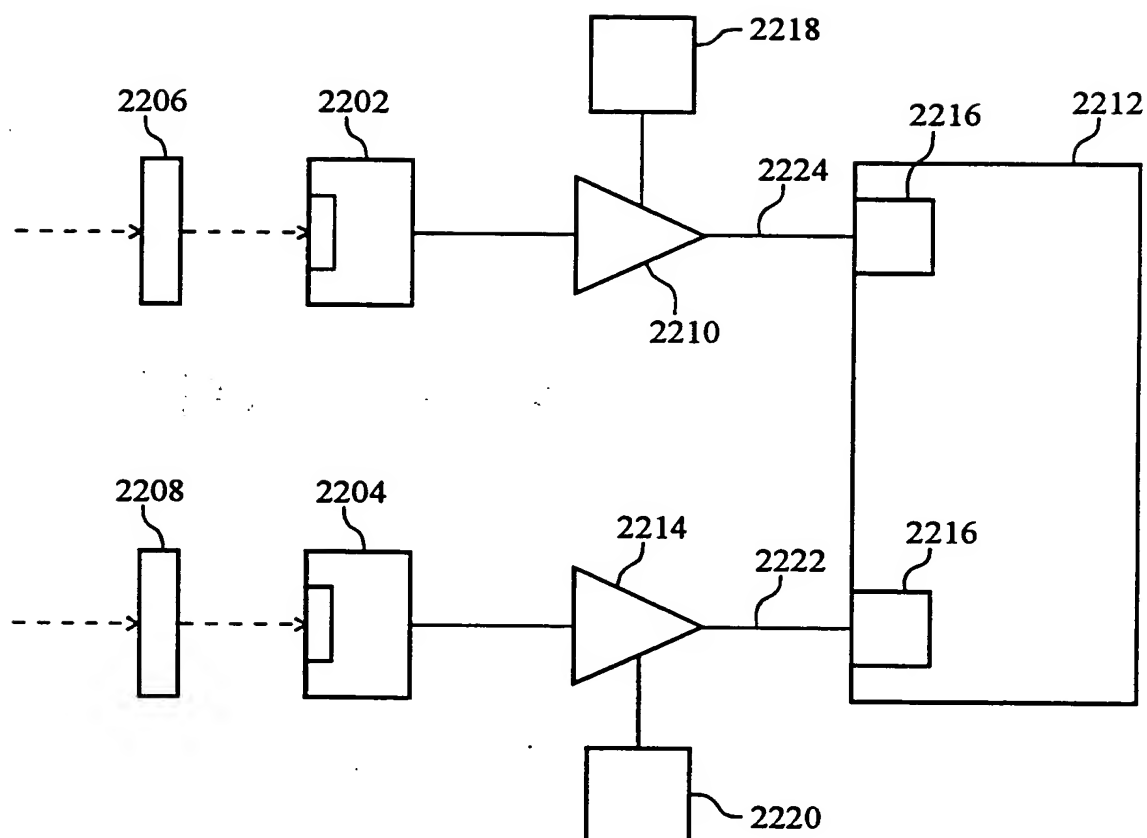


FIG. 60c

THIS PAGE IS BLANK

77 / 77

**FIG. 61**

**THIS PAGE IS BLANK**

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US95/02992

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) : G06K 9/00, 7/10

US CL : 382/7, 62, 65

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 382/7, 62, 65; 209/534

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category*	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
Y	US, A, 4,563,771 (GORGONE ET AL) 07 JANUARY 1986, the abstract, Fig. 6, col. 5, line 53 - col. 6, line 12.	1-10, 28-31, 34-38, 143
Y	US, A, 4,539,702 [OKA] 03 SEPTEMBER 1985, the abstract, col. 5, lines 4-35.	1-10, 28-31, 34-38, 143
Y	US, A, 4,356,473 [FREUDENTHAL] 26 OCTOBER 1982, col. 2, line 60 - col. 3, line 55.	5-9

☐ Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.☐ See patent family annex.

* Special categories of cited documents:	*T later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention
*A document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be part of particular relevance	*X document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone
*E earlier document published on or after the international filing date	*Y document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art
*L document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)	*A document member of the same patent family
*O document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means	
*P document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed	

Date of the actual completion of the international search

01 MAY 1995

Date of mailing of the international search report

02 JUN 1995

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US  
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks  
Box PCT  
Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

Phuoc Tran

Telephone No. (703) 305-8576

**BOX II. OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION WAS LACKING**

This ISA found multiple inventions as follows:

This application contains the following inventions or groups of inventions which are not so linked as to form a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1. In order for all inventions to be examined, the appropriate additional examination fees must be paid.

- 1) Group I, claims 1-10, 28-31, 34-38 and 143 drawn to an apparatus and method for currency discriminating utilizing first and second scanheads, and signal processing means for determining the surface of the bill having a primary characteristic pattern which is correlated with master characteristic patterns.
- 2) Group II, claims 11-19 and 39, drawn to a method and apparatus for generating modified scanned or master patterns.
- 3) Group III, claim 20, drawn to a currency counting and discrimination device for receiving a stack of currency bills, rapidly counting and discriminating the bills in the stack, and then re-stacking the bills.
- 4) Group IV, claims 21 and 22, drawn to a method of discriminating and counting documents having steps of stopping transferring an unidentified document to an output receptacle, and examining the unidentified document.
- 5) Group V, claims 23-26, drawn to a currency discriminating device and method utilizing a discriminating unit for discriminating bills based on their forward/reverse orientation.
- 6) Group VI, claims 27, 32, 33 and 40, drawn to a method and apparatus of discriminating documents having the calling step and means for calling the identity of a test document based on the highest first side correlation number generated if the generated first side correlation numbers meet a first set of criteria.
- 7) Group VII, claims 41-43, drawn to a method and device for authenticating documents utilizing ultraviolet light reflected from the document.
- 8) Group VIII, claims 44-85, drawn to a currency identification system and method utilizing at least two scanheads so as to permit scanning of said bill along at least two segments on a first side of a bill.
- 9) Group IX, claims 86-90 and 144, drawn to a currency evaluating device utilizing a detection circuit for detecting first characteristic information and second characteristic information from a scanned bill, and a memory for storing a plurality sets of characteristic information which is compared with the detected characteristic information.
- 10) Group X, claims 91-94, drawn to a currency evaluating device for receiving a stack of currency bills, rapidly evaluating all the bills in the stack, and then re-stacking the bills utilizing a feeding mechanism, a bill transport mechanism, and a stationary optical scanning head for scanning a preselected segment of a central portion of each bill.
- 11) Group XI, claims 95-120, drawn to an improved method for discriminating between currency bills of different denominations having a step of generating relative displacement between a strip of light illuminated on a predetermined section of a bill and the bill.
- 12) Group XII, claims 121-125 and 127, drawn to a currency evaluating device able to discriminate among different denominations of bills from two or more currency systems.
- 13) Group XIII, claim 126, drawn to a currency evaluating device utilizing means for flagging bills based on a plurality of criteria, and means for indicating which of the plurality of criteria caused a given bill to be flagged.
- 14) Group XIV, claims 128-139 and 142, drawn to a currency counting and discriminating device an input receptacle, a discriminating unit, an output receptacle, and a transport mechanism.
- 15) Group XV, claim 140, drawn to a method for controllable altering the speed of a bill transport mechanism of a currency counting and discriminating device from a first speed to a second speed.
- 16) Group XVI, claim 141, drawn to a feed arrangement in a currency apparatus, comprising a bill supporting surface, and a stripping wheel.

The inventions listed as Groups I to XVI do not relate to a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1 because, under PCT Rule 13.2, they lack the same or corresponding special technical features as mentioned above.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.

PCT/US95/02992

## Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This international report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
  
2. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out, specifically:
  
3. ☐ Claims Nos.:  
because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

## Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

Please See Extra Sheet.

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims.
2. ☐ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
3. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
  
4. ☒ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:  
1-10, 28-31, 34-38, 143

Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.  
☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

THIS PAGE IS BLANK